AUTHORIZED BY THE MINISTER OF EDUCATION FOR ONTARIO.

MODERN

SCHOOL GEOGRAPHY

AND

ATLAS

Prepared for the use of Schools in the Dominion of Canada.

NEW EDITION, REVISED AND CORRECTED.

Toronto:
CANADA PUBLISHING COMPANY
(LIMITED)

MAP DRAWING.

The object of Map drawing in school is frequently lost sight of or it is misunderstood.

As Geography is studied theoretically by means of description and pictorial illustration, and as the latter rather than the former enables pupils to perceive more vividly, and to grasp more intelligently, ideas of form, distance and position, *Map sketching* should be encouraged chiefly for the purpose of qualifying pupils to picture their thoughts, either for the satisfaction of the teacher, or for the benefit of others. It should be merely a test of the pupils' knowledge of general configuration and relative situation, and ought to be performed with comparative rapidity, even in connection with the first map from which a class is taught.

General Directions for Map Sketching.—Select for initiatory exercises the ground, section, township or county in which the school is situated, not only because the boundary lines of these are, as a rule, straight, but because the pupils' practical knowledge of the district will materially increase their interest in the work.

Let the teacher point out the direction of the boundary lines, mountains or ridges, and rivers; the general proportions of the whole, and anything that may be peculiar in configuration. Taking, for simplicity's sake, the county of Dundas, he may notice that it is almost square; that it contains four townships, each almost square; that the lines do not run due N. and S. or E. and W.; and that an irregular line is formed by the shore of the R. St. Lawrence. It would probably be well also for the teacher to sketch a few of the more easily outlined townships in his neighborhood, or some of the most regularly formed counties in the province, to impress upon the minds of the pupils the necessity for correct proportion and direction of outline.

After repeated copying on the slates by the pupils, either from the book or the wall-map, at school or at home, or in both places, the final test in class should be performed *wholly from memory*, and *with rapidity*. For this purpose the exercise may be pleasantly and profitably varied by sketching alternately on slate, blackboard or paper. When it is thought advisable *by the teacher*, to introduce the use of paper, sheets of uniform size should be provided, so that they may be stitched for preservation; or, what is better still, blank books may be employed.

When sketching school-section or township maps avoid the intersection of lines where roads meet. The accompanying diagram of Nepean Township and a portion of Gloucester, will illustrate this with regard both to the country roads, and to the streets in the city of Ottawa.

Ridges and elevations may be shown by means of a series of crosses x x x x, and rivers by an irregular wavy line ~~~~~. Mark villages •, towns ⊙, and cities ⊠.

The foregoing, with the addition of a few names, is all that is required for test lesson purposes. Speed, neatness

and proportion are attainable without any attempt at absolute accuracy.

Map Drawing proper, or Cartography, which requires much nicety of touch, and the exercise of considerable taste, is valuable, in addition to its memory aid, as a means of training the pupil to habits of close observation and to the skilful management of materials.

These materials should consist of good, smooth, white paper, either in sheets of uniform size, or in book-form; a moderately hard lead-pencil; a twelve-inch, graduated, flat ruler; a small, square cornered ruler, three or four inches long on each side; a bottle of the best *black* ink, or a piece of India ink; cakes of red, yellow and blue color, and a few hair pencils. A pair of compasses, although not indispensable, will be found useful.

The first consideration in the copying of any map will—as a matter of course be—size. Upon this depend the dimensions of the border which should now be drawn. If it be determined to draw upon a different scale from the model, great care must be exercised in the diminution or increase of the border, so that the length and breadth may remain proportionate.* Test the correctness of the corners by applying to each your right-angled ruler.

Always leave a margin not less than two inches wide outside of the border lines.

* Notice that by doubling or halving the length of your border lines, you respectively increase or diminish the size *four times*.

Divide the enclosed space, if possible, by lines of latitude and longitude, as in the map you are about to copy.

If, owing to curvature, it be found too difficult to draw these lines, the following method may be adopted.

Divide your model into four equal parts by two lines, one drawn through the centre from N. to S., and one through the centre from S. to W. Each of the four divisions thus formed may be subdivided as often as may seem necessary.—See diagram.—Squares or spaces measuring less than an inch on the side are not desirable, unless great accuracy be required.*

Proceed next to divide your own work into the same *number* of squares or spaces, no matter upon what scale you have sketched your border.

If, up to this point, the work has been performed correctly, you should now be prepared to draw the outline.

Beginning always towards the north-west corner (so that you may be enabled to work from left to right and downwards), observe carefully the length and direction of that portion of the outline in the first containing space. Imitate this closely on your own sheet, and proceed from space to space in the same way until the outline is completed.

☞ Be sure that whatever you copy from the model is inserted in a *corresponding* space in your own work.

Next, sketch the mountains, then the lakes and rivers, and after these the township, county, provincial or county boundaries, as the case may be.

From the beginning to this stage of progress *every* mark should have been made *faintly* with a fine pointed pencil. If the lines are heavy or dark, it will be difficult to erase them without leaving some traces.

The pencilled mountain outline should be fringed with delicate radiations in ink, thus Sea and lake margins may be distinguished by two or more lines drawn parallel to the coast all round, but each at a slightly increased distance from the other, outwards. See expansion of Ottawa River in the first diagram.

It will now be in order to mark the positions of villages, towns and cities. The names of these places should, as a rule, be in line with the parallels of latitude. Those of less importance should be in italics, as, *Penetanguishene*; of larger places in Roman, as Sarnia; of cities in small capitals, as HAMILTON; and of Government seats in larger capitals, as TORONTO.

Names of rivers, small lakes, and low mountain ranges are generally in italics; but those of long and lofty mountain ranges, of large lakes, and of seas, gulfs and important bays are usually in italic capitals, as *HUDSON BAY*.

Names of countries, provinces or states, and counties, should be inserted last, and in such a manner that, while they follow the length of the country, etc. (whether horizontally or otherwise), they shall not interfere with names already marked. Rule, in pencil, lines upon which to print all the names, and when capitals are to be inserted rule two parallel lines corresponding in distance apart to the height of the proposed letters and in the direction of the name. Space all the letters carefully.

Mix your colors by rubbing the end of the cake on the bottom of a saucer upon which a little water has been dropped. Lay them on evenly and *thinly*—deep coloring mars the appearance of a map. Do not attempt to color *the whole* of any division (as in the maps of this atlas) until you have had considerable experience. Be content with merely drawing a narrow stripe to mark the boundary, and arrange so as not to have adjacent divisions of the same color. A faint blue stripe may be drawn round the coast in place of ink lines.

Be sure that all pencil marks are erased before coloring.

Let the name of the map be the last piece of lettering. Immediately beneath this give your name, age (or date), school and residence.

Preserve your work carefully; you may be interested in looking at it many years after you have left school.

Remember that when practising *map-sketching* for test-lessons the object is to combine speed with general accuracy, but in *cartography* the aim should be to attain, as nearly as possible, absolute correspondence with the model. To accomplish this much time will be required, so that amid other and more pressing school duties, not more than one highly finished map in a month should be attempted, unless individual tastes and time encourage closer application to work of this kind.

Simple sketching on slates and blackboard may be employed once or twice weekly, and if colored crayons be used additional interest will be imparted to the exercise.

Occasional lessons may be given on the blackboard by the teacher on the printed forms of letters, and on mountain, river and coast markings.

☞ Bear in mind that every engraved and printed map was originally drawn by hand; there cannot, therefore, be anything in a copy or model too difficult for close imitation, or successful emulation, sooner or later, in the course of careful and continued practice.

Never say "I can't draw maps." Every scholar can draw. Do not allow repeated failures to discourage you.

"If at first you don't succeed,
Try, try, try again."

* To obviate marking your copy with pencil, a frame of cardboard may be made the size of your model. Across this frame stretch threads both ways at intervals of an inch. Lay this over the squared map. Or rule, with a diamond, a pane of glass, into square inches, blacken the lines, place over the model ruled side down, and proceed as directed above.

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2009 with funding from
Ontario Council of University Libraries

http://www.archive.org/details/modernschoolgeog00toro

The World.

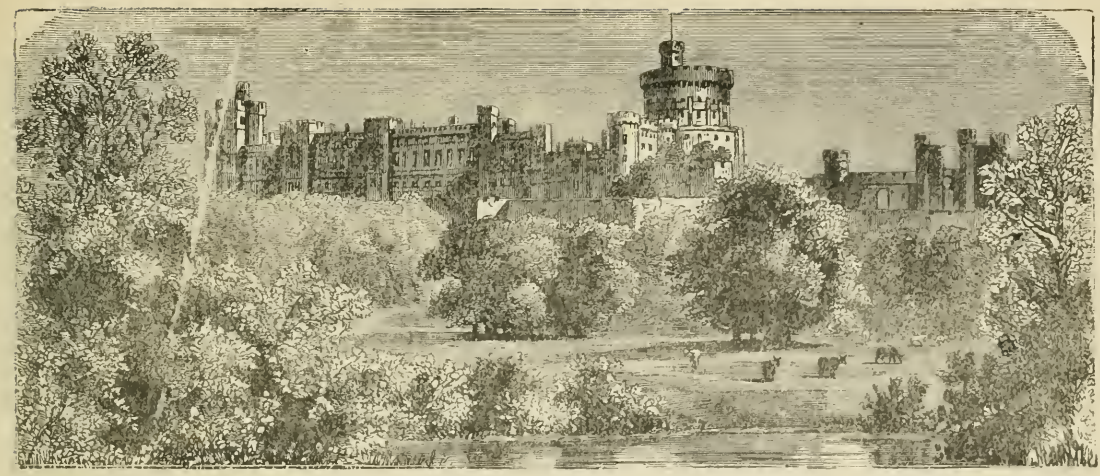
WESTERN HEMISPHERE
THE
North Pole
ARCTIC OCEAN
ASIA
Greenland
Alaska
DOMINION OF CANADA
NORTH AMERICA
UNITED STATES
MEXICO
NORTH ATLANTIC OCEAN
NORTH PACIFIC OCEAN
Hudson Bay
Labrador
Newfoundland
Nova Scotia
Bering Sea
Aleutian Is
Sandwich Is
Marshall Is
Gilbert Is
Palmyra I
Fanning I
Christmas I
Phenix Is
Ellice Is
Union Is
Penrhyn
Marquesas Is
Solomon Is
Navigators Is
POLYNESIA
Society Is
Low Archipelago
New Hebrides
Friendly Is
Cook Is
Tahiti
Austral Is
Tropic of Capricorn
Tropic of Cancer
Equator
Galapagos Is
Easter I
Juan Fernandez
Valparaiso
Caldera
Coquimbo
Copiapo
Arica
Cobija
Callao
Guayaquil
Panama
Caribbean Sea
WEST INDIA ISLANDS
Cuba
Jamaica
Haiti
Porto Rico
Bahama Is
Florida
Gulf of Mexico
Lower California
Vancouver I
Columbia R
San Francisco
New Orleans
Charleston
Bermuda Is
New York
Boston
Quebec
Hudson Bay
Labrador
Newfoundland
Nova Scotia
Azores Is
Cape Verde Is
Trinidad
Caracas
Orinoco
Georgetown
Paramaribo
Cayenne
Mouth of R Amazon
Maranhao
Natal
Pernambuco
Bahia
Rio de Janeiro
Victoria
Rio Janeiro
Santos
San Paulo
Buenos Ayres
Monte Video
Rio de la Plata
Patagonia
Tierra del Fuego
Cape Horn
Strait of Magellan
Falkland Is
South Georgia I
South Shetlands
Orkneys
Sandwich Land
Graham I
Alexander I
Victoria Land
Ross Sea
Antarctic Circle
ANTARCTIC OCEAN
South Pole
NEW ZEALAND
North I
South I
Auckland
Wellington
Chatham Is
Stewart I
Campbell I
Antipodes I
Bermudez I
Norfolk I
New Caledonia
Bramengais
Tongatabu
Oparo
Pitcairn I
SOUTH PACIFIC OCEAN
SOUTH ATLANTIC OCEAN
PERU
BOLIVIA
BRAZIL
SOUTH AMERICA
LA PLATA
URUGUAY
ECUADOR
COLUMBIA
VENEZUELA
GUIANA
Barthol

ORLD

EASTERN HEMISPHERE

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.

THE WORLD.—Which hemisphere contains most land? Which most water? Name a continent in the Western Hemisphere. What is that portion of land called which connects North and South America? What large island is there in the Eastern Hemisphere? What is the southern point of America called? Name the oceans on the map. Name a sea near the centre of the Eastern Hemisphere. An archipelago in the South Pacific Ocean. A gulf and sea between North and South America. A strait on the north of America. What continents are crossed by the Equator? Which hemisphere contains most land, the northern or southern? What continents are north of the Equator? Is any part of Asia in the torrid zone? In what zones is North America? What zones is Europe in? How many degrees of latitude and longitude are there in each hemisphere? Are the degrees of longitude in America east or west? Of what? Are the degrees of latitude in North America north or south? Of what? Point out a land in the Antarctic Ocean. In what zone is Canada? Newfoundland? The West India Islands? What countries are crossed by the Tropics and Polar Circles? What waters? What large islands in Oceanica by the equator? In what direction are the Sandwich Islands from North America? In what direction is Africa from Europe? Australia from Asia? Madagascar from Africa? Newfoundland from Canada? Europe from North America? Asia from Europe? The West India Islands from South America? Bermuda from North America? What oceans wash the shores of America? What sea is between North and South America? What sea between Europe and Africa? What sea between Asia and Africa? What oceans are in the Eastern Hemisphere? What strait divides North America from Asia? What is the southern point of Africa called? What is the southern point of India called? What island is near there? What islands lie to the east of Asia in the temperate zone? What part of America is nearest to Japan? In what ocean are the Polynesian Islands situated? In what zone do they lie? Point out the principal groups north of the equator. South of it. Which is the principal of the Sandwich Islands? In what direction from San Francisco are they? In what direction from them is New Zealand? Japan? What is the most southern land called? In what ocean is it situated? Point out two volcanoes in Antarctica. Describe them. In what zone is Antarctica principally situated?



MODERN
SCHOOL GEOGRAPHY
AND
ATLAS.

AUTHORIZED BY THE MINISTER OF EDUCATION FOR USE IN THE SCHOOLS OF ONTARIO, AND BY THE COUNCILS OF PUBLIC INSTRUCTION FOR USE IN THE PROVINCES OF QUEBEC, NEW BRUNSWICK, AND PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND.

SIXTH EDITION.

TORONTO:
CANADA PUBLISHING COMPANY (LIMITED).
1883.

Price 75 Cents.

Entered according to Act of the Parliament of Canada, in the year one thousand eight hundred and eighty-one by the
CANADA PUBLISHING COMPANY (LIMITED),
in the Office of the Minister of Agriculture.

DONATED BY
W. Kinrade

PREFACE TO THE SIXTH EDITION.

The favor which has been accorded to the successive editions of this Geography the editors take as an evidence of the appropriateness of the system upon which it has been planned, the fulness and accuracy of its information, the beauty and utility of its maps, and the general adaptability of the book for use in the schools of the Dominion.

The Sixth Edition has been thoroughly revised to the present date, many parts of the work having been rewritten, and all of it submitted to a rigid examination.

The political changes of recent years, and the results of modern exploration, have materially altered the maps of Europe, Asia, and Africa; while the growth of our own Dominion, and the development of the newer sections of the United States, have necessitated an extensive revision of the maps and letter-press, which the work has received. In addition to embodying these changes, the work, it may be said, has been otherwise improved, and the populations have been revised in accordance with the latest Census in the several countries.

The book has been re-set throughout in a larger and clearer type, with the headings and catch-words in a heavy letter, and the number of pages has been considerably increased without adding to the cost of the work.

New outline maps have been engraved and printed on the back of the colored maps, to encourage the pupil in map-drawing, and to aid in fastening on his mind the configuration and other physical features of the country represented. Illustrations of some of the principal mountain ranges of the world have been introduced under the head of each grand division, with the object of embellishing the work, and of calling the pupil's attention to a distinctive feature in each of the great continents.

The narrative, designedly, has been made so simple as to be intelligible to all, though the information supplied, it is hoped, has been so full and explicit as to enable the pupil to acquire a good and comprehensive knowledge of the geography of the World.

The plan which has been followed throughout is to impress upon the memory the great physical features, form, and appearance of continent or country, so that the scholar may have imprinted on his mind a view of the outline of the country, with its mountains, rivers, and general slope and appearance standing prominently out, leaving the minor details, such as subdivisions, towns, products, government, etc., to be filled in upon the foundation of the first and most important part.

To each section questions on the text and exercises on the maps have been prepared, with the object of testing the pupil's knowledge and of assisting the teacher in his work. These, in the present edition, will now be found on the back of the maps, instead of, as formerly, in connection with the text. The questions may, of course, be increased to any extent. It is, however, recommended that full exercises and questions should be given on the maps; and as every place and name mentioned in the text will be found on them, it will stimulate the scholar to greater accuracy and observation, should questions be asked the answers to which are not to be found in the printed text.

34 Front Street, West, Toronto.

MODERN SCHOOL GEOGRAPHY.

INTRODUCTION.

GEOGRAPHY is a description of the Earth, its surface, its divisions, and its inhabitants. The Earth is round, like an orange, slightly flattened at the poles, and bulging out a little in the middle. To prove that the Earth is round, although it appears to us to be flat, we know that we can see only the surface of the ground about three miles on a level plain; and at sea the view, not being interrupted by mountains or any great inequalities in the surface, is bounded on all sides by the horizon. When a vessel appears in sight, the masts are always seen before the hull. A vessel can sail round the world and come back to her starting-point without changing the direction of her course.

The **Earth** is nearly 25,000 miles in circumference, and about 8,000 miles in diameter.

About one-quarter of the Earth's surface is land, and three-quarters water.

DEFINITIONS IN MATHEMATICAL GEOGRAPHY.

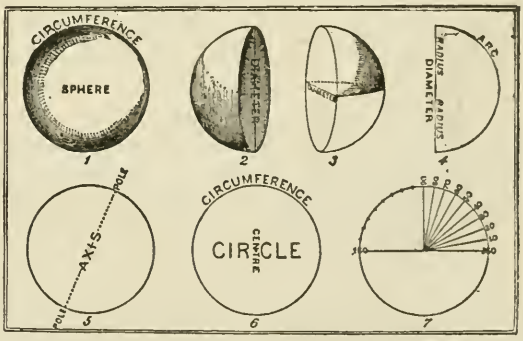


DIAGRAM OF MATHEMATICAL FIGURES.

1. A **sphere** is a solid bounded by a surface, all points of which are equally distant from a point within called the centre.

2. The **circumference of a sphere** is the curved line encompassing it.

3. The **diameter of a sphere** is a straight line passing through the centre, and terminating in the circumference.

4. The **axis** is that diameter of a sphere upon which it rotates.

Rotation is the movement of a body upon its axis.

Revolution is the movement of a body or point around another body or point.

5. The poles are the points on the surface of a sphere at the extremities of its axis.

6. A **plane** is a surface upon any part of which a straight line may be drawn.

7. A **circle** is a plane bounded by a curved line, all points of which are equally distant from a point within, called the centre.

8. The **circumference of a circle** is the curved line which bounds it.

Though in geometry there is the distinction above noted between a circle and its circumference, in geography the term "circle" is generally used as synonymous with "circumference."

9. Circles of the sphere are divided into great circles and small circles.

10. A **great circle** is one that divides a sphere into two equal parts.

11. A **small circle** is one that divides a sphere into two unequal parts.

12. **Degrees.**—Every circle (circumference), whether great or small, is divided into 360 equal parts, called degrees, and marked thus,—360°. The $\frac{1}{60}$ part of a degree is called a minute, marked thus,—1′. The $\frac{1}{60}$ part of a minute is called a second, marked thus,—1″.—*Swinton.*

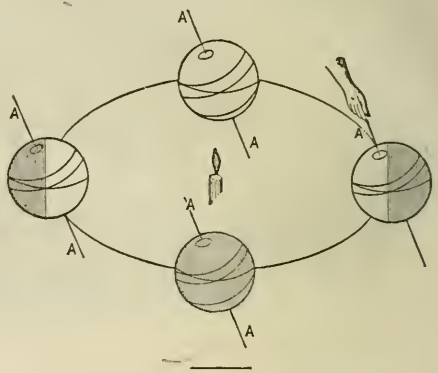
MOTIONS OF THE EARTH.

Although appearing to us to be perfectly still, the Earth is continually moving with great velocity. It has two motions:

1. The **Diurnal**, or Daily. Every twenty-four hours it revolves once on its axis, causing alternate day and night, according as the portion of the globe we live on is turned to or from the sun. The axis of the Earth is an imaginary line passing through its centre, terminating in what are called the North and South Poles.

2. The **Annual**, or Yearly. Every year the Earth moves once round the Sun, producing the Seasons, according as the North or South Pole inclines towards the Sun. Thus, when the North Pole, or the northern portion of the globe upon which we live, is inclined towards the Sun, it is Summer with us, and Winter with the southern portion, or to all south of the equator. When the South Pole inclines towards the Sun, it is Winter with us, and Summer south of the equator.

[In order to understand this, it is necessary for the teacher to explain, that the axis of the earth is not perpendicular to the plane of its orbit, but is inclined to it at an angle of 66½ degrees. And as the axis of the Earth always points to the same part of the Heavens, the North or Polar Star, it is evident that, as the Earth moves round the Sun, each pole gradually changes its relative position to the Sun; and so, during one-half of the year, inclines towards the Sun, and the other half from it, as may be seen from the accompanying diagram, where AA represents the axis of the Earth, and the globes the position of the Earth, at Midsummer, Midwinter, and the Equinoxes.]



THE HEAVENLY BODIES.

The **Sun** is the centre of the system in which the Earth is placed, and round it the Planets and Comets move at various distances, each one having its own course, and showing forth the beautiful regularity with which the Creator has planned the universe.

The Sun is 863,000 miles in diameter, and 1,260,000 times larger than the Earth, from which it is distant about 92,750,000 miles.

The names of the other Planets, their relative sizes compared with the Earth, and their distances from the Sun, are:

	Times the size of the Earth.	Miles distant from the Sun.
Mercury,	1–19th	36 millions.
Venus,	1	67 "
Mars,	3–16ths	141 "
Minor Planets; situated between Mars and Jupiter.		
Jupiter,	1,438	482 millions.
Saturn,	932	884 "
Uranus,	87	1,777 "
Neptune,	60	2,784 "

The **Planets** are supposed to be bodies somewhat similar to the Earth, although as yet little, besides their dimensions and orbits, is definitely known. Neither is it known whether they are inhabited or not, although they

move in nearly the same plane as the Earth, and like it rotate on their axis, and have alternate day and night, and probably seasons more or less varied. According as they are nearer or more distant than the Earth from the Sun, they require less or more time to move round the Sun.

Comets are luminous bodies which move through space with immense velocity. They generally move on a different plane from the Earth and the other Planets, and have an erratic course, not in a circle, like the Planets, but at one time comparatively near, and at another being very far from the Sun.

The **Moon** is the attendant of the Earth. Were the Earth to remain still, the Moon would revolve round it in 27⅓ days; but as it is continually moving, the Moon requires 29½ days to complete its revolution. The Moon is about one forty-ninth part the size of the Earth, and is distant from it 240,000 miles.

The Moon derives its light from the Sun; and as the Earth sometimes intervenes directly between the Sun and the Moon, it then casts a shadow on the Moon's surface. This is called an *Eclipse* of the Moon, or a *lunar eclipse*.

The Moon also, in its course round the Earth, sometimes intervenes directly between the Sun and the Earth, and hides for a time the whole or part of the surface of the Sun from our sight. This is called an *Eclipse* of the Sun, or a *solar eclipse*.

As the Moon does not move round the Earth on the same plane as the Earth does round the Sun, eclipses comparatively seldom occur. There are from two to five solar eclipses in the course of a year; there may be three lunar eclipses, and sometimes none. As, however, lunar eclipses are visible to a whole hemisphere at once, and solar eclipses only to a part, the latter, though happening oftener, are less frequently seen.

Besides the **Planets**, there are multitudes of **Fixed Stars**, far beyond the system of which our Sun is the centre, and powerful telescopes reveal many more which are invisible to the naked eye. These shine by their own light, and are supposed to be suns, perhaps the centres of other systems as extensive as that in which the Earth is placed. The nearest of these Fixed Stars is about 200,000 times more distant than the Sun.

DIVISIONS OF THE LAND.

About one-quarter of the Earth's surface consists of land, the different parts of which are known by the following names:

A *Continent* is a large extent of land comprising several countries.

An *Island* is a smaller extent of land wholly surrounded by water.

A cluster or group of islands is called an *Archipelago*.

A *Peninsula* is a portion of land almost surrounded by water.

An *Isthmus* is a narrow neck of land connecting two larger portions of land.

A *Cape* is a point of land projecting into the sea; and if high or mountainous, is called a *Promontory*.

A *Shore* or *Coast* is the edge or margin of land bordering on water.

A *Mountain* is a portion of land rising to a considerable height above the surrounding country. A *Hill* is a smaller elevation.

A *Range* or *Chain* is a line of mountains or hills extending for a considerable distance in one direction and having a common base.

A *Valley* is that portion of land which lies between mountains or hills.

A *Volcano* is a mountain which throws out fire, smoke, lava, and ashes. The opening from which they issue is called the crater.

A *Plain* is a tract of level land, and when considerably raised above the level of the sea, it is called a *Plateau*, or table-land.

Plains are variously designated in different countries. In North America they are called Prairies and Savannahs; in South America, Llanos and Pampas; and in Russia, Steppes and Tundras.

A *Desert* is a barren tract of country, covered with sand or rocks.

An *Oasis* is a fertile spot in a desert.

A *Prairie* is a tract of land, generally flat, or slightly undulating, covered with long grass or small shrubs.

A *Water-shed* or water-parting is a more or less elevated region or mountain ridge from which streams flow in opposite directions.

DIVISIONS OF THE WATER.

About three-quarters of the Earth's surface is covered with water, the different parts of which are known by the following names:

An *Ocean* is an extensive body of salt water. Although the ocean may be said to be one great body of water, it is subdivided into smaller portions, which are also called *Oceans*.

A *Sea* is a smaller portion of salt water.

A *Gulf* or *Bay* is a portion of water extending into, and almost surrounded by land.

A *Strait* is a narrow portion of water connecting two seas. When it is shallow, so that it may be sounded or fathomed, it is called a *Sound*.

A *Channel* is a portion of water connecting two seas, but longer and broader than a strait. The same name is often applied to the hollow bed of a river.

A *Lake* is a body of fresh water wholly surrounded by land.

A *Lagoon* is a very shallow lake or inlet of the sea.

A *River* is a stream of fresh water, running into a lake, sea, or another river. Small rivers are called Streams, Creeks, Brooks, or Rivulets. A *Basin* is a tract of land drained or watered by a river.

A *Delta* is that portion of land occupying the space between the different mouths of the same river.

A *Tributary* or affluent is a smaller river flowing into a larger one. The *Confluence* of two rivers is the point where they unite.

An *Estuary* or *Firth* is an arm of the sea extending into the land to meet a river, and appearing to form a continuation of the river.

A *Haven*, *Port*, or *Harbor* is an enclosed area of water in which ships may find shelter. A *Road* or *Roadstead* is a larger area of water affording safe anchorage.

A *Glacier* is a river-like field of ice which forms in the upper valleys of lofty mountains and melts when it reaches the warmer valleys beneath.

An *Iceberg* is an immense floating mass of ice from the Arctic or Antarctic regions.

An *Ocean Current* is a great river-like current flowing through the comparatively motionless waters of the ocean.

CIRCLES ON THE GLOBE.

For convenience of measurement and calculation, the surface of the globe is divided by various imaginary Circles, which are shown by lines on the map.

A **Map** is a representation of the Earth, or a part of it, on a plane surface.

The upper part of a map is generally North; the lower, South; the right hand, East; the left hand, West.

The **Equator** is an imaginary circle drawn round the Earth, at an equal distance from the poles, and dividing the Earth into the Northern and Southern Hemispheres.

A **Hemisphere** is the half of a globe or sphere.

The lines running from East to West across the map

are called **Parallels** of latitude, being parallel to the Equator. They are used for reckoning distance North and South from the Equator.

The length of a degree of latitude, or the distance between the parallels, is always the same, being 60 geographical or 69 English miles.

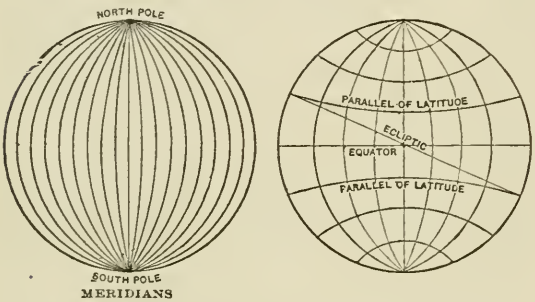
The lines running from North to South are called **Meridians.** They are drawn from one pole to the other, and cross the Equator at right angles. They are used for calculating **longitude,** or distance East or West of a given point.

The length of a degree of longitude, or distance between the meridians, varies, becoming shorter as we approach the poles. At the Equator it is 69 English miles, at Montreal about 49 miles, and at Toronto 50½ miles.

The **first meridian** from which we reckon is supposed to pass through the Royal Observatory at Greenwich. Other countries generally reckon from the meridian which passes through their own capitals.

Longitude East or West means distance East or West of the first meridian at Greenwich.

The **Ecliptic** is a great circle representing the course which the Sun appears to take during the year, and is

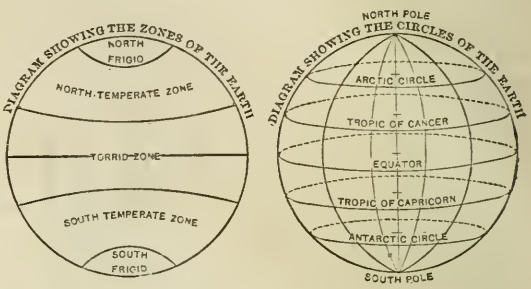


shown by a line drawn round the globe on the plane of the Sun's apparent orbit. The line of the Ecliptic, as represented on a terrestrial globe or on a map, shows where each day at noon the Sun is directly overhead. It will be remembered that the Earth gradually changes its position towards the Sun during the year which it requires to complete its revolution; consequently, the points at which the Sun is directly overhead change every day. The extent of the variation in the position of the Sun towards the Earth is from 23½° North to 23½° South of the Equator, which thus equally divides the Ecliptic.

The Ecliptic crosses the Equator at two points in the Earth's course, about the 21st days of March and September; and at these two periods we have equal day and night all over the world. These are called the **Equinoxes.**

The **Tropics** are two circles drawn round the globe at equal distances north and south of the Equator, and parallel to it, touching the extreme points of the Ecliptic, and are thus 23½° distant from the Equator. The northern is called the *Tropic of Cancer*, the southern the *Tropic of Capricorn*.

The **Polar Circles** are lines drawn round the globe parallel to the tropics, and at equal distances from them, and mark the distance the Sun's rays fall short of one



pole, when the opposite pole has its greatest inclination towards it. As the Sun then shines vertically on places 23½° north or south of the Equator, so its rays fall short of one pole 23½°, and shine beyond the other to the same distance; causing continuous day for a time at one pole and continuous night at the other.

The tropics and polar circles divide the Earth into five *Zones* or belts:

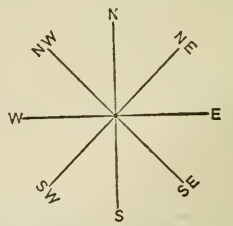
The **Torrid Zone,** extending between the tropics, and so called from the intense heat.

Two Temperate Zones, extending between the tropics and polar circles, so called from the heat and cold being less excessive than in the other zones.

Two Frigid Zones, extending from the polar circles to the poles, and so called from the intense frost and cold prevailing there.

The **Horizon** is the circle bounding the view by the apparent meeting of earth and sky.

The four **Cardinal Points** of the horizon are: North, South, East, and West. These are again sub-divided in the mariner's compass; but the principal points are:



The **Zodiac** (from *zoon*, an animal) is an imaginary belt in the heavens, extending 8° north and south of the

Ecliptic. The stars are arranged in groups or clusters, called Constellations, and each Constellation is supposed to have a resemblance to some animal or object, whose name it consequently bears. Twelve of these Constellations are in the Zodiac, usually called the Twelve Signs of the Zodiac, and are named as follows:

Aries, the ram.
Taurus, the bull.
Gemini, the twins.
Cancer, the crab.
Leo, the lion.
Virgo, the virgin.
Libra, the balance.
Scorpio, the scorpion.
Sagittarius, the archer.
Capricornus, the goat.
Aquarius, the water-bearer.
Pisces, the fishes.

The Sun rises in the Constellation *Aries* on the 21st of March, and about the 21st of every successive month he enters a new Constellation, until his apparent annual circuit through the stars is completed, on his return to *Aries*.

In consequence of the Earth moving in an elliptical, instead of a circular orbit, it is nearer the Sun at certain times than at others. Its distance from the Sun is about ninety-three millions of miles, but in mid-winter it is three millions of miles nearer than in mid-summer. The coldness of winter, notwithstanding this proximity, is accounted for thus: 1. In winter the Sun's rays fall slantingly, and consequently have less heating power than when they fall more perpendicularly, which they do in summer. 2. In winter the days are short and the nights long; and as the Earth radiates more heat during the long night than it absorbs during the short day, the cold rapidly accumulates.—*Morrison.*

NATURAL PHENOMENA.

The **Earth** is surrounded by a transparent fluid called the air or atmosphere, which moves with it, and extends to the height of about 100 miles above it. Close to the Earth it is comparatively dense, becoming thinner as we ascend.

Heat and cold are produced according as the Sun's rays shine vertically or obliquely on the Earth's surface, and also vary according to the height above the level of the sea. The heat or cold of the atmosphere is called the temperature.

In the tropics, where the Sun's rays strike vertically down, it is hottest; and within the polar circles, where the rays strike most obliquely, it is coldest. But as the air becomes thinner as we ascend, the Sun's rays gradually lose their power, so that even in the tropics there is on the mountains a height above which snow will not melt. This is called the snow-line. This line gradually decreases in height as we approach the poles. At the Equator the snow-line is 16,000 feet above the level of the sea, and in Ontario it is about 7,000 feet; and, were there high mountains in the country, their summits above that height would be perpetually covered with snow.

The atmosphere is never at rest, the particles of which it is composed being moved about by the influence of heat and cold, thus forming winds. Several contrary currents of wind may occur one above the other, as when we see the clouds moving in a different direction from the wind on the surface of the earth. When the winds move rapidly they cause hurricanes and storms.

"Winds have a purifying effect on the atmosphere; they dissipate unhealthy exhalations; they transport vapors from the sea, to moisten and fertilize the land; they carry the seeds of plants far and wide, and thus extend the empire of vegetation; finally, they waft our ships, and are in some countries made available as a motive-power for machinery. Among the most common periodical and local winds are land and sea breezes. The land receiving more heat than the sea from the Sun's rays during the day, a breeze sets in from the sea early in the forenoon and continues till about sunset. Soon after this the land, owing to the radiation of its heat, becomes cooler than the water, and a breeze sets in from the land which continues till sunrise."—*Cornell.*

In the Torrid Zone, the East or Trade winds prevail throughout the year, and opposite currents prevail in the Temperate Zones. In the North Temperate Zone the prevalent winds are from the south-west, and in the South Temperate Zone from the north-west.

Periodical winds blow in different parts of the world, as the Monsoon on the shores of the Indian Ocean; the Typhoon in the China Sea; the Sirocco, Simoom, and Harmattan from the burning deserts of Africa and Arabia.

The ocean, like the air, is never at rest, being subject to the same influences; heat and cold producing currents, winds producing waves, and the attraction of the Sun and Moon producing tides. The rivers and streams which flow into it wear away in their course the rocks, and dissolve the salt which they contain. The accumulation of this, and the continuous evaporation, cause the strong saltness of the ocean.

The principal current in the ocean is the Gulf Stream, in the North Atlantic Ocean. This flows from east to west in the Tropics into the Caribbean Sea and the Gulf of Mexico, then skirts the shore of North America as far as Newfoundland, whence it sweeps across the Atlantic and divides into two portions, one of which laves the shores of the British Islands and Norway, while the other, passing the Azores Islands, flows south till it once more reaches the great equatorial current which gave it origin. The water of the Gulf Stream is much warmer than that through which it flows, and its course rapid, varying from two to five miles an hour.

The tides are principally caused by the attraction of the Moon. The water being composed of particles more easily moved than the land, is drawn towards the Moon

as the Earth revolves on its axis, and is thus raised in one place and lowered in another. This is called the ebb and flow of the tide. Spring or high tides are caused by the joint attraction of the Sun and Moon, and neap or low tides by their attraction in opposite directions.

The heat of the Sun's rays acting on the water forms vapor which, being lighter than the air, gradually ascends. It is generally invisible, and is carried along by the winds until the temperature of the air becomes colder, when it condenses and forms clouds, and eventually falls to the Earth in the shape of rain, dew, hail, or snow. Fogs or mists are clouds resting on the Earth's surface.

The quantity of **rainfall** on different parts of the globe varies generally in proportion to the heat; it is greatest in those regions where the evaporation is excessive. A little north of the equator is a region of almost continual rain. Most of the moisture precipitated from the air is not at once evaporated, but either sinks into the earth or is collected into brooks and rivers, and so passes to the sea.

The water that sinks beneath the surface passes through the soil until it reaches some impenetrable layer of stone or clay, along which it flows until it rises again to the surface as a **spring.** In its progress the water sometimes passes through earth or rock containing iron or other minerals, with which it becomes impregnated, and appears as a **mineral spring.**

Some springs, coming from considerable depths, are warm, hot, or even boiling; their heat is attributable in some cases to volcanic, and in other cases to chemical, action, and are called **hot springs.**

The **climate** of a country is understood to mean the temperature and dryness, or moisture, of the atmosphere.

The climate is influenced by various circumstances; such as the prevalence of hot or cold winds, and the clearness or cloudiness of the sky; or the proximity of large bodies of water, which, not being so susceptible of change as the atmosphere, make the neighboring lands warmer or colder according as they are warm or cold. The altitude of a place also affects its temperature. High mountains or elevated plains, even in the Torrid Zone, have a cold or cool climate. When a country is covered with forests, its temperature is found to be about 10° colder than when well cleared and cultivated, as the trees prevent the Sun's rays from reaching the ground, which thus remains colder than it would otherwise be, and imparts its coldness to the atmosphere.

VOLCANOES AND EARTHQUAKES.

The **surface of the Earth** is supposed to be a crust surrounding a central mass in a state of fusion. The heat is found to increase one degree for every fifty-five feet of depth. The action of this intensely heated interior on the solid crust surrounding it manifests itself in Volcanoes and Earthquakes.

Volcanoes are mountains, generally conical in shape, which send forth smoke and flames, and sometimes streams of red-hot stones and ashes. The opening which ejects these substances is called the **crater.**

An **Eruption** is generally preceded by rumbling noises and slight tremors of the Earth; then steam and gases are given off in great quantities, with a loud report, as of distant cannon. Lava rises in the crater, and either flows over its edges or forces its way through the mountain side, and pours down in great rivers into the neighboring valleys. Immense rocks are hurled hundreds of feet into the air. Showers of ashes obscure the heavens and settle upon the country for miles around. Almost all the volcanoes of the globe are situated on a comparatively narrow band, surrounding the Pacific Ocean.

Earthquakes are indicated by tremblings of the Earth's crust, which, when severe, burst the ground open, throw down trees and buildings, and bury hundreds and sometimes thousands of people in the ruins. Earthquakes are most common in or near those countries where active volcanoes exist.

MINERALS.

In the Earth's crust are found many valuable minerals, the principal of which are:

Iron, the most useful metal. This is found in Canada, the United States, Great Britain, Sweden, Russia, Belgium, France, Germany, etc.

Copper is found in Canada, the United States, Chili, Australia, Norway, and other countries.

Tin is found chiefly in Cornwall, in England, and in Malacca and Australia.

Zinc is found in Prussia, Belgium, England, and the United States.

Lead is found in Great Britain, Spain, Canada, and the United States.

Gold, the most valuable of all the metals, is useful chiefly for coinage, and is most abundant in Australia, California, and British Columbia. It is found also in Quebec, Nova Scotia, and other places. More than 100 millions of dollars in value is found annually.

Platina, the rarest of all metals, is found chiefly in the Ural Mountains.

Silver is found chiefly in Mexico, California, Nevada, and South America, on the north shore of Lake Superior in Ontario, and in Norway, Russia, and Hungary, in Europe.

Mercury, or quicksilver, is found in California, Spain, and South America.

Nickel is a brilliant ductile metal largely used for

coinage. It is found principally in England, Saxony, and France.

Antimony is a bluish-white metal, generally used for alloying. It is found principally in Borneo.

Coal is a valuable mineral, and perhaps the most important for adding to the wealth of a country. It is found in greatest abundance in many parts of Great Britain and the United States, and largely in Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, Vancouver Island, and other countries.

Sulphur is found chiefly in volcanic districts.

Salt is found in every part of the world, in the various forms of mines, mountains, plains, and springs, and is also produced by the evaporation of sea-water.

Other minerals are numerous, but are of less importance.

PLANTS.

Plants are found adapted to every climate, soil, and locality, and flourish in proportion to the amount of heat, light, and moisture which they receive.

In the Torrid Zone they are most numerous, and vegetation is most luxuriant. They become less numerous and more stunted as we approach the poles, till even trees refuse to grow, and only mosses or lichens are found, upon which animals subsist.

The **Torrid Zone** is distinguished for the size and beauty of its trees and flowers, its spices and rich fruits, and its odoriferous plants. The teak, mahogany, palm, coffee, and cinnamon trees, the banana, pine-apple, and the sugar-cane, are only found in this zone.

The **Temperate Zones** are distinguished for the abundance of their fruits and grains most useful to man, for the variety and strength of the timber drawn from its forests, and for its fibrous plants, such as cotton, flax, and hemp.

The **Frigid Zones** produce nothing but mosses and lichens, except in the more temperate parts, where a little barley and rye is grown, and a few pines and other hardy trees are found.

ANIMALS.

Animals, like plants, are to be found in every region, and adapted to every climate, soil, and locality.

Amid the luxuriant vegetation of the **Torrid Zone**, animals attain the largest size; here, also, wild animals abound. The forests swarm with birds of brilliant plumage, insects, and reptiles.

In the **Temperate Zones** the more useful animals, such as the horse, cow, sheep, and deer, are abundant, and very few wild animals are to be found.

In the **Frigid Zones** comparatively few land animals are found, but sea-fowl are very numerous, and the sea abounds with the whale, seal, and walrus.

Some animals are common to all the zones, such as the dog, sheep, bear, etc.; and it is remarkable that their natural covering varies with the climate of the zone in which they are found.

MANKIND.

Mankind has been variously classified according to distinctions of form, color, skin, hair, etc. The system of Blumenbach, as the one most convenient for classification, forms the basis of nearly all subsequent schemes; and is as follows:

The **Caucasian**, including the principal nations of Europe, with the allied Asiatic races, jointly classed as Indo-European; and also the Semitic races, including the Arabs, Jews, etc.

The **Mongolian**, including the Chinese, the Tartar tribes of Central Asia, and allied races; among these the Finns and Lapps of Europe are embraced.

The **Malay**, including the natives of the peninsula of Malacca, the chief islands of the Indian Archipelago, New Zealand, etc.

The **Ethiopian**, including the chief nations and tribes of Africa; and

The **American**, including all the nations and tribes native to North and South America.

The Papuans and other islanders are styled **Negritoes**, from their negro-like color of skin, woolly hair, etc. The Australians are equally dark, but with hair generally straight.

The American Indian closely approximates to the Asiatic Mongolian.

STATES OF SOCIETY.

A **State of Society** is the condition of a people in respect to civilization. The principal states are the savage, barbarous, semi-civilized, and the civilized.

The **Savage State** is that of a people who live in tribes, and subsist on the products of nature.

The **Barbarous state** is that of a people who possess flocks and herds, and rudely till the soil.

The **Semi-civilized** state is that of a people who have a settled society, live in towns, possess a written language, and have made considerable progress in the mechanical arts.

The **Civilized**, or enlightened, state is the condition of the most advanced nations, of those that have made the greatest progress in the arts, sciences, morals, and culture. —*Swinton.*

POLITICAL DIVISIONS.

The **Political Divisions** of the earth are Empires, Kingdoms, Principalities, and Republics.

An **Empire** consists of several large countries united under the rule of one monarch, generally called an Emperor.

A **Kingdom**, or **Monarchy**, consists of one or more countries governed by a King or Queen. It is called a **Limited Monarchy** when the power of the king is restricted by law, and no laws can be made without the consent of the representatives of the people; and an **Absolute Monarchy** when the will of the monarch is supreme.

Principalities, Grand Duchies, and **Duchies** are small States governed by a Prince, Grand Duke, or Duke.

A **Republic** is a country governed by a ruler chosen by the people for a limited period, who is generally called a President.

When a number of separate States or Provinces, each maintaining its own government and laws, unite for their common interests, and have one central and supreme government, it is called a **Confederation.**

A **Colony** is a country colonized or settled by immigrants from the parent State.

A **Dependency** is a country subject to the government of another.

States or Countries in Europe are commonly spoken of as **Powers**, and are graded into classes, according to their moral and political influence. The **Five Great Powers** of Europe are Great Britain, France, Germany, Russia, and Austria. The **Lesser Powers** are ranked according to their geographical position and their military and political influence.

POPULATION AND RELIGION.

The **Population** of the earth is estimated at about 1,434 millions, divided as follows:

	Population.	No. of persons to sq. mile.
America,	100,500,000	7
Europe,	327,750,000	81
Asia,	795,600,000	46
Africa,	205,800,000	18
Oceania,	4,250,000	1
Polar Regions,	100,000	
Total,	1,434,000,000	

The **Inhabitants** are divided, according to their religious belief, into—

Christians,	385,000,000
Jews,	8,000,000
Mohammedans,	160,000,000
Brahmins,	200,000,000
Buddhists,	500,000,000
Other Religions and Pagans,	181,000,000
Total,	1,434,000,000

ROCKY MOUNTAINS, FROM FORT CALGARY.

AMERICA.

Area, 14,855,000 square miles, comprising two-sevenths of the land surface of the globe; greatest length from north to south in a direct line, 9,400 miles; greatest breadth from east to west, 3,200 miles; population, 100,500,000.

America, or the **New World**, the only great division of the earth in the Western Hemisphere, is surrounded on all sides by water: on the north by the Arctic Ocean; on the west by the Pacific Ocean; on the south by the Antarctic Ocean; and on the east by the Atlantic Ocean.

It is composed of two enormous pear-shaped masses of land, both widest towards the north, and tapering to a point towards the south, joined together by the Isthmus of Panama.

These two parts are called respectively **North** and **South America.**

America is remarkable for the extent and grandeur of its physical features; its mountain chains, rivers, lakes, plains, and forests being the largest in the world.

It was discovered by Christopher Columbus in 1492, when he arrived at the island of San Salvador, one of the Bahamas. It was not, however, till 1498, on his third voyage, that he reached the mainland of South America; North America having been visited the year before by John Cabot, a Venetian in the service of England. The new continent was named after Amerigo Vespucci, a Florentine, who accompanied Hojeda, a Spanish commander, as astronomer, and wrote an account of his discoveries in America. **Greenland** was discovered by the Norsemen five hundred years before Columbus reached America; and it is said that they also visited the shores of what is now called New England.

In shape and general features the two great divisions resemble each other. The **Rocky Mountains** of North America, and the **Andes** of South America, stretch from north to south through the whole length of the continent, forming an almost unbroken chain, about 9,000 miles in length. In both divisions this chain is nearest to the Pacific, and both have smaller ranges of mountains in the east, at the broadest part of the continents; while the centre, between the two ranges, is one vast plain. Both divisions may be divided into four great slopes—a northern, eastern, southeastern, and western; and the three first are drained in North America by the **Mackenzie, St. Lawrence,** and **Mississippi Rivers**; and in South America by the **Orinoco, Amazon,** and **La Plata Rivers.** And similarly in both continents, the sources of these rivers are divided only by a gentle rise scarcely perceptible.

The Rivers of America are especially remarkable for their length and volume of water, and also for the distance to which they are navigable, the length of the principal being:

		Miles.
North America.	Mississippi, with the Missouri,	4,500
	St. Lawrence, with Lakes,	2,140
	Mackenzie,	2,450
South America.	Amazon, with the Ucayali,	4,000
	La Plata, with the Paraguay,	2,500
	Orinoco,	1,600

All of these rivers, with their tributaries (except the Mackenzie, which flows into the Arctic Ocean), are navigable almost to their sources. This is owing to the vast plains through which they flow, and their very gradual fall towards the sea.

Compared with the other great divisions of the Earth,

America possesses but a small extent of coast line, its length being only 43,000 miles, or, in comparison with its size, only equal to half of that of Europe. It is more broken in North than in South America. The latter presents one unbroken mass of land, with no deep indentations, and but few islands along its whole coast.

As the continent of America extends through all the zones, its climate and soil vary greatly. These will be found treated fully under the head of its separate countries. It is, however, in general, more humid in the Tropics than the Eastern Hemisphere, and subject to greater extremes of heat and cold in the higher latitudes. In the north, the frozen mass of the Arctic Ocean renders it much colder than in the same latitude in Europe, and along the whole of the Western coast the high mountain ranges attract the moisture, so that rain generally prevails there to a greater extent than on the Eastern coast.

When the Spaniards first discovered the Western Continent under Columbus and other commanders, they called the native inhabitants Indians, under the impression that they had reached the East Indies. The inhabitants of Mexico and Peru were comparatively civilized, had large towns, and fixed forms of government. They welcomed the new-comers, but soon had reason to repent of their hospitality, for the lust of conquest, and the rapacity of the Spaniards and Portuguese, soon enslaved them and destroyed their cities. These peoples have almost disappeared, or are represented by debased races rapidly becoming extinct. Many interesting relics remain to prove the great progress in civilization achieved by the native races of Mexico and Peru.

The Eskimos, a short, stunted race, occupy the extreme north, and subsist by hunting and fishing. The remaining native races are scattered over the whole continent, living by the chase, and consisting of a great number of different tribes, speaking different languages.

NORTH AMERICA.

Area, 7,900,000 square miles; greatest length from north to south, including Central America, 4,700 miles; greatest breadth from east to west, 3,000 miles; persons to a square mile, 9; population, 73,000,000.

North America comprises the Northern part of the Continent of America, and is joined to South America by the Isthmus of Panama. It is bounded on the north by the Arctic Ocean; on the west by the Pacific Ocean; on the south by the Pacific Ocean and the Gulf of Mexico; and on the east by the Atlantic Ocean.

Its surface is divided into four great regions by the grand chain of the Rocky Mountains, and the lesser chain of the Alleghanies; consisting of the Northern slope towards the Arctic Ocean, the Pacific slope, the great central plain extending from the sources of the Mississippi to the Gulf of Mexico, and the Eastern slope towards the Atlantic Ocean.

The **Rocky Mountains** form the great backbone, as it may be termed, of North America, extending from the Arctic Ocean southward, through the whole length of the continent. The **Cordilleras** of Mexico and Guatemala may be considered as a continuation of the chain, although it is somewhat interrupted by the high plateaus of Mexico. The Rocky Mountains rise mostly from a high table-land, which is sometimes 5,000 feet above the sea. They occupy a region from 40 to 200 miles in breadth, and consist in some parts of two or three parallel ranges. Their highest elevation is attained in the Dominion of Canada and in Colorado—Mounts Brown and Hooker (in British Columbia) rising about 16,000 feet high—although the Cordilleras contain the celebrated volcanoes of Popocatepetl, Agua, and Orizaba, the first nearly 18,000 feet high.

Parallel with the Rocky Mountains along the Pacific coast are several successive ranges of mountains, which have been called the Alps of the Pacific, extending from Mexico to Alaska, and terminated by the lofty volcano, Mount St. Elias, 19,500 feet high. These chains are known by different names, as the **Sierra Madre,** in Mexico; the **Coast Range,** and the parallel range of the **Sierra Nevada,** in California; and the **Cascade Mountains,** in Oregon, Washington Territory, and British Columbia.

The **Alleghany Mountains,** or Appalachian chain, extend from the north of the State of Alabama to the Gulf of St. Lawrence, about 1,500 miles in length. Different portions of the same range are known by the names of the **Cumberland Mountains** in Tennessee, the **Blue Mountains** in Virginia, the **Catskill Mountains** in New York, the **Green Mountains** in Vermont, the **White Mountains** in New Hampshire, and the **Notre Dame Mountains** in Quebec. The name Alleghany belongs properly to the eastern and principal range in Virginia and Pennsylvania. Their highest summits are in New Hampshire, where they rise to the height of 6,000 feet, but elsewhere they seldom rise over 4,000 feet.

Owing to the vast plains of North America, and the gentle slope of the land, the rivers are large and numerous, and navigable far into the interior of the country. The **St. Lawrence,** with the great lakes, is navigable for upwards of 2,000 miles, the **Mississippi,** with the **Missouri,** for upwards of 4,000, and many of the other great rivers almost to their sources. In the Great Central Plain there is scarcely a watershed 1,500 feet above the level of the sea, and many of the large rivers take their rise so near each other that it is difficult to tell in which direction the land slopes.

The Principal Rivers of North America are:

In the north, the *Yukon*, *Mackenzie*, *Back* or *Great Fish*, *Churchill*, *Saskatchewan*, and *St. Lawrence*.

In the east, the *St. John*, *Connecticut*, *Hudson*, *Susquehanna*, *Delaware*, *Potomac*, and *Savannah*.

In the centre and south, the *Alabama*, the *Mississippi*, with its affluents, the Illinois, Ohio, Missouri, Arkansas, and Red Rivers, and the *Rio Grande-del-Norte*.

In the west, the *Colorado*, *Columbia*, and *Fraser*.

NORTH AMERICA
ARCTIC OCEAN
PACIFIC OCEAN
ATLANTIC OCEAN
ASIA
Behring Strait
ALASKA
GREENLAND
Danish America
Baffin Bay
Davis Strait
Arctic Archipelago
Parry Islands
Melville Sd.
Baffin Land
Hudson Strait
HUDSON BAY
DOMINION OF CANADA
Labrador Peninsula
LABRADOR
NEWFOUNDLAND
St. Johns
C. Race
C. Farewell
Julianshaab
Disko I.
Christianshaab
Frobisher B.
C. Chidley
Cumberland Sd.
Cumberland Peninsula
Hudson Strait
C. Southampton
Southampton I.
Melville Peninsula
Fox Channel
Repulse Bay
Boothia Gulf
Boothia Peninsula
Prince of Wales Land
Victoria Land
Wollaston Land
Parry Islands
Banks Land
Melville Sd.
Barrow Str.
Prince Patrick I.
Wrangell
Long Mt.
C. Lisburne
Icy C.
Pt. Barrow
Mackenzie R.
Colville R.
Great Bear Lake
Great Slave Lake
Athabasca L.
Peace R.
Fort Simpson
Fort Resolution
Fort Chipewyan
Fort Vermilion
Fort Liard
Fort Norman
Fort Good Hope
Fort Rae
Fort Anderson
Fort Yukon
Fort Selkirk
Fort Macpherson
Fort Simpson
Fort Wrangell
Fort Stikine
Fort Halkett
Fort Dunvegan
Fort Chipewyan
Fort Resolution
Fort Rae
Fort Simpson
Fort Liard
Fort Norman
Fort Good Hope
Fort Anderson
Fort Yukon
Fort Selkirk
Fort Macpher

EXERCISES ON THE LESSON.

What is the extent of America? Greatest length? Greatest breadth? In what hemisphere is it? How is it bounded? What is its shape? How is it divided? For what is it remarkable? When was it discovered? Mention the first discoverers. How do North and South America resemble each other? What mountain chains traverse them? Describe the other points of resemblance. Describe the coast line of America. Which division is most irregular? Describe the climate and soil of America. Why is it colder than in Europe in the north? Why is it more moist in the west than in the east? Has America many animals? What does America largely produce? What are the natives called? What was their condition when the continent was first discovered? How were they treated? What is known of them? What native races now inhabit the country? What is their present condition? What is the area of North America? Greatest length? Greatest breadth? Population? Average to the square mile? What proportion of the whole continent does it comprise in extent? In population? How is North America joined to South America. How is North America bounded? How may its surface be divided, and by what? Describe the Rocky Mountains? Where are the Cordilleras? Where do the Rocky Mountains attain their greatest height? What are the highest peaks? What mountains are on the Pacific coast? How far do they extend? What are the highest peaks? What are the names of the different chains? How far do the Alleghanies extend? Under what names? How high are they? Describe the general features of the rivers of North America. What contributes to make them easy of navigation? Describe the great central plain. Name the principal rivers. Where do they rise? Into what ocean, gulf, or bay do they flow? What tributaries have they? Where are the principal lakes? Name them. Describe the outline of North America. Name the principal islands. Describe the position of each. Name the principal gulfs, bays, straits, &c. Describe their position. Name the principal capes. Describe their position. Name the principal peninsulas. Describe their position. Describe the climate of North America. What is remarkable in the climate of the Dominion of Canada? Describe the soil of North America. Where are the barren tracts? What are the staple products of North America? What minerals are found? Of what extent are the coal-beds? How is North America divided? Point out the divisions on the map. What is the size of Danish America? Population? What is it supposed to be? Describe its surface. When was it said to have been discovered, and by whom? Describe the climate and soil. Name the principal settlements.

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.

What joins North and South America? Which of the principal rivers are in the Dominion of Canada? Which in the United States? What mountain ranges extend through the Dominion of Canada? Through the United States? Point out the principal lakes in the Dominion. In the United States. In Central America. What large island lies near the east coast of the Dominion? What peninsula forms the south-eastern portion of the Dominion? What large island near the west coast? What islands enclose the Carribbean Sea? What important gulf is there to the east of the Dominion of Canada? To the south of the United States? What is the southern point of the Peninsula of Lower California called? The south-eastern point of the United States? The south-eastern point of Newfoundland? What capes and straits are in the east of the Dominion of Canada? What bay is between Nova Scotia and New Brunswick? How is Alaska divided from Asia? What gulf is on the west of Mexico? What gulf is on the west of British Columbia?

The principal Lakes of North America are in the northern part, and are either in the Dominion of Canada, or form the boundary between it and the United States. They are—

Superior, *Michigan*, *Huron*, *Erie*, *Ontario*, *Great Bear*, *Great Slave*, *Athabasca*, *Winnipeg*, *Winnipegosis*, and *Lake of the Woods*.

South of these the only Lakes worthy of mention are—

Lake Champlain, just touching the Canadian frontier, *Great Salt Lake* in Utah; and *Nicaragua* in Central America.

The outline of North America is much more broken than that of South America, especially on the north and east, but compared with the extent of coast-line, the Islands, Gulfs, Promontories, etc., are not numerous.

The Principal Islands are:

In the north, *Greenland*, *Baffin Land*, *Prince Albert Land*, *Melville*, *Banks*, and *Southampton*.
In the west, *Vancouver*, *Queen Charlotte*, *Prince of Wales*, *Sitka*, and *Aleutian Isles*.
In the south, the *Bermudas*, and the *West India Islands*, comprising the Bahamas, and Great and Little Antilles.
In the east, *Newfoundland*, *Cape Breton*, *Prince Edward Island*, *Anticosti*, and *Long Island*.

The Principal Gulfs, Bays, and Straits are:

In the north, *Davis Strait* and *Baffin Bay*, *Barrow* and *Banks Straits*, *Melville*, and *Lancaster Sounds*, *Hudson Strait* and *Hudson Bay*, and its southern extremity, *James Bay*.
In the east, the *Strait of Belle Isle*, *Gulf of St. Lawrence*, *Bay of Fundy*, and *Chesapeake Bay*.
In the south, *Florida Strait*, *Gulf of Mexico*, the *Caribbean Sea*, and *Gulfs of Campeachy* and *Honduras*.
In the west, the *Gulf of California*, *Juan de Fuca Strait*, *Gulf of Georgia*, and *Behring Strait*.

The Principal Capes are:

In the east, *Farewell*, *Chudleigh*, *Charles*, *Race*, *Breton*, *Sable*, *Cod*, *Hatteras*, *Sable* (Florida), *Catoche*, *Gracias à Dios*.
In the west, *Corrientes*, *San Lucas*, *Mendocino*, *Flattery*, and *Prince of Wales*.
In the north, *Lisburne*, *Barrow*, and *Bathurst*.

The Peninsulas of North America are:

In the east, *Labrador*, *Nova Scotia*, *Florida*, and *Yucatan*.
In the west, *Alaska*, and *Lower California*.
In the north, *Boothia* and *Melville*.

North America, owing to its great extent from north to south, varies greatly in climate, according to the latitude. In general, it averages about 10° hotter in summer and 10° colder in winter than in the same latitude in Europe. In the north and east it is much colder, owing to the great extent of the frozen Arctic Ocean, from which cold currents are continually flowing southward. In the south it is hot, but varies according to the elevation of the land above the sea. On the west coast it is in general warmer and more moist than in the east. It is remarkable, that about the centre of the Dominion of Canada, along the Saskatchewan Valley to the Rocky Mountains, the climate is almost the same as in Ontario, although 10° higher in latitude, or nearly 700 miles farther north.

The soil of North America is generally rich and productive, owing chiefly to its level nature and the great number of rivers; the only barren parts of any extent being the Arctic Regions and the desert tracts in the United States along each side of the Rocky Mountains. Grain, timber, cotton, sugar, and tobacco form the great staple products.

There are few wild animals in North America, the principal being the grizzly and black bear, wolf, lynx, puma or panther, etc.; but fur-bearing animals, such as the beaver, otter, mink, marten, and others, abound in the North. The great prairies formerly abounded with buffalo, deer, and wild fowl; and in the south, wild horses are still numerous. The sea abounds with fish.

All the principal minerals are found in North America; gold, silver, copper, and lead being found in large quantities in many parts. It is estimated that the coal-beds of North America are more than ten times as large as all the others in the world put together.

North America has been colonized by settlers from Europe, principally from the British Islands, who, chiefly within the last 200 years, have explored, settled, and cultivated a territory larger than Europe; have built large cities, and carry on an extensive commerce with every quarter of the globe; and are distinguished for their energy and enterprise in agriculture and commerce, for the extensive facilities for rapid communication they possess, and for their general intelligence and cultivation.

North America is divided into

Danish America.
Dominion of Canada and Newfoundland.
United States of America.
Mexico.
Central America.
West India Islands.

DANISH AMERICA.

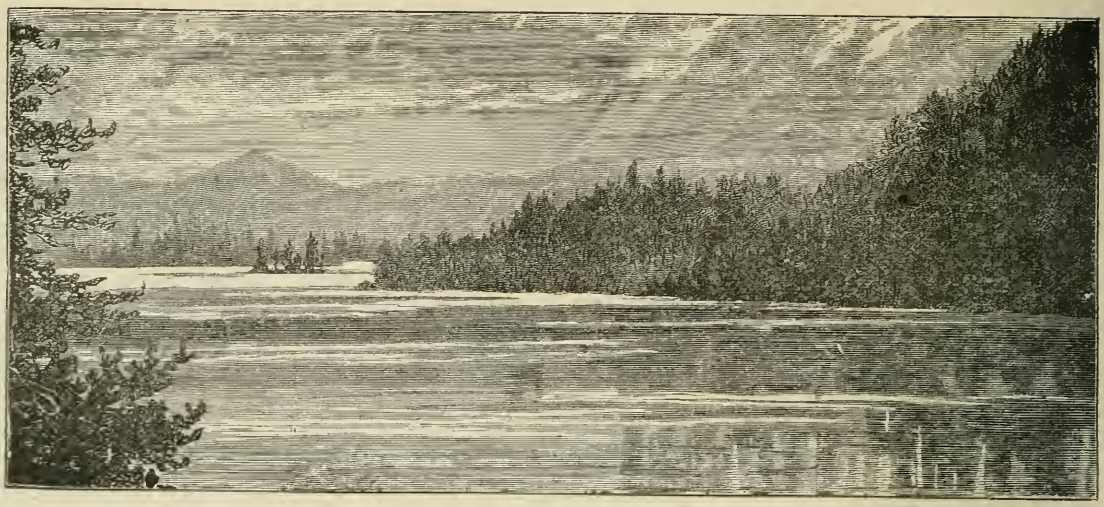
Area, 750,000 square miles: more than three times the size of Ontario; population, nearly 10,000.

Greenland, or **Danish America**, is a very large island, or possibly several islands joined by ice. The surface is high and rocky, with enormous glaciers in the hollows. It is said to have been discovered by the Norsemen five hundred years before Columbus discovered America.

The climate is cold, although in July the thermometer rises to 84°; and fogs are almost constant on the coast. The soil is unfit for cultivation, although it has been attempted with a little success in some parts.

The principal animals are the reindeer, seals, Eskimo dogs, hares, etc. Sea-fowls are very numerous.

The Danes have several settlements along the coast, at *Julianshaab*, *Uppernavik*, etc., for the purposes of trade. The chief exports are eider-down, whale and seal oil, seal-skins, and furs. The whale and seal fisheries on the coast are valuable, and are extensively carried on. The Danish population amounts only to about 300, the remainder being natives, a branch of the Eskimo race.



SOOKE LAKE, VANCOUVER ISLAND.

DOMINION OF CANADA.

Area, 3,470,392 square miles; about as large as Europe, and comprising nearly one-sixteenth part of the land surface of the globe. Greatest extent from east to west, 3,500 miles, and from north to south, about 1,400 miles; population, 4,324,810.

The **Dominion of Canada** is bounded on the north by the Arctic Ocean and Baffin's Bay; on the west by the Territory of Alaska, belonging to the United States, and the Pacific Ocean; on the south by the United States and the Great Lakes; and on the east by the Atlantic Ocean.

The Dominion of Canada comprises the whole of British North America, except the Island of Newfoundland and the peninsula of Labrador, and consists of the Provinces of

Ontario,	Prince Edward Island,
Quebec,	Manitoba,
New Brunswick,	British Columbia.
Nova Scotia,	

the Districts of Keewatin, Assiniboia, Saskatchewan, Alberta, and Athabasca, and the North-west and North-east Territories, formerly called the Hudson Bay Territory.

The chief physical features of the Dominion are:

In the west, the **Rocky Mountains**, extending from the Arctic Ocean to the United States, from north to south, and the parallel range of the **Cascade Mountains**, near the Pacific Coast, both of which here attain their highest elevations.

In the centre, the great northern slope towards the Arctic Ocean, with its numerous lakes, rivers, and marshy tracts, chiefly drained by the **Mackenzie** and **Great Fish Rivers**; and the large inland sea, Hudson Bay, from which that part of the country formerly derived its name.

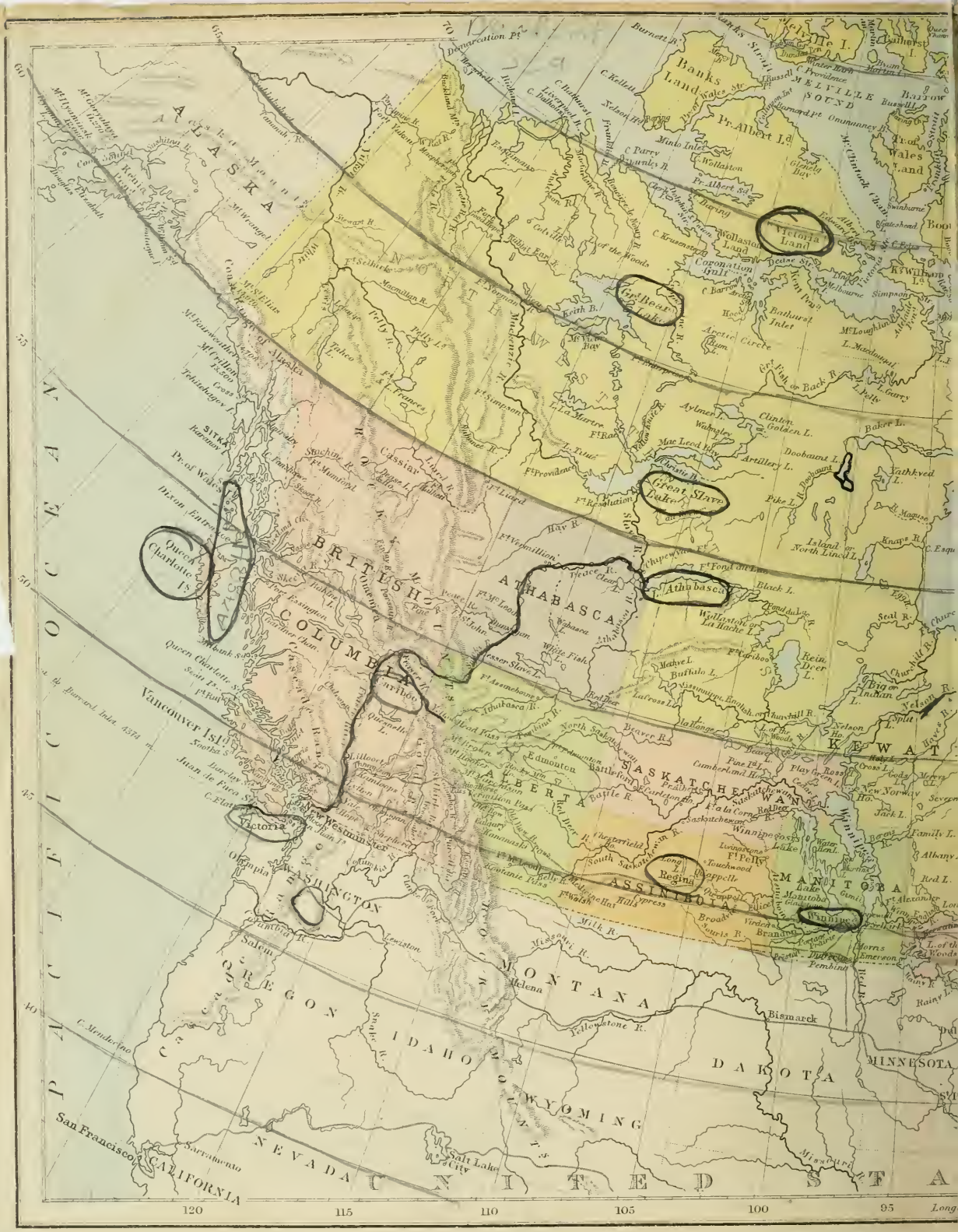
In the east, the great chain of Lakes marking the boundary between Canada and the United States, containing nearly one-half of the fresh water on the globe, and forming, with the **River St. Lawrence**, an unbroken chain of water communication for over 2,000 miles.

In the eastern and western portions of the Dominion, the country is well wooded, and timber is largely exported; but the centre consists of an immense tract of level or gently undulating prairie land, with only a few trees along the courses of the rivers, but producing abundance of nutritious grasses.

Although comprising such an extensive area, the settled portion of the Dominion is very small, consisting chiefly of a long narrow strip of land, seldom exceeding 100 miles in breadth, along the Lakes and the River St. Lawrence in Ontario and Quebec; the maritime provinces of Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, and Prince Edward Island; Manitoba, which was only admitted as a province in 1870; Vancouver Island in the west, and a few settlements along the course of the Fraser River in British Columbia.

The principal mountain ranges of Canada are the **Rocky Mountains** and the **Cascade Range**, in British Columbia; the **Wotchish Mountains**, between Quebec and the North-east Territory; the **Notre Dame Mountains**, a continuation of the Appalachian chain in Quebec;

DOMINION OF
CANADA
Great Bear Lake
Great Slave Lake
Reighndeer L.
South Indian
Lake Athebasca
Nelson
L. Winnepeg
L Winnepegosis
L. Manitoba
Lake of the Woods
Lake Superior
Lake Huron
Lake Mich.
L. Erie
L. Ontario
St Lawrence
L. C Hamplain


ALASKA
NORTH WEST TERRITORY
BRITISH COLUMBIA
ATHABASCA
SASKATCHEWAN
ASSINIBOIA
MANITOBA
KEWAT
MONTANA
DAKOTA
MINNESOTA
WYOMING
OREGON
IDAHO
NEVADA
CALIFORNIA
UNITED STATES
Banks Land
Pr. Albert L.d
Victoria Land
Great Bear Lake
Great Slave Lake
Athabasca
Queen Charlotte Is.
Vancouver Isl.d
Victoria
San Francisco
Salt Lake City
Regina
Winnipeg
Bismarck
Helena
Salem
Sacramento
Yellowstone R.
Missouri R.
Milk R.
Saskatchewan R.
Mackenzie R.
Peace R.
Athabasca R.
Columbia R.
Fraser R.
Red R.
Rainy L.
Lake Winnipeg
Lake Manitoba
Pembina
Emerson
Brandon
Portage la Prairie
Prince Albert
Battleford
Edmonton
Calgary
Fort Pelly
Touchwood Hills
Cypress Hills
Wood Mts.
Milk River
Fort Walsh
Fort Macleod
Fort Benton
Fort Assiniboine
Fort Chipewyan
Fort Resolution
Fort Simpson
Fort Liard
Fort Providence
Fort Rae
Fort Norman
Fort Good Hope
Fort McPherson
Fort Yukon
Fort Selkirk
Fort Reliance
Fort Confidence
Fort Enterprise
Fort Franklin
Fort Anderson
Fort Halkett
Fort Simpson
Fort Wrangel
Fort Stikine
Fort Durrant
Fort Rupert
Fort Langley
Fort Hope
Fort Colville
Fort Walla Walla
Fort Hall
Fort Boise
Fort Laramie
Fort Union
Fort Pierre
Fort Garry
Fort Alexander
Fort Frances
Fort William
Fort Wrangel
Fort Simpson
Fort Durrant
Fort Rupert
Fort Langley
Fort Hope
Fort Colville
Fort Walla Walla
Fort Hall
Fort Boise
Fort Laramie
Fort Union
Fort Pierre
Fort Garry
Fort Alexander
Fort Frances
Fort William
Mackenzie R.
Peace R.
Athabasca R.
Columbia R.
Fraser R.
Red R.
Rainy L.
Lake Winnipeg
Lake Manitoba
Pembina
Emerson
Brandon
Portage la Prairie
Prince Albert
Battleford
Edmonton
Calgary
Fort Pelly
Touchwood Hills
Cypress Hills
Wood Mts.
Milk River
Fort Walsh
Fort Macleod
Fort Benton
Fort Assiniboine
Fort Chipewyan
Fort Resolution
Fort Simpson
Fort Liard
Fort Providence
Fort Rae
Fort Norman
Fort Good Hope
Fort McPherson
Fort Yukon
Fort Selkirk
Fort Reliance
Fort Confidence
Fort Enterprise
Fort Franklin
Fort Anderson
Fort Halkett
Fort Simpson
Fort Wrangel
Fort Stikine
Fort Durrant
Fort Rupert
Fort Langley
Fort Hope
Fort Colville
Fort Walla Walla
Fort Hall
Fort Boise
Fort Laramie
Fort Union
Fort Pierre
Fort Garry
Fort Alexander
Fort Frances
Fort William
120
115
110
105
100
95
70
65
60
55
50
45
40

NEWFOUNDLAND
DOMINION OF
CANADA
BAFFIN BAY
BAFFIN LAND
GREENLAND
DAVIS STRAIT
HUDSON STRAIT
LABRADOR PENINSULA
NEW BRUNSWICK
NOVA SCOTIA
PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND
Quebec
Montreal
Ottawa
Toronto
Kingston
Hamilton
Buffalo
Albany
Boston
Portland
Portsmouth
Halifax
Fredericton
Charlottetown
St. John's
Detroit
Lake Huron
Lake Ontario
Lake Michigan
Lake Superior
Lake Erie
Hudson Bay
Labrador
Newfoundland
Fortune Bay
Bonavista Bay
Trinity Bay
Placentia Bay
Belle Isle
Cumberland
Resolution I.
Southampton Isld.
Mansfield
Fox Chan.
Luke Fox Land
Melville Penin.
Meta Incognita
Hall Penn.
Frobisher Bay
Ungava Bay
Nachvak B.
Hopedale
Nain
Okkak
Hebron
Port Manvers
Cape Chidleigh
Cape Dufferin
Portland Pt.
Hopedale Mts.
Hamilton Inlet
Sandwich B.
Hamilton R.
Grand Falls
Mealy Mts.
Mecatina I.
Anticosti
Gulf of St. Lawrence
Gaspe
Miquelon I.
St. Pierre I.
Placentia
Cape Race
Cape Ray
Cape Sable
Sable I.
Bay of Fundy
Gulf of Canso
Cape Breton
Sydney
Miramichi
Restigouche
Temiscouata L.
Lake St. John
Saguenay R.
Three Rivers
Lake Champlain
Lake Memphremagog
Lake Nipissing
Lake Simcoe
Georgian Bay
Lake Temiscaming
Lake Abitibi
Lake Mistassini
Lake Nichegun
Lake Winnipeg
Lake Winnipegosis
Lake Manitoba
Lake Athabasca
Lake Agamska
Lake Albany
Lake Mistassinie
Lake Canjapiscau
Lake Clearwater
Lake Whale R.
Lake Nottaway
Lake Temiscamingue
Lake Abitibi
Lake St. John
Lake Champlain
Lake Memphremagog
Lake Nipissing
Lake Simcoe
Lake Winnipeg
Lake Winnipegosis
Lake Manitoba
Lake Athabasca
Lake Agamska
Lake Albany
Lake Mistassinie
Lake Nichegun
Lake Canjapiscau
Lake Clearwater
Lake Whale R.
Lake Nottaway
Lake Temiscamingue
6000 inclusive
English Miles
0 50 100 200 300 400 500
British Miles
0 40 80
80 70 60 50 40 30 20
85 80 75 70 65 60

EXERCISES ON THE LESSON.

What is the area of Newfoundland? Population? Extent? Capital? How is Newfoundland situated? How is it separated from the mainland? How is it divided? What is also included in the government? Name the principal islands. Point them out on the map. Where are they situated? Describe the outline of Newfoundland. Name the principal bays. Point them out on the map. What is said of peninsulas? Point out the principal on the map. Name the principal capes. Point them out on the map. What is said of Cape Race? What wonderful enterprise connects Newfoundland with Europe? What is said of the other capes? Of the settlements, &c.? Describe the surface. The principal lakes and rivers. Point them out on the map. Describe the climate of Newfoundland. The soil and products. The minerals. From what does Newfoundland derive its importance? What is said of the fisheries? Who carry them on? Of the banks of Newfoundland? Of the seal-fishery? What financial statistics are given? What are the chief markets for fish? What is said of the government? Of the religions? Describe the chief towns. Point them out on the map. Where are they situated? What is the area of British Columbia? The population? Extent? What is the extent of Vancouver Island? What is the capital of British Columbia? What does it comprise? How is it bounded? Describe the surface. Name the principal mountain ranges. Point them out on the map. Name the principal passes through the Rocky Mountains. Describe the Cascade range. Where is the most valuable part of the country situated? Name the principal rivers of British Columbia. Trace their courses on the map. Describe the coast-line. Name the principal islands. The principal straits and gulfs. The principal inlets. Describe the climate. How did British Columbia first derive its importance? What minerals are found? What is said of the exports and imports? What is said of the history of British Columbia? How is the government composed? How is British Columbia divided? What is said of the inhabitants? Of the railways? What is the area of Manitoba? Population? Extent? Capital? How is Manitoba situated? What rivers intersect it? Trace the course of Red River? Of the Assiniboine? Describe the lakes. Describe the country. Its products. What project is likely to improve the country? What is the employment of many of the inhabitants? How is the population composed? What reservation is made for the half-breeds? How is the government composed? What numbers are elected to the Dominion Parliament? Describe Winnipeg. What is the area of the North-West Territory? Population? Extent? How is it bounded? To whom did the Territory belong? From whom did the Company receive the Territory? How was it ceded to Canada? Describe the surface of the country. Describe Hudson Bay. The mountains and hills. Trace them on the map. What is a remarkable feature of the country? Name the principal lakes. Point them out on the map. Describe the principal rivers. Trace them on the map. Describe the climate and soil. How may the country be divided? Describe the regions into which it may be divided. Trace them on the map. What is said of the forts of the Company? Name the principal. Point them out on the map. What is said of the people? What is said of the Hudson Bay Company? Of the Indians? How is the Territory governed? Where do the Arctic regions extend? What do they comprise? For what are they interesting? What is said of the expeditions? What has been discovered? What is said of the western part of the Arctic Ocean? What is said of the most important expeditions? Of Sir John Franklin? What is said of minerals?

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.

What mountain chains cross the western part of the Dominion? Which parts of the Dominion are in the west? Which in the east? Which province is near the centre? Which is the most southerly? Which provinces adjoin the United States? How is Ontario separated from the United States? How is Newfoundland separated from Labrador? What large bay is nearly enclosed in the Dominion? What islands are in the Gulf of St Lawrence? What large islands are off the west coast? What island is north-east of Nova-Scotia What large river flows into the Gulf of Georgia? What rivers flow into Lake Winnipeg? What river divides Ontario from Quebec? What large river is in New Brunswick? Name the lakes from west to east emptied by St Lawrence River? What rivers flow into the St Lawrence on the north bank? What lakes are partly in Manitoba? What bay is between Nova Scotia and New Brunswick? What strait is between Vancouver Island and the United States? What sound separates Queen Charlotte Island from British Columbia? What is the position of New Brunswick from Quebec? Of Prince Edward Island from New Brunswick? Of Nova Scotia from Newfoundland? In what direction is Winnipeg from Toronto? Montreal from Toronto? St John from Montreal? Halifax from St John? What is the south-eastern point of Nova Scotia called? How is Prince Edward Island separated from New Brunswick and Nova Scotia? How is Vancouver Island separated from the mainland? What is the northern point of Vancouver Island called? Give the latitude of Newfoundland. The longitude. How is Newfoundland separated from Labrador? Which is the nearest point to Cape Breton? What is the extreme north point called? What island is near it? What is the south-eastern point called? What gulf is on the west? What islands are south of Newfoundland? What island is between Newfoundland and Cape Breton? In what direction from St John is Harbour Grace? Carbonnear? Placentia? Halifax, N.S.? How is British Columbia separated from the North-West Territory? How is the mainland separated from Vancouver Island? What part of the United States lies to the north-west of British Columbia? What rivers flow into the Pacific Ocean? On what river is New Westminster situated? What is the northern point of Vancouver Island called? What groups of islands lie to the N.W. of Vancouver Island? What towns in Vancouver Island are on the Gulf of Georgia? What island lies to the west of Vancouver Island? What large lakes are in the northern part of Manitoba? What lakes are between Manitoba and Lake Superior? What river flows into the Red River from the west? What is the nearest town in the United States on the Red River. What is the southern boundary of Manitoba? What river drains Lake Winnipeg into Hudson Bay? How is Winnipeg situated? In what direction from Winnipeg is Pembina? Toronto? Quebec? Fort William? Where does Red River rise? In what direction does it flow? What strait connects Hudson Bay with the Atlantic Ocean? What large island is at the mouth of Hudson Bay? What is the southern extremity of Hudson Bay called? What rivers flow into Hudson Bay from the west? From the east? What rivers flow into James Bay? Into the Arctic Ocean? What river rises in British Columbia and flows into Lake Athabasca? Where does the Saskatchewan rise? Into what lake does it flow? What large river rises in the North-West Territory and flows into Alaska?

the **Laurentide Hills** on the north shore of the St. Lawrence; and in Nova Scotia, the **North** and **South Mountains** in the west, and the **Cobequid Mountains** in the north.

Canada is well watered, and is remarkable for the number and extent of its inland lakes. The rivers are numerous and important. The principal are:

In British Columbia: the *Fraser River*, with its tributaries, flowing into the Gulf of Georgia; the *Peace River*, with its northern branch the *Finlay River*, flowing into the *Mackenzie River;* the *Skeena* or *Simpson River*, flowing into the Pacific Ocean; and the *Columbia River*, passing into the United States, where it also flows into the Pacific Ocean.

In the North-west Territory: the *Mackenzie River*, formed by the junction of the *Athabasca* and *Peace Rivers*, flowing into the Arctic Ocean, after a course of 2,450 miles; the *Coppermine*, and *Back* or *Great Fish Rivers*, also flowing into the Arctic Ocean; the *Saskatchewan*, *Assiniboine*, and *Red Rivers*, flowing into Lake Winnipeg, and thence as the *Nelson* into Hudson Bay; the *Churchill*, *Severn*, and *Albany Rivers* flowing into Hudson Bay.

In Ontario and Quebec: the *St. Lawrence*, draining the great Lakes, and flowing into the Gulf of St. Lawrence, with its chief tributaries, the *Ottawa*, *St. Maurice*, and *Saguenay*.

In New Brunswick: the *St. John*, rising in the United States, and flowing into the Bay of Fundy; and the *Restigouche*, and *Miramichi*, flowing into the Gulf of St. Lawrence.

The Principal Lakes of Canada are:

In the North-west and North-east Territories: *Great Bear*, *Great Slave*, *Athabasca*, *Wollaston*, *Reindeer*, *Winnipeg*, *Winnipegosis*, *Manitoba*, and *Lake of the Woods* in the west, and *Abbitibbe*, *Mistassini*, and *Clear-water* in the east.

In Ontario: *Superior*, *Huron*, *St. Clair*, *Erie*, *Ontario*, *Simcoe*, *Nipissing*, and *Nipigon*.

Between Ontario and Quebec: *Temiscaming*.

In Quebec: *Grand Lake* and *Lake St. John*.

The **coast-line** of Canada is much broken, differing in this respect from the remainder of the continent. The north shore, owing to the enormous masses of ice in the Arctic Ocean, is almost inaccessible.

On the east are *Prince Edward*, *Anticosti*, *Cape Breton*, and *Magdalen Islands;* the *Gulf of St. Lawrence*, *Strait of Belle Isle*, *Northumberland Strait*, *Gut of Canso*, and *Bay of Fundy*.

On the north are *Cumberland*, *Southampton*, *Cockburn*, *Melville*, and numerous other islands; *Baffin Bay* and *Davis Strait;* *Barrow* and *Banks Straits*, *Melville* and *Lancaster Sounds;* the *Gulf of Boothia;* *Hudson Strait* and *Hudson Bay*, with its southern extremity, *James Bay*.

On the west coast are *Vancouver*, *Queen Charlotte*, and numerous other islands; *Juan de Fuca Strait*, the *Gulf of Georgia*, and *Queen Charlotte Sound*.

The **climate** of Canada is temperate, dry, and healthy, but more inclined to extremes than in the same latitude in Europe. In the east it is colder than in the west, the temperature of Quebec, Northern Ontario, and Manitoba being colder than that of British Columbia. The soil is very fruitful in almost every section. In the older provinces all kinds of grain are grown in abundance, and largely exported; while grapes, melons, peaches, in the more southern parts, besides more hardy fruits, are extensively cultivated. Ontario is essentially an agricultural country. In the other provinces it is colder, but vegetation is very rapid. In Quebec the thermometer sometimes falls in winter as low as 30° to 40° below zero, and the St. Lawrence is closed by ice during five months of the year. Although the snows of winter form the great highways for traffic, especially in the interior of the country, still the opening of navigation is always anxiously looked forward to.

Canada is rich in **minerals**. Gold is extensively found in British Columbia, and to a smaller extent in Nova Scotia. Copper, lead, and iron are found in Ontario, Quebec, and Nova Scotia; silver on the north shore of Lake Superior; and coal in Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, Vancouver Island, and the North-west and North-east Territories. The petroleum and salt wells of Ontario are also valuable and productive.

The principal **industries** are the fisheries, shipbuilding, and lumbering in the Maritime Provinces and Quebec; agriculture and lumbering in Ontario; and gold-mining in British Columbia. Manufactures of woollens, iron, leather, cotton, tobacco, etc., are steadily increasing as the country progresses.

Railways, which in a new country are the pioneers of civilization, have received a great impetus of late years, and there are now in existence upwards of 10,000 miles of railway in the Dominion. In addition to this, the Canadian Pacific Railway, extending from Montreal to British Columbia, a distance of 2,800 miles, is being rapidly constructed, and is to be completed by the year 1890, when an unbroken line of railway will extend from Halifax, in Nova Scotia, to Victoria, in Vancouver Island. In order to assist navigation, a large amount has been expended on canals; on the St. Lawrence and Ottawa Rivers to overcome the rapids; the Rideau Canal to connect Lake Ontario with the Ottawa; and the Welland Canal, to pass the Falls of Niagara, and to connect Lakes Erie and Ontario. The Welland Canal has just been enlarged between Lakes Erie and Ontario, and now admits vessels of 1,500 tons. Its facilities are now likely to divert the greater part of the enormous Western grain traffic through Canadian territory.

Quebec, which is the oldest settled part of the Dominion, is peopled principally by the descendants of the original French settlers, some of whom are also to be found in the other provinces; **Ontario**, **Nova Scotia**, **New Brunswick**, and **Prince Edward Island**, by the descendants of the United Empire Loyalists (who left the United States when those States became independent), and by settlers chiefly from the British Islands; **Manitoba** and **British Columbia** have been peopled but recently by settlers from the other provinces and elsewhere.

The original inhabitants, the Indians, now remaining,

belong principally to the Huron, Chippewa, Mohawk, and Micmac tribes in the east, and to the Cree, Saulteaux, and Blackfeet tribes in the west. Lands have been reserved for them in the various provinces, and in the more settled parts they have their own villages and houses, and cultivate their own farms.

The **Dominion of Canada is a Confederation**, each of the provinces of which it is composed having its own separate Legislature and Executive Council, presided over by a Lieutenant-Governor appointed by the Dominion Government.

The **Dominion Government** is similar to that of Great Britain, on which it is modelled, and consists of Her Majesty the Queen (represented by the Governor-General), and a Parliament, consisting of the House of Commons and the Senate.

The **Governor-General** is assisted by an Executive Council of 13 members, who must each have a seat in Parliament, and who are responsible for the good government of the country.

The **House of Commons**, at present, consists of members who are elected by the people for one Parliament only, which cannot exceed five years. The number of members to each province is proportioned to the population, and provision is made for increase, the number apportioned to Quebec (65) being made the basis of calculation.

The **Senate** consists of 78 members, appointed for life by the Crown.

The number of Members to each Province is:

	Commons.	*Senate.*
Ontario,	92	24
Quebec,	65	24
New Brunswick,	17	10
Nova Scotia,	20	10
Manitoba,	5	3
British Columbia,	6	3
Prince Edward Island,	6	4
The Dominion,	211	78

It requires the assent of all three branches of the Government (the Governor-General, the Senate, and the House of Commons) for any bill to become law; but the House of Commons alone has the privilege of introducing money bills.

The Dominion Government regulates all matters connected with trade and navigation, the customs and excise, the administration of justice, militia and defence, and the postal service; but the Provincial Governments have control of all local matters.

The **commerce** of Canada has largely increased, chiefly within the last ten years; the imports now amounting to about 110,000,000 dollars yearly; and the exports, consisting principally of grain and lumber, to about 100,000,000 dollars.

The annual **revenue** of the Dominion amounts to upward of 30,000,000 dollars, and the expenditure to about the same. The debt is about 160,000,000, principally incurred by the construction of public works.

From the revenue of the Dominion, subsidies are paid to the Provincial Governments, which are as follows:

Ontario,	$1,196,872
Quebec,	959,252
New Brunswick,	427,349
Nova Scotia,	405,082
British Columbia,	208,019
Prince Edward Island,	152,288
Manitoba,	105 653
	$3,455,515

The **system of education** in Canada is very complete, and is liberally supported by the Provincial Governments. There are a great many colleges in the country, most of which possess University powers.

There is no established **religion** in Canada, all denominations enjoying equal privileges.

Passing over the discoveries of the Norsemen, from Iceland, in the tenth century, Canada, or rather Newfoundland, was discovered by Sebastian Cabot in 1497; and in 1535, Jacques Cartier sailed up the St. Lawrence as far as the Lachine Rapids, and took possession of the country in the name of the King of France. Port Royal (or Annapolis), Quebec, and Montreal were the first towns founded by the French, and settlements were gradually extended into the country, with outposts at Niagara, Detroit, etc. After various vicissitudes, Quebec was taken by the British, under Wolfe, in 1759, and in 1763 Canada was ceded to Britain; the population then amounting to 69,000. Under the treaty, the French Canadians retain their own religion and laws (except the Criminal law, which is that of England), and are guaranteed equal rights with other British subjects. The French language, as well as the English, is still used in Parliament, in the law courts of Quebec, and in all public documents. The provinces of Ontario, Quebec, Nova Scotia, and New Brunswick were united under the name of the Dominion of Canada, on July 1, 1867. By Her Majesty's decision, Ottawa was selected as the capital, and stately Parliament buildings have been erected there at a large cost.

ONTARIO.

Area, about 180,000 square miles; population, 1,923,228; persons to square mile, 11.

Ontario, formerly called **Upper** or **Western Canada**, comprises that portion of the Dominion of Canada west and south of the Ottawa River extending to the Great Lakes, which separate it from the United States. It is divided into forty-three counties, including one provisional county, and five districts, which may be classed in three sections: those in the Western Peninsula, those on Lake Ontario, and those on the St. Lawrence River.

PROVINCE OF
ONTARIO

84
83
82
81
80
District of
ALGOMA
L. Nipissing
634 ft.
NORTH CHANNEL
Grand Manitoulin Island
GEORGIAN BAY
PARRY SOUND
District
LAKE
HURON
389 feet above the Sea
Nottawasaga Bay
MUSKOKA
SIMCOE
GREY
BRUCE
DUFFERIN
YORK
PEEL
HALTON
WELLINGTON
WATERLOO
PERTH
HURON
Goderich
Bay City
E. Saginaw
Saginaw Bay
Port Austin
Point aux Barques
Lake Simcoe
Barrie
Toronto
Hamilton
Guelph
Stratford
Woodstock
Brantford
St. Catharines
OXFORD
BRANT
MIDDLESEX
LAMBTON
KENT
ESSEX
Sarnia
Port Huron
London
Petrolia
St. Thomas
Chatham
Windsor
Sandwich
Detroit
Amherstburg
Lake St. Clair
Thames R.
NORFOLK
HALDIMAND
Port Dover
Port Stanley
Long Point Bay
Long Point I.
LAKE ERIE
573 feet above the Sea
Erie
Dunkirk
Monroe
Pigeon B.
Pt. Pelee
Pelee I.
Longitude W.

78
77
76
75
74
46
45
44
43
42
PROVINCE OF
ONTARIO
English Miles
0 10 20 30 40 50
Railways open
D° in construction
Canals
LAKE ONTARIO
250 feet above the Sea
OTTAWA
RUSSELL
PRESCOTT
GLENGARRY
STORMONT
DUNDAS
CARLETON
RENFREW
LANARK
GRENVILLE
LEEDS
FRONTENAC
HASTINGS
PETERBOROUGH
NORTHUMBERLAND
PR. EDWARD
HALIBURTON
MONTREAL
Ottawa River
Rideau Canal
River St. Lawrence
Oswego
Rochester
Syracuse
Utica
Schenectady
Ithaca
Elmira
Binghamton
Oneida Lake
Cobourg
Port Hope
Belleville
Peterborough
Kingston
Napanee
Brockville
Prescott
Ogdensburgh
Cornwall
Alexandria
Hawkesbury
Lachute
Carillon
Cotton Landing
Valleyfield
Lancaster
Martintown
Dundas
Morrisburg
Merrickville
Smiths Falls
Perth
Carleton Place
Almonte
Arnprior
Renfrew
Pembroke
Petawawa
Mattawa
Deux Rivières
Rapides des Joachim
Portage du Fort
Bryson
Calumet I.
Allumette I.
Chichester
Fort William
Otter Lake
Buckingham
Clarence
Original
Plantagenet
Cumberland
New Edinburgh
OTTAWA
Bytown
Rideau Canal
Bells Corners
Richmond
Gloucester
Orleans
Cumberland
Vankleek Hill
Dalhousie
Cotton Landing
Lancaster
Martintown
Cornwall
Dundas
Malone
Watertown
Carthage
Sackett Harb.
Pulaski
Rome
Seneca
Cayuga L.
Cortland
Auburn
Owego
Chemung
Crooked L.
Watkins
Canisteo
Tioga
Susquehanna
Mohawk R.
Genesee R.
Black R.
Racket R.
Long L.
White Fish L.
L. Simon
Lièvre R.
Gatineau R.
Blanche R.
Rouge R.
Lake Nipissing
Mississippi L.
Mississippi R.
Madawaska R.
Bonnechere R.
Petawawa R.
Chalk River
Allumette I.
Trout L.
Cedar L.
Round L.
Little Opeongo
Opeongo L.
Victoria L.
Barry's Bay
Egansville
Douglas
Admaston
Renfrew
Clontarf
Eganville
Killaloe
Whitney
Madawaska
Griffith
Maynooth
Denbigh
Mitawatchan
Vennachar
Ompah
Lanark
Almonte
Carleton Place
Smiths Falls
Perth
Merrickville
Kemptville
Prescott
Brockville
Morristown
Ogdensburgh
Edwardsburgh
Spencerville
Oxford
Wolfe I.
Portland
Newboro
Charleston
Lyn
Delta
Westport
Loughboro L.
Wright's L.
Frontenac
Kingston
Napanee
Bath
Adolphustown
Amherst I.
Prince Edward
Picton
Consecon
Wellington
Big Sandy B.
Salmon Pt.
Pt. Petre
Duck I.
South B.
Colborne
Brighton
Trenton
Belleville
Deseronto
Shannonville
Tyendinaga
Bay of Quinte
Lake Ontario
Cobourg
Port Hope
Newcastle
Bowmanville
Oshawa
Whitby
Pickering
Toronto
Peterborough
Lakefield
Norwood
Campbellford
Hastings
Stirling
Omemee
Keene
Millbrook
Cavan
Clarke
Darlington
Bethany
Harwood
Otonabee
Trent
Rice
Lake
Indian River
Burleigh
Eldorado
Bridgewater
Madoc
Belmont
Stoco L.
Deer Bay
Boshkung L.
Kawartha L.
Kenebec Falls
Burnt River
Minden
Haliburton
Kajick Manitou L.
Whye L.
Gull R.
Gelert
Lake
Salmon R.
Gull R.
Baptiste L.
Calabogie L.
Calabogie
Daore
Bagot
Palmers Rapids
Combermere
Whale R.
Whale L.
Bark L.
Long L.
Mud Lake
Bark Lake
Round L.
Little Opeongo
Opeongo L.
Victoria L.
Trout L.
Cedar L.
Chalk River
Petawawa
Pembroke
Laurentides Park
Rapides des Joachim
Mattawa
Deux Rivières
Ottawa River
Allumette I.
Chichester
Fort William
Otter Lake
Buckingham
Clarence
Original
Plantagenet
Cumberland
New Edinburgh
OTTAWA
Bytown
Rideau Canal
Bells Corners
Richmond
Gloucester
Orleans

EXERCISES ON THE LESSON.

What is the area of Ontario? Population? How many persons are there to a square mile? What does Ontario comprise? How is it bounded? How is it divided? Name the counties and their chief towns. State how each county is bounded. Where are the chief towns situated? What is said of the unsurveyed lands? Describe the surface of Ontario. Point out the hills and ridges on the map. What form the principal features of Ontario? Name the great lakes. Which is the largest, &c.? Describe Lake Superior. Describe Lake Huron. Point out on the map the principal bays in it. The rivers flowing into it. What towns do they flow past, and what lakes do they drain? Point out the towns on its shores. How does Lake Huron empty? Describe Lake St Clair. What river flows into it? What town does it flow past? Point them out on the map. How does Lake St Clair empty? Describe Lake Erie. Point out on the map the principal river flowing into it. What towns does it flow past? Point out the principal towns on Lake Erie. How is it emptied? Describe the Falls of Niagara. Describe Lake Ontario, and point out its principal features. What rivers flow into it? What towns are on its shores? Point them out on the map. How is Lake Ontario drained? What other lakes are there? Point them out on the map. What is the outlet of Lake Ontario? Describe the St Lawrence. What lakes are in its course? What rivers flow into it? Describe the Ottawa. What lakes are in its course? Name its tributaries. What islands are at its mouth? When did Ontario begin to be settled? What is said of it? What are the chief employments of the inhabitants? What are the chief products? What is said of the minerals of Ontario? Of the petroleum springs? Of the fisheries? Of the salt-wells? How is Ontario governed? Who appoints the Lieutenant-Governor? For what term is the Legislative Assembly elected? What is the revenue? Describe the chief towns of Ontario. Point them out on the map. State where they are situated and for what noted.

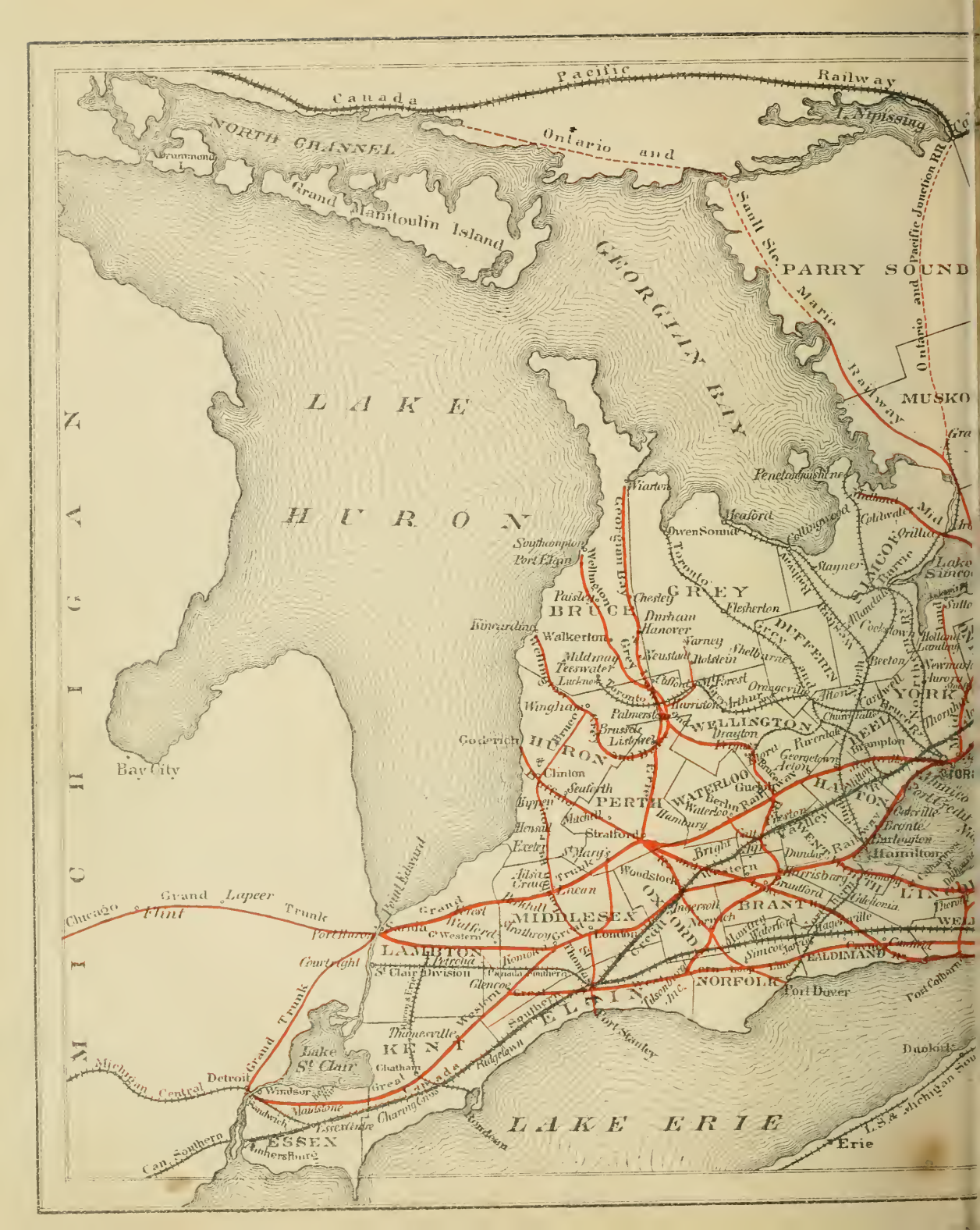
EXERCISES ON THE MAP.

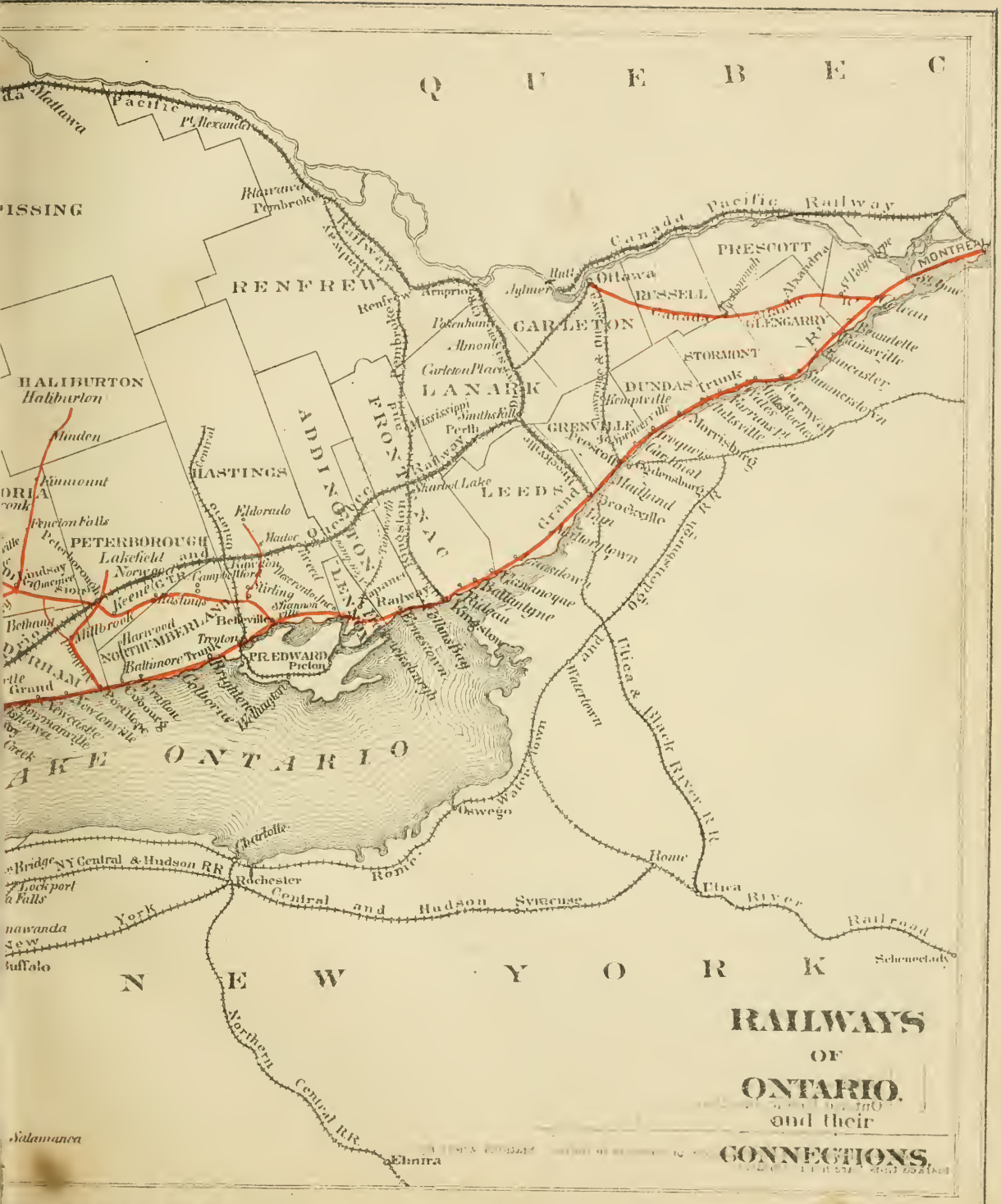
What counties touch on Lake Ontario? On Lake Erie? On Lake Huron? On Georgian Bay? On St Lawrence River? On the Ottawa River? In what county is Kingston? Toronto? London? Ottawa? St Catharines? Guelph? Windsor? Sarnia? Niagara? Brockville? Belleville? Cobourg? Peterboro'? Port Hope? Name the principal towns on Georgian Bay. On Lake Huron. On the Rivers St Clair and Detroit. On Lake Erie. On Lake Ontario. On the St Lawrence. What large river and lake nearly connects Georgian Bay with the Ottawa River? What large islands are in Lake Huron? What islands are in Lake Erie? What peninsula in Lake Ontario? What lakes and rivers nearly surround the western peninsula? What river forms the north-eastern boundary? What rivers separate Ontario from the United States? Which is the most southerly county of Ontario? In what direction does the Niagara River flow? The St Clair River? The Detroit River?

RAILWAYS OF ONTARIO.

RAILWAY.	MILES.	STATIONS.
CANADA PACIFIC RAILWAY. — Main Line	2906	***Montreal, Ottawa,** Bell's Corners, *Carleton Jnc.*, Almonte, Packenham, Arnprior, Renfrew, Pembroke, Mackey's, Mattawa. ***Winnipeg, *Port Moody.**
ONTARIO AND QUEBEC DIVISION. — Brockville Division	46	*Brockville, Smith's Falls, Carleton Jnc.*
ONTARIO AND QUEBEC DIVISION. — St. Lawrence and Ottawa Division.	54	*Prescott*, Spencerville, Kemptville, *Chaudiere Jnc.*, **Ottawa.**
ONTARIO AND QUEBEC DIVISION. — Credit Valley. — Main Line	211	*Smith's Falls*, Perth, *Sharbot Lake, Rawdon*, Norwood, **Peterboro'.** *Myrtle, Agincourt*, **Toronto.**
ONTARIO AND QUEBEC DIVISION. — Credit Valley. — Main Line	121	**Toronto.** *Streetsville, Milton*, **Galt,** *Drumbo*, **Woodstock,** *Ingersoll*, **St. Thomas.**
ONTARIO AND QUEBEC DIVISION. — Credit Valley. — Orangeville Branch	35	*Streetsville Jnc., Brampton, Riverdale, Church Falls, Alton*, **Orangeville.**
ONTARIO AND QUEBEC DIVISION. — Credit Valley. — Elora Branch	27	*Church Falls, Fergus, Elora.*
ONTARIO AND QUEBEC DIVISION. — Toronto, Grey and Bruce. — Main Line	122	**Toronto,** Weston, *Cardwell Jnc., Alton*, **Orangeville,** Shelburne, Flesherton, Owen Sound.
ONTARIO AND QUEBEC DIVISION. — Toronto, Grey and Bruce. — Teeswater Branch	70	**Orangeville,** Arthur, *Mount Forest*, **Harriston,** Gorrie, Teeswater.
ONTARIO AND QUEBEC DIVISION. — Canada Southern. — Main Line	228	***Buffalo, Victoria,** *Niagara Jnc.*, **Welland Jnc., Canfield,** *Hagersville*, Waterford, *Hawtrey*, **Tilsonburg, St. Thomas,** *St. Clair Jnc., Ridgetown, Charing Cross, Essex Centre*, Maidstone, Sandwich, **Windsor, *Detroit.**
ONTARIO AND QUEBEC DIVISION. — Canada Southern. — Running powers granted. — Amherstburg Branch	16	*Essex Centre*, Amherstburg.
ONTARIO AND QUEBEC DIVISION. — Canada Southern. — Running powers granted. — St. Clair Division	66	**St Thomas,** *St. Clair Jnc., Loop Line Jnc., Great Western Jnc., Petrolia Jnc.*, Courtright.
ONTARIO AND QUEBEC DIVISION. — Canada Southern. — Running powers granted. — Petrolia Branch	7	*Petrolia Jnc., Petrolia.*
ONTARIO AND QUEBEC DIVISION. — Canada Southern. — Running powers granted. — Niagara Division	30	***Buffalo, Victoria,** *Niagara Jnc.*, Chippawa, **Niagara Falls,** Queenston, Niagara.
Northern and Northwestern Railway — Main Line	151	*Port Dover, Jarvis, Hagersville, Caledonia*, **Hamilton,** *Burlington, Milton, Georgetown, Riverdale, Cardwell Jnc., Beeton*, Alliston, *Collingwood.*
Northern and Northwestern Railway — Northern Division	115	**Toronto,** Thornhill, Aurora Newmarket, Holland Landing, **Allandale, Barrie,** *Colwell*, Stayner, *Collingwood*, Meaford.
Northern and Northwestern Railway — Muskoka Branch	51	**Allandale, Barrie,** *Orillia, Atherley* (to Gravenhurst.)
Northern and Northwestern Railway — Barrie and Beeton Branch	26	**Barrie, Allandale,** Cookstown, *Beeton.*
Northern and Northwestern Railway — North Simcoe Branch	30	**Barrie, Allandale,** *Colwell*, Penetanguishene.
Kingston and Pembroke Railway	.....	*Kingston, Sharbot Lake*, Mississippi.
Cobourg and Rice Lake Railway	15	*Coboury*, Baltimore, Harwood.
Ontario Central Railway	.....	Picton, Wellington, Consecon, *Trenton.*
Huron and Erie Railway	.....	Rondeau, Blenheim, *Charing Cross, Chatham*, Dresden, Wallaceburgh.
Napaneo and Tamworth Railway.	.....	*Napanee*, Newburg, Tamworth.

NOTE.—Stations where *two* roads join or cross are in *italics*. Stations where *more than two* roads join or cross are **bold-faced**. Places marked thus * are not in Ontario.


Canada Pacific Railway
NORTH CHANNEL
Ontario and
Grand Manitoulin Island
Sault Ste Marie
Ontario and Pacific Junction Rly
PARRY SOUND
GEORGIAN BAY
LAKE HURON
MICHIGAN
MUSKO
Wiarton
Penetanguishene
Owen Sound
Meaford
Collingwood
Southampton
Port Elgin
Georgian Bay
Toronto
Stayner
Barrie
Lake Simcoe
GREY
BRUCE
Chesley
Durham
Hanover
Flesherton
DUFFERIN
Kincardine
Walkerton
Mildmay
Teeswater
Lucknow
Harriston
Arthur
Orangeville
Shelburne
Holstein
Newmarket
Aurora
YORK
Wingham
Palmerston
Brussels
Listowel
WELLINGTON
Brampton
Goderich
HURON
Clinton
Seaforth
PERTH
Stratford
Mitchell
Hamburg
Waterloo
Berlin
Guelph
Georgetown
Acton
Milton
HALTON
Bay City
Grand Trunk
Chicago
Flint
Lapeer
Port Huron
Point Edward
Sarnia
Watford
Petrolia
Wyoming
Alvinston
Courtright
LAMBTON
St Clair Division
Glencoe
Strathroy
London
MIDDLESEX
Woodstock
Ingersoll
Tilsonburg
OXFORD
Brantford
Harrisburg
Dundas
Hamilton
BRANT
Caledonia
Dunnville
Port Colborne
Welland
Simcoe
Port Dover
NORFOLK
HALDIMAND
Port Stanley
ELGIN
Thamesville
KENT
Lake St Clair
Chatham
Windsor
Detroit
Michigan Central
Sandwich
Malden
Amherstburg
ESSEX
Can. Southern
Great Western
Canada Southern
Lake Erie & Detroit River
LAKE ERIE
Erie
Buffalo


Q U E B E C
Pacific
Pembroke
Canada Pacific Railway
PRESCOTT
MONTREAL
Ottawa
RUSSELL
RENFREW
CARLETON
GLENGARRY
STORMONT
DUNDAS
HALIBURTON
Haliburton
Minden
LANARK
GRENVILLE
Prescott
Brockville
Morrisburg
HASTINGS
ADDINGTON
FRONTENAC
LEEDS
Eldorado
PETERBOROUGH
Lakefield and Norwood
Lindsay
Campbellford
Trenton
Belleville
Picton
PRINCE EDWARD
Napanee
Kingston
Gananoque
Ballantyne
Odelltown
Grand Trunk
Victoriaville
Richmond
Sherbrooke
Waterloo
Magog
Coaticook
Island Pond
Newport
Lake Memphremagog
Stanstead
Compton
Sutton
Farnham
Granby
Waterloo
Shefford
Cowansville
Bedford
Iberville
St Johns
Rouses Point
Plattsburgh
Burlington
Swanton
Essex
Ogdensburgh
Utica & Black River RR
Watertown
Oswego
Rome
Utica
Syracuse
Rochester
NY Central & Hudson RR
Central and Hudson River Railroad
Schenectady
Albany
Troy
Buffalo
Niagara Falls
Lockport
Bridgeport
Salamanca
Elmira
Northern Central RR
N E W Y O R K
L A K E O N T A R I O
RAILWAYS
OF
ONTARIO,
and their
CONNECTIONS.

	RAILWAYS.	MILES.	STATIONS.
GRAND TRUNK RAILWAY.	Main Line	1129	*Portland, *Richmond, *Montreal, *Coteau, Lancaster, Cornwall, Morrisburg, Prescott, Brockville, Kingston, Napanee, Deseronto Jnc., Belleville, Trenton, Colborne, Cobourg, Port Hope, Bowmanville, Oshawa, Whitby, Scarboro', Toronto, Brampton, Georgetown, Guelph, Berlin, Stratford, St. Mary's, Lucan, Park Hill, Sarnia, *Port Huron, *Detroit, *Chicago.
	Buffalo and Lake Huron Division	160	*Buffalo, Fort Erie, Port Colborne, Dunnville, Canfield, Caledonia, Brantford, Paris, Drumbo, Tavistock, Stratford, Seaforth, Clinton, Goderich.
	Georgian Bay and Lake Erie Division	167	Wiarton, Chesley, Hanover, Harriston, Palmerston, Listowel, Stratford, Tavistock, Woodstock, Norwich, Hawtrey, Simcoe, Port Dover.
	Palmerston and Durham Branch	26	Palmerston, Mount Forest, Varney, Durham.
	Waterloo and Galt Division	15	Waterloo, Berlin, Galt.
	St. Mary's and London Division	22	St. Mary's, London.
	Canada Atlantic Division	79	Coteau, Alexandria, Casselman, Chaudiere Jnc., Ottawa.
GREAT WESTERN DIVISION.	Main Line	229	Niagara Falls, Merritton, St. Catharines, Grimsby, Hamilton, Dundas, Harrisburg, Paris, Woodstock, Ingersoll, London, Komoka, Glencoe, Chatham, Windsor.
	Wellington, Grey and Bruce Division	137	Brantford, Harrisburg, Galt, Preston, Guelph, Elora, Fergus, Drayton, Palmerston, Harriston, Clifford, Mildmay, Walkerton, Paisley, Port Elgin, Southampton.
	W. G. & B., South Extension	67	Palmerston, Listowel, Brussels, Wingham, Lucknow, Kincardine.
	Brantford, Norfolk and Port Burwell Division	43	Harrisburg, Brantford, Norwich, Tilsonburg.
	London, Huron and Bruce Division	74	London, Hyde Park, Lucan, Exeter, Clinton, Blyth, Wingham.
	London and Pt Stanley Division	23	London, St. Thomas, Port Stanley.
	Loop or Air Line Division	145	Glencoe, St. Thomas, Tilsonburg, Simcoe, Jarvis, Cayuga, Canfield Jnc., Welland Jnc., Fort Erie, *Buffalo.
	Toronto Line	39	Toronto, Oakville, Burlington, Waterdown, Hamilton.
	Sarnia Branch	51	Komoka, Strathroy, Watford, Wyoming, Sarnia.
	Petrolia Branch	6	Wyoming, Petrolia.
	Niagara Falls Branch	17	Niagara Falls, Allanburg, Welland, Welland Jnc.
MIDLAND DIVISION.	Main Line	125	Toronto, Scarboro' Jnc., Stouffville, Uxbridge, Wick, Manilla Jnc., Lindsay, Omemee, Peterboro', Millbrook, Port Hope.
	Whitby Division	45	Whitby, Brooklin, Port Perry, Manilla Jnc., Lindsay.
	Haliburton Division	56	Lindsay, Fenelon Falls, Minden, Haliburton.
	Belleville Division	66	Peterboro', Hastings, Campbellford, Stirling, North Hastings Jnc., Belleville.
	Midland Branch	78	Wick, Sunderland, Lorneville Jnc., Beaverton, Atherley, Orillia, Waubaushene, Midland.
	Sutton Branch	27	Stouffville, Sutton, Jackson's Point.
	Lakefield Branch	9	Lakefield, Peterboro'.
	Millbrook and Omemee Branch	15	Millbrook, Bethany, Omemee.
	Lindsay and Coboconk Branch	37	Lindsay, Lorneville Jnc, Victoria Road, Coboconk.
	Madoc Branch	29	Belleville, North Hastings Jnc., Madoc.
	Ontario and Sault Ste. Marie	.....	Atherley, Gravenhurst, Sault Ste. Marie (proposed route).
	Ontario Pacific Junction	....	Gravenhurst, Callender (proposed route).

NOTE.—Stations where *two* roads join or cross are in *italics*. Stations where *more than two* roads join or cross are **bold-faced**. Places marked thus * are not in Ontario.

The **Western Counties**, or those occupying the peninsula nearly surrounded by Lakes Ontario, Erie, Huron, and Simcoe, are—

Counties.	*Chief Towns.*
Essex,	Sandwich, Windsor, Amherstburg.
Kent,	Chatham, Bothwell.
Elgin,	St. Thomas, Port Stanley, Port Burwell, Aylmer.
Norfolk,	Simcoe, Port Dover, Port Rowan.
Haldimand,	Cayuga, Caledonia, Dunnville.
Welland,	Welland, Thorold, Port Colborne, Niagara Falls, Drummondville.
Lincoln,	St. Catharines, Niagara, Port Dalhousie.
Wentworth,	Hamilton, Dundas.
Halton,	Milton, Georgetown, Oakville.
Peel,	Brampton, Streetsville, Port Credit.
York,	Toronto, Newmarket, Aurora.
Middlesex,	London, Strathroy, Lucan, Parkhill.
Oxford,	Woodstock, Ingersoll, Norwich, Tilsonburg.
Brant,	Brantford, Paris.
Perth,	Stratford, St. Mary's, Mitchell, Listowel.
Waterloo,	Berlin, Galt, Preston, Waterloo, Ayr.
Wellington,	Guelph, Elora, Fergus, Mount Forest.
Lambton,	Sarnia, Petrolia, Point Edward.
Huron,	Goderich, Clinton, Seaforth.
Bruce,	Walkerton, Southampton, Kincardine, Paisley.
Grey,	Owen Sound, Durham, Meaford.
Dufferin,	Orangeville.
Simcoe,	Barrie, Bradford, Collingwood, Orillia, Midland.
Algoma District,	Sault Ste. Marie, Wellington Mines.
Muskoka District,	Bracebridge, Gravenhurst.
Parry Sound Dis't,	Parry Sound.
Nipissing Dis't,	Mattawa.
Thunder Bay District,	Prince Arthur's Landing.

Central Counties, North of Lake Ontario.

Counties.	*Chief Towns.*
Ontario,	Whitby, Oshawa, Uxbridge, Beaverton, Cannington.
Durham,	Port Hope, Newcastle, Bowmanville, Millbrook.
Victoria,	Lindsay, Omemee, Bobcaygeon.
Northumberland,	Cobourg, Brighton, Colborne.
Haliburton,*	Minden.
Peterborough,	Peterborough, Ashburnham, Hastings.
Prince Edward,	Picton.
Hastings,	Belleville, Trenton, Madoc, Stirling.
Lennox and Addington,	Napanee, Bath, Newburgh.
Frontenac,	Kingston, Portsmouth.

Eastern Counties, between the Ottawa and St. Lawrence Rivers.

Leeds,	Brockville, Gananoque.
Lanark,	Perth, Smith's Falls, Carleton Place, Almonte.
Renfrew,	Pembroke, Renfrew, Arnprior.
Grenville,	Prescott, Merrickville, Kemptville.
Dundas,	Morrisburg, Iroquois
Carleton,	Ottawa, New Edinburgh.
Stormont,	Cornwall.
Russell,	Russell
Glengarry,	Alexandria, Lancaster.
Prescott,	L'Orignal, Hawkesbury.

In the north and north-western parts of the province are still vast tracts of unsurveyed lands, covered with the primeval forests, where even the lumberman does not penetrate. Railways are being extended, new roads are being opened up, and settlements made every year, so that before long these districts will probably be as thickly peopled as the already-named counties.

The **surface** of Ontario is in general level, or gently undulating, with only sufficient rise to form a watershed for the rivers flowing north or south. From the Niagara River a ridge extends westward, at a short distance from Lake Ontario, as far as Hamilton, then turns northward, terminating in the *Blue Mountains*, near Collingwood on the Georgian Bay, where it attains the highest elevation in Ontario. A similar ridge separates the streams flowing into Lake Ontario from those flowing into Lakes Simcoe and Huron. The north shores of Lakes Huron and Superior are rugged and precipitous. The *La Cloche Mountains* are on the northern shore of Lake Huron.

The principal feature of Ontario is its great **chain of inland lakes**, forming, with the River St. Lawrence, a continuous water communication of over 2,000 miles.

	Length.	*Breadth.*	*Area.*	*Height above the sea.*
Superior,	420 miles.	160 miles.	32,000 sq. miles.	630 feet.
Huron, with Georgian Bay,	280 "	190 "	24,000 "	578 "
St. Clair,	26 "	25 "	320 "	570 "
Erie,	240 "	80 "	10,000 "	565 "
Ontario,	180 "	65 "	7,300 "	232 "
Michigan,	320 "	80 "	25,600 "	578 "

These lakes now form the great highway of commerce for Canada and the Western States of America, and the St. Lawrence is the natural outlet.

The extent of country drained by the lakes, although great, is small compared with their area, as no rivers of importance flow into them. They occupy the hollow between the watersheds from which the rivers flowing into Hudson Bay and those of the United States to the south flow; in many cases these rise within a few miles of the lakes, as in the case of the Illinois River, near Lake Michigan.

Lake Superior is the largest body of fresh water on the globe, and is remarkable for the extensive iron, copper, and silver mines on its shores; and for the Pictured Rocks, a high range of cliffs of various colors, along its southern coast. The *River St. Louis* flows into it at the extreme west end, and the *Nipigon River*, the outlet of *Lake Nipigon*, flows into it from the north. From Prince Arthur's Landing a railroad has been constructed to Manitoba. The St. Mary River connects Lake Superior with Lake Huron, and near its outlet from the former lake are the rapids of the Sault Ste. Marie, to avoid which two canals have been made by the United States.

Lake Huron is noted for its extensive fisheries, white fish and salmon trout being chiefly taken; for its valuable copper mines, the most important of which are the Wellington mines; and for its numerous islands, of which the *Manitoulin Islands* are the principal. On the east is *Georgian Bay*, separated from Lake Huron by a peninsula, and terminating in *Matchedash Bay*, *Nottawasaga Bay*, and *Owen Sound*. The *Nottawasaga River* flows into the bay of the same name. *Lake Simcoe* is drained into *Lake Couchiching*, and thence into Georgian Bay by the *River Severn*, and *Lake Nipissing* by *French*

* Haliburton is a provisional county only.

River. The rivers *Saugeen* and *Maitland* flow into Lake Huron from the western peninsula. On the west coast of the lake is a deep inlet called *Saginaw Bay*. The principal towns on Lake Huron are *Goderich*, *Kincardine*, and *Southampton*, on the shore of the western peninsula; *Owen Sound*, *Meaford*, *Collingwood*, and *Parry Sound* on Georgian Bay; and *Saginaw* in Michigan. Lake Huron flows into Lake St. Clair by the St. Clair River, at the head of which is *Sarnia*.

Lake St. Clair is a small shallow lake with a rapid current, and is dangerous for navigation. The *River Thames*, rising in Perth County, flows past *St. Mary's*, *London*, and *Chatham* into it on the south-east. The *Detroit River* connects Lake St. Clair with Lake Erie It is about 30 miles long, and from one to two broad. *Windsor*, *Sandwich*, and *Amherstburg* are situated on it, and opposite Windsor is *Detroit*, on the United States side

Lake Erie is remarkable for its sudden storms. It is the most shallow of the great lakes, its mean depth being less than 100 feet. It contains the Islands *Long Point* and *Pelee*. The *Grand River* rises in the county of Wellington, and flows past *Elora*, *Galt*, *Paris*, *Brantford*, *Caledonia*, and *Dunnville*, into Lake Erie toward its north-eastern extremity, after a course of upwards of 100 miles. The principal towns on Lake Erie are *Port Stanley*, *Port Burwell*, *Port Dover*, and *Port Colborne*, on the Canadian side; and *Buffalo*, *Dunkirk*, *Erie*, *Cleveland*, *Sandusky*, and *Toledo*, on the United States side. Lake Erie is connected with Lake Ontario by the *Niagara River*, on which are the celebrated Falls of Niagara, distant from Lake Ontario about 14 miles. The river, at the outlet of Lake Erie, is about three-quarters of a mile wide, and flows with a rapid current. About a mile and a half above the Falls are *Grand* and *Navy Islands*. Below these islands a series of fierce rapids begins, until, at the Falls, the river descends about 160 feet. The Falls are divided by a little island called Goat Island, the largest volume of water being on the Canadian side, and forming the "Horse-shoe Fall," so called from its semicircular form. The mass of water which falls is enormous, and produces a deafening roar The force of the current below the Falls is so great that its depth cannot be sounded. After flowing in a rapid and turbulent stream, between lofty precipices, it forms the Whirlpool, and then flows with a smooth but rapid current towards Lake Ontario.

Lake Ontario is the smallest of the five great lakes, but is the most important for Canadian trade. *Burlington Bay*, on which Hamilton is built, is at the western extremity. On the north shore is the remarkable *Peninsula of Prince Edward*, nearly separated from the mainland by the *Bay of Quinté*, which is noted for its beautiful scenery. The *Trent*, *Moira*, and *Napanee Rivers* flow into the Bay of Quinté. The principal Canadian towns on Lake Ontario are *Hamilton*, *Toronto*, *Port Hope*, *Cobourg*, and *Kingston; Belleville* on the Bay of Quinté. *Rochester*, *Oswego*, and *Sackett's Harbor* are on the United States side.

Lake Michigan is entirely within the United States, but is connected with Lake Huron by the Strait of Mackinaw

Besides these, there are: *Lakes Simcoe*, *Muskoka*, *Rosseau*, and *Joseph*, connected with Lake Huron; and a chain of smaller lakes extending through Victoria, Peterborough, and other adjoining counties, and connected with the Bay of Quinté by the River Trent; *Lakes Nipissing*, *Temiscaming*, and others, are farther north.

The **St. Lawrence** forms the outlet of the great chain of inland lakes, and flows from Lake Ontario into the Gulf of St. Lawrence, a distance of about 750 miles. At the point where it issues from Lake Ontario it forms the Lake of the "Thousand Islands," celebrated for the variety, beauty, and picturesqueness of its scenery. Below this, and extending as far as Montreal, are several long and dangerous rapids, called the Galops, Long Sault, Coteau, Cedars, Cascades, and Lachine.

Steamers and rafts pass down these in safety: vessels can only return by means of canals on the banks of the river. The St. Lawrence is navigable for large sea-going ships up to Montreal. At Quebec the river is two miles wide, and below that it gradually widens until it enters the gulf. The St. Lawrence has three large lake expansions on its course—*Lakes St. Francis*, *St. Louis*, and *St. Peter*—and receives, besides the *Ottawa*, all the rivers in the Province of Quebec, as mentioned on pages 22–23.

The **Ottawa** takes its rise under that name in Lake Temiscaming, and joins the St. Lawrence at the Island of Montreal, after a course of 350 miles, or including the chief feeder of Lake Temiscaming, of over 500 miles. It has numerous lake expansions, the principal being the *Allumettes*, *Chats*, *Chaudière*, and *Two Mountains*. The Chaudière Falls at Ottawa are very grand. The principal tributaries of the Ottawa are the *Petewawa*, *Bonnechère*, *Madawaska*, and *Rideau* on the south, and the *Du Moine*, *Gatineau*, *Du Lièvre*, *Du Nord*, and *L'Assomption* on the north bank. It forms the boundary between Ontario and Quebec until near its mouth, and enters the St. Lawrence by three branches, enclosing the *Islands of Montreal*, *Bizarre*, and *Jesus*.

Ontario was but thinly settled up to 1794, when York, now called Toronto, was founded. The whole population of the Province was then only about 65,000. Since that period, and especially within the last twenty years, it has increased very rapidly, and is now the most important province of the Dominion.

Agriculture and **lumbering** form the chief employments of the inhabitants. Large quantities of grain, principally wheat and barley, also of lumber, square timber, cattle, and dairy produce, are annually exported. The

wheat, flour, and barley of Ontario are considered among the best on the continent.

The mines of Ontario are very valuable, especially the copper and silver mines of Lakes Huron and Superior, although they have not hitherto been worked to any great extent. Gold is also found, but not in great quantity, in the vicinity of Madoc, county of Hastings. Valuable petroleum springs are numerous in the western peninsula, at Oil Springs, Petrolia, Enniskillen, and other places, and are giving employment to a large number of men. The fisheries on Lake Huron are extensive and valuable.

Salt-wells have been discovered at Goderich, Seaforth, and other places in the counties of Huron and Bruce, and yield large quantities of the purest salt.

The Legislature of Ontario consists of a Lieutenant-Governor with an Executive Council of 6 members, and a Legislative Assembly of 88 members. The Lieutenant-Governor is appointed by and holds office during the pleasure of the Governor-General of Canada; but cannot be removed within five years of his appointment without cause shown.

The Legislative Assembly is elected by the people, and continues, unless dissolved by the Lieutenant-Governor, for four years. There must be at least one session of the Assembly every year.

The annual revenue is about 3,000,000 dollars.

There are nine cities in Ontario—Toronto, Hamilton, Ottawa, Kingston, London, St. Catharines, Guelph, Brantford, and Belleville.

Toronto (86,415), situated on Lake Ontario, was founded in 1794 by General Simcoe, and then called York. It is the largest city and the capital of Ontario, and was one of the capitals, alternately with Quebec, of United Canada before Ottawa was chosen. It is distinguished for the number and elegance of its public buildings, among which are the University of Toronto, Trinity College, Knox College, Osgoode Hall, McMaster Hall, the Custom House, the Post Office, and the Normal School. It is the seat of the law courts, and the centre of education for Ontario. It is entered by six railways, possesses a fine harbor, and carries on a large trade.

Ottawa (27,412), the capital of the Dominion of Canada, is situated on the Ottawa River, just below the Chaudière Falls. It contains the Parliament Buildings, erected at a cost of upwards of 3,000,000 dollars, and is celebrated for its beautiful situation. It is distant from Montreal 100 miles. The Rideau Canal connects it with Kingston, and just below the city are the Rideau Falls. It is the principal centre of the lumber trade, vast quantities of timber being floated down the Ottawa and its affluents.

Hamilton (35,961), situated at the head of Burlington Bay, is the second city in Ontario in population and commercial importance. It is well built, the principal buildings being of stone, and has extensive waterworks. Being at the head of navigation on Lake Ontario, it has a large trade with the western peninsula.

Kingston (14,091), situated at the eastern extremity of Lake Ontario, just above the Lake of the "Thousand Islands," is one of the oldest cities in Ontario. It possesses several forts, being the only fortified town in the upper province. Its buildings are mostly of stone, which is found in the neighborhood in great abundance. It has two colleges, Queen's and Regiopolis, and carries on a large shipping trade.

London (19,746), on the Thames, is the principal city in the peninsula. It is situated in the midst of a populous and rich agricultural country. It has numerous fine buildings, and is the seat of the Western University and Hellmuth Ladies' College.

St. Catharines (9,631) is beautifully situated on the Welland Canal, possesses mineral springs, and is a favorite resort for invalids and an attractive summer residence.

Guelph (9,890) is the centre of a rich agricultural country, and carries on important manufactures.

Brantford (9,616) is beautifully situated on the Grand River.

Belleville (9,516), on the Bay of Quinté, at the mouth of the Moira, ships a large quantity of grain, lumber, and iron ore. It is the seat of Albert University and Albert College.

St. Thomas (8,367) is an important railway centre.

Dundas (3,709) near Hamilton, and *Galt* (5,187) on the Grand River, are important manufacturing towns.

Chatham (7,873) on the Thames; *Peterborough* (6,812) and *Lindsay* (5,089) in the interior, carry on a large lumber trade.

Cobourg (4,957) and *Port Hope* (5,585) are important towns on Lake Ontario, and export lumber and produce. Victoria University is situated in Cobourg.

Woodstock (5,373), *Ingersoll* (4,318), and *Stratford* (8,239) in the western peninsula; *Perth* (2,467) on a branch of the Rideau, and *Brockville* (7,609) on the St. Lawrence, carry on a large local trade in grain and lumber.

Niagara (1,441), the first capital of the old province of Upper Canada, is at the mouth of the Niagara River, in an extremely rich and fertile country, but is now of little importance.

Collingwood (4,445) on Georgian Bay; *Goderich* (4,564) on Lake Huron; *Port Stanley*, *Port Dover*, and *Port Colborne*, on Lake Erie, derive their importance from shipping.

Sarnia (3,874) on the St. Clair River, and *Windsor* (6,561), on the Detroit River, are the western termini of the Grand Trunk Railway main line.

QUEBEC.

Area, 188,688 square miles; population, 1,359,027; persons to square mile, 7.

The **Province of Quebec**, formerly Lower or Eastern Canada, comprises that portion of the Dominion which extends along the St. Lawrence from the Ottawa River to the Gulf of St Lawrence, and is bounded on the east and south by New Brunswick and the United States.

It is divided into 20 judicial districts, and these are again subdivided into 60 counties. To assist the memory, these may be classed thus: Counties on the Ottawa; those on the north bank of the St. Lawrence; those on the south bank; and those lying inland between the latter and the United States, usually called the Eastern Townships.

Counties on the Ottawa.

Counties.	*Chief Places.*
Pontiac,	Bryson, Portage du Fort.
Ottawa,	Aylmer, Hull.
Argenteuil,	Lachute, St. Andrews.
Two Mountains,	Ste. Scholastique, St. Eustache.
Vaudreuil,	Vaudreuil.
Soulanges,	Coteau Landing.
Jacques Cartier,	Island of Montreal, Lachine, Point Claire.
Hochelaga,	Island of Montreal, Montreal.
Laval,	Islands Jesus and Bizarre, Ste Rose, St. Vincent de Paul.

Counties on the North Bank of the St. Lawrence.

Terrebonne,	St. Jerome, Terrebonne, Ste. Therese.
L'Assomption,	L'Assomption.
Montcalm,	Ste. Julienne Rawdon.
Joliette,	Joliette.
Berthier,	Berthier.
Maskinongé,	Rivière du Loup.
St. Maurice,	Three Rivers, Yamachiche.
Champlain,	Batiscan, Ste. Anne.
Portneuf,	Cap Santé, Portneuf.
Quebec,	Charlesbourg, Quebec.
Montmorency,	Chateau Richer.
Charlevoix,	St. Paul's Bay, Ste. Irénée.
Chicoutimi,	Chicoutimi.
Saguenay,	Tadousac. Murray Bay.

Counties on the South Bank of the St. Lawrence.

Huntingdon,	Huntingdon.
Chateauguay,	Ste Martine, Chateauguay.
Napierville,	Napierville, St. Remi.
St. John's,	St. John's.
Beauharnois,	Beauharnois.
Laprairie,	Laprairie, Caughnawaga.
Chambly,	Chambly, Longueuil.
Verchères,	Verchères.
Richelieu,	Sorel. St. Ours.
St. Hyacinthe,	St. Hyacinthe.
Rouville,	Ste. Marie.
Iberville,	Ste. Athanase.
Bagot,	St. Hugues.
Yamaska,	St. François, Yamaska, La Baie.
Nicolet,	Bécancour, Nicolet.
Lotbinière,	Lotbinière, St. Croix.
Lévis,	Point Lévis.
Dorchester,	Ste. Hénédine, St. Anselme.
Bellechasse,	St. Michel.
Montmagny,	St. Thomas.
L'Islet,	St. Jean, Port Joli, L'Islet.
Kamouraska,	Kamouraska.
Temiscouata,	Ile Verte, Rivière du Loup, Cacouna.
Rimouski,	Rimouski.
Gaspé,	Percé, Gaspé
Bonaventure,	New Carlisle.

Eastern Townships.

Missisquoi,	Frelighsburg, Bedford.
Brome,	Knowlton.
Shefford,	Waterloo.
Drummond,	Drummondville.
Arthabaska,	St. Christophe.
Megantic,	Leeds Village, Inverness,
Beauce,	St. François, La Beauce.
Wolfe,	Dudswell.
Richmond,	Sherbrooke, Richmond.
Compton,	Cookshire, Compton.
Stanstead,	Stanstead, Coaticook.

The **Island of Bonaventure**, to the east of Gaspé, is an important fishing station. The *Magdalen Islands*, situated in the Gulf of St. Lawrence, 50 miles north of Prince Edward Island, are high and rugged, but important for the fisheries which are carried on by the inhabitants, who are of French descent, and number about 3,200. *Anticosti* is a barren and almost uninhabited island. The principal islands, besides these, are in the St. Lawrence and Ottawa Rivers. The *Island of Montreal*, on which the city is built, and the islands *Bizarre* and *Jesus*, adjoining it, the *Island of Orleans*, just below Quebec, and *Isle aux Coudres*, *Hare* and *Bic Islands*, and a few others lower down, are in the St. Lawrence; and the islands *Calumet* and *Allumette* in the Ottawa.

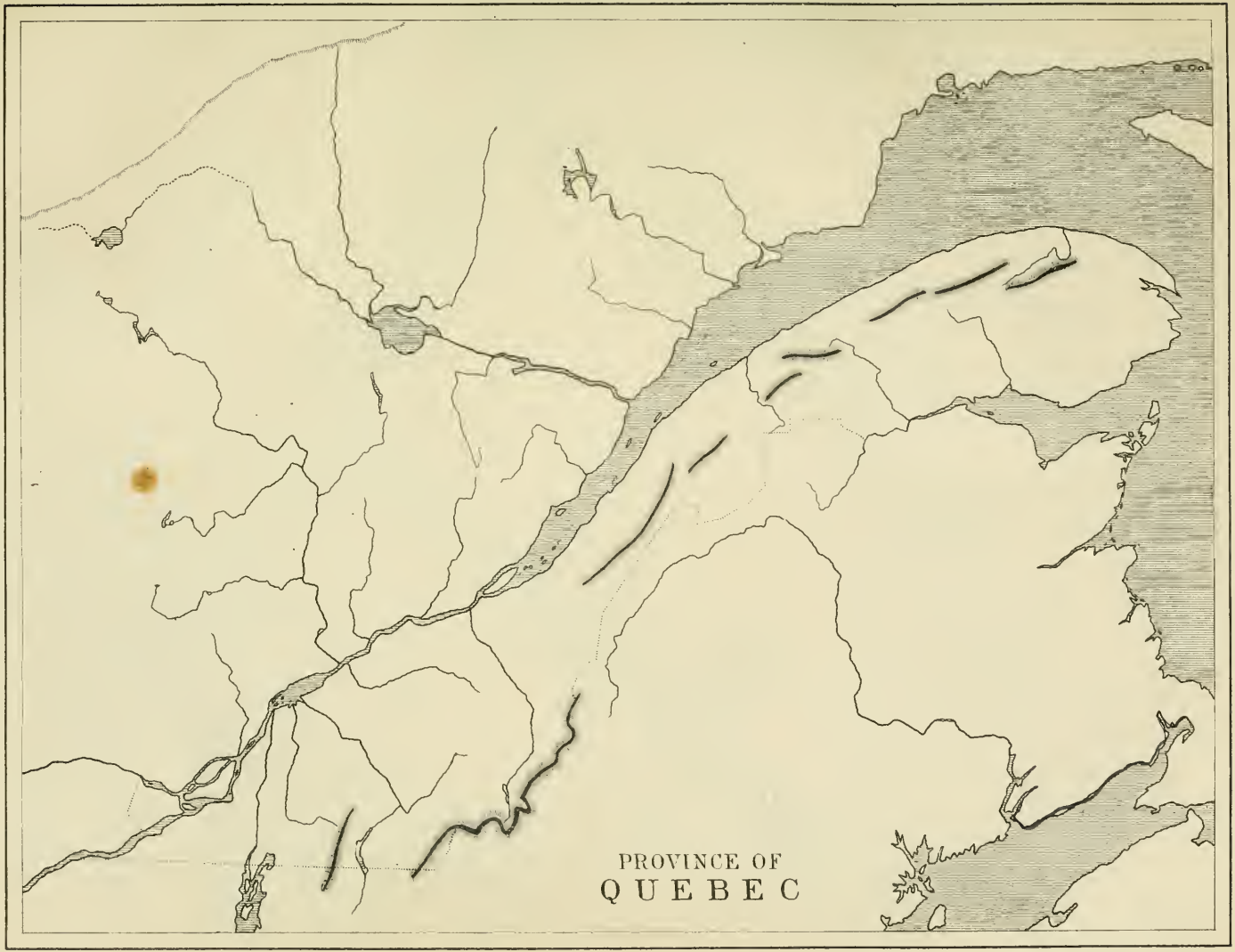
The **surface** of Quebec is much more mountainous than that of Ontario; the rivers also are larger, and the lakes numerous but small.

The **Notre Dame Mountains**, a continuation of the White Mountains of New Hampshire, extend (under various names, as the Shickshock and Ste. Anne Mountains) to the extremity of Gaspé, where they form an elevated table-land 1,500 feet high. Their principal summits are Mount Logan and Mount Murray, nearly 4,000 feet high. In the more southern part of the range, in the eastern townships, they are capable of cultivation to their summits, and are generally low and rolling. The *Laurentide Hills* are a rugged range of hills skirting the north bank of the St. Lawrence in the lower part of its course, and extending from Labrador to near Quebec, where they leave the river, but still keep nearly parallel with it, until about 30 miles west of Montreal, when, skirting the Ottawa for about 100 miles, they cross it and curve round to near Kingston. From there the range again extends north-westward to the shores of Lakes Huron and Superior. Their average height is about 1,300 feet, but some of their summits below the city of Quebec rise to nearly 3,000 feet. They are remarkable for the numerous small lakes which they enclose, many of which are yet unexplored, although upwards of 1,000 are already laid down on the maps. The hills are generally covered to their summits with dense forests of pine.

The **principal rivers** are on the north side of the St. Lawrence.

The **St. Maurice** rises in a number of small lakes near the boundary of the North-East Territory, and falls into the St. Lawrence at Three Rivers. It is over 400 miles in length. Twenty-four miles above Three Rivers, is the Fall of Shawenegan, 150 feet high.

The **Saguenay** rises in Lake St. John, issuing in two streams, which unite after a few miles. It flows into the St. Lawrence at Tadousac, after a course of 100 miles, or including under the same name the chief feeder of Lake St. John, of over 300 miles. It is of great depth,


PROVINCE OF
QUEBEC

PROVINCE OF
QUEBEC
English Miles
0 10 20 30 40 50
75
74
73
72
71
49
48
47
46
45
Lake St John
Chicoutimi
Saguenay R.
CHICOUTIMI
CHARLEVOIX
MONTMORENCY
QUEBEC
PORTNEUF
MASKINONGE
Three Rivers
MONTMAGNY
BELLECHASSE
LOTBINIERE
DORCHESTER
NICOLET
MEGANTIC
BEAUCE
ARTHABASKA
YAMASKA
DRUMMOND
WOLFE
RICHMOND
SHEFFORD
COMPTON
BROME
STANSTEAD
ARGENTEUIL
TWO MOUNTAINS
VAUDREUIL
HUNTINGDON
MISSISQUOI
OTTAWA
ONTARIO
Ottawa River
St Lawrence R.
Montreal
Sherbrooke
Three Rivers
Quebec
NEW YORK
VERMONT
NEW HAMPSHIRE
Longitude West

69
68
67
66
65
49
48
47
46
45
Pt des Monts
Pt St Nicolas
Manicougan Penins
Pt Outardes
Pt Betsiamites
Saut au Cochon
Saut au Mouton
Mile Tache
Intercolonial R.R.
Barnaby L.
Bic I.
Bic
St Fabien
St Simon
St Mathieu
Trois Pistoles
Ile Verte
I. Verte
Red I.
Rimouski
St Fluvien
Metis
L'Assomption R.
Father Pt
St Felicite
Matane
St Paul
Cap Chat
St Anne des Monts
Mt Louis
Grande Ville
Cloridorme
Fox River
Mt Bayfield 2973
Mt Logan 3567
Mt Albert 3700
Notre Dame Mts
Conte Mt 2910
Gaspé Peninsula
Gaspé Basin
Douglastown
Cape Gaspé
Gaspé Bay
Barachois de Malbaie
Pt St Peters
Mal Bay
Percé
C. Canon
Bonaventure I.
C. D'Espoir
Cape des Rosiers
Grande Pabos
Newport
Pt Macquereau
Bonaventure
New Richmond
Port Daniel
Cascapedia R.
Nouvelle
Carleton
New Carlisle
Dalhousie
Restigouche R.
Matapedia
Matapedia R.
Causapscal
Metis Lakes
Assametquagan R.
Pic 1200
Eine charge
Chaleur Bay
Bathurst
Nepisiguit R.
Intercolonial
Miramichi Bay
Chatham
Newcastle
Richibucto
Miramichi R.
Moncton
Salmon R.
Fredericton
Grand L.
Woodstock
St John R.
Tobique R.
Aroostook R.
Edmundston
Madawaska R.
Temiscouata L.
Squatook L.
Green R.
Long L.
St Francois R.
L. de l'Est
Allagash R.
Penobscot R.
Chesuncook L.
Lake Moosehead
Hampton
Chignecto Bay
St John
Quaco
St John Harb.
Mines Chan.
Bay of Fundy
St Andrews
Passamaquoddy Bay
Magaguadavic R.
St Croix R.
Gulf of St Lawrence
New Brunswick
United States
Nova Scotia
J. Bartholomew, Edin.

EXERCISES ON THE LESSON.

What is the area of Quebec? Population? How many persons are there to a square mile? What is the capital of Quebec? How is Quebec bounded? How is it divided? Name the counties and their chief places. How is each county bounded? How are they classed? What islands belong to Quebec? Describe them. Where are they situated? Describe the surface of Quebec. Describe the mountains. Trace them on the map. Describe the course of the St Maurice River. Trace it on the map. Describe the course of the Saguenay. Trace it on the map. Name the other principal rivers. Trace them on the map. Where do they rise? Name the principal lakes. Where are they situated? Describe the climate and soil of Quebec. Minerals. From what does Quebec derive its importance? What is said of the St Lawrence? Of the fisheries? Of lumbering? How is Quebec governed? Who appoints the Lieutenant-Governor? Who appoints the Legislative Council? Who elect the Legislative Assembly? What is the revenue? Describe the principal towns. Point them out on the map, and state where they are situated. Describe the Victoria Bridge.

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.

Which counties adjoin New Brunswick? Which adjoin the United States? Which is the most easterly point of Quebec? What large bay is between the eastern part of Quebec and New Brunswick? What islands are in St Lawrence River below Quebec? Which of the United States does Quebec adjoin? What lake is in the south of Quebec mostly in the United States? What lake expansion of the St Lawrence is between Montreal and Quebec? What rivers flow into the St Lawrence below Quebec? Above Quebec? Name the principal cities and towns on St Lawrence River? In what direction from Montreal is Sherbrooke? St Hyacinthe? Stanstead? Quebec? Sorel? Three Rivers? Ottawa? In what direction from Quebec is Caconna? Batiscon? Tadoussac? Gaspé? Rimouski? What mountains are in the east of Quebec? Name the principal lakes of Quebec? Where does the Richelieu river rise? What islands are at the mouth of the Ottawa River? On what island is Montreal built? What river flows into the St Lawrence at Quebec?

and is famous for its beautiful scenery, stupendous cliffs forming the banks in some places. It is 2½ miles wide at its mouth. About 60 miles from its mouth is Ha-Ha Bay, celebrated for its scenery.

Besides these, also on the north bank, are the *Batiscan*, entering the St. Lawrence at Batiscan, *Jacques Cartier*, *Ste. Anne*, and *Montmorency*, the latter, which enters the St. Lawrence a little below Quebec, being celebrated for the beautiful falls at its mouth, 250 feet high, and for the natural steps on its rocky banks. On the south side are the *Richelieu*, draining the beautiful Lake Champlain, and entering Lake St. Peter at Sorel; the *St. Francis*, *Chaudière*, in which gold has been discovered, *Chateauguay*, *Yamaska*, and *Bécancour*.

The principal lakes are *St. John*, the source of the Saguenay, *Temiscouata*, *Megantic*, and *Memphremagog*. The northern part of *Lake Champlain* is also in the province of Quebec.

Owing to the severity of the climate, the north bank of the St. Lawrence below the Saguenay is almost incapable of cultivation, but the south bank is better settled and more cultivated. Copper is found extensively in the eastern townships, and gold has been discovered to some extent on the Chaudière and in other places.

Quebec derives its chief importance from its commercial position, its lumber trade, and its fisheries. As the rapids on the St Lawrence obstruct navigation for large sea-going vessels beyond Montreal, the latter has become the commercial emporium for the west. The fisheries of the St. Lawrence are very valuable, consisting chiefly of cod, mackerel, herring, salmon, and seals. Lumbering is carried on extensively along the shores of all the rivers; the timber being floated down the Ottawa and St. Lawrence in rafts to Quebec, whence it is shipped.

The Legislature of Quebec consists of a Lieutenant-Governor and two houses, the Legislative Council and the Legislative Assembly. The Lieutenant-Governor is appointed by the Governor-General of Canada, and is assisted by an Executive Council of 7 members. The Legislative Council is composed of 24 members, appointed by the Lieutenant-Governor for life. The Legislative Assembly is composed of 65 members, and is elected by the people for the term of four years, if not sooner dissolved by the Lieutenant-Governor.

The annual revenue is about 2,000,000 dollars.

The province of Quebec contains the following cities: *Quebec*, *Montreal*, *Hull*, *St. Hyacinthe*, *Sherbrooke*, and *Three Rivers*.

Quebec (62,446), the oldest city in Canada, and the capital of the province of Quebec, stands on a high promontory formed by the junction of the St. Charles with the St. Lawrence. It is the best fortified city in North America, and is famed for its picturesque appearance, and for the beautiful scenery in the neighborhood. Near the city are the Plains of Abraham, memorable as the scene of a celebrated battle between the English and French, and for the death of both commanders, Wolfe and Montcalm. The St. Lawrence is here two miles wide, and navigable for ships of the greatest draught. Quebec derives its importance from its shipping, ship-building, and timber trade

Montreal (140,747), the largest and most important city in Canada, is situated on an island of the same name at the junction of the Ottawa with the St. Lawrence. It is beautifully situated at the foot of a hill called the "Mountain," from which the city took its name, Mont Real, or Royal Mountain. It is noted for its numerous large buildings, mostly of stone; and it possesses a magnificent quay, extending more than three miles along the river. It has a university and several colleges, many beautiful churches, and other public buildings.

Near Montreal is the famous **Victoria Bridge**, the largest iron tubular bridge in the world, erected on twenty-four piers, and nearly two miles in length. It is 60 feet high in the centre, and steamboats and other vessels pass freely under it. It crosses the St. Lawrence on the line of the Grand Trunk Railway, overcoming the difficulties of the ice in winter, and forming unbroken communication between the east and west.

Hull (6,890) is situated on the Ottawa, opposite the city of Ottawa, with which it is connected by a suspension bridge. Its principal trade is in lumber.

St. Hyacinthe (5,321), on the Yamaska, has a Roman Catholic cathedral and college

Sherbrooke (7,227), at the confluence of the Magog and St. Francis Rivers, is the seat of extensive manufactures.

Three Rivers (9,296), so called from the St. Maurice, which here joins the St. Lawrence by three mouths, is one of the oldest cities in Canada, and carries on extensive iron manufactures and a large lumber trade.

Lévis (7,597) is on the St. Lawrence, opposite Quebec. *Sorel* (5,791), *Coteau du Lac*, and *Stanstead* are important towns with local trade; *St. John's*, or *St. Jean* (4,314), and *Valleyfield* (3,906) are rising towns; *Rimouski* (1,417) carries on a large shipping and lumber trade; *Caughnawaga* and *St. Regis* are Indian villages. *Lauzon* (3,556), *Nicolet* (3,764), and *Coaticook* (2,682) are also rising towns.

NEW BRUNSWICK.

Area, 27,174 square miles; population, 321,233; persons to square mile, 12; greatest extent from north to south, 210 miles; and from east to west, 190 miles.

The province of **New Brunswick** is bounded on the north by Quebec and the Bay of Chaleur; on the west by the same province and the United States; on the south by the Bay of Fundy; and on the east by the Gulf of St. Lawrence, Northumberland Strait, and Nova Scotia, with which it is connected by the Isthmus of

Chignecto, 14 miles wide. It is divided into 15 counties, which, with their chief towns, are:

Counties on the Bay of Fundy.

Counties.	*Chief Places.*	*Counties.*	*Chief Places.*
Charlotte,	St. Andrew's, St. Stephen.	Albert,	Hopewell, Hillsboro'.
St. John,	St. John, Carleton.		

Counties in the Interior.

King's,	Hampton, Kingston, Sussex.	Sunbury, York,	Oromocto, Fredericton, Stanley.
Queen's,	Gagetown.		

Counties in the West.

Carleton,	Woodstock.	Victoria,	Grand Falls.

Counties on the Gulf of St. Lawrence.

Westmoreland,	Dorchester, Moncton, Shediac, Sackville.	Kent,	Richibucto, Buctouche.
		Northumberland,	Newcastle, Chatham, Douglastown.

Counties in the North.

Restigouche,	Dalhousie, Campbelltown.	Madawaska,	Edmundston or Little Falls.
		Gloucester,	Bathurst.

The **surface** of New Brunswick is generally undulating, rather than hilly, and covered with vast forests. There are some hills in the northern counties, also north of St. John, and along the Bay of Fundy; but they nowhere rise to any great height. The rivers, with their lake expansions, are numerous, and some of them navigable for vessels of considerable size.

The **St. John River** has its sources in the Province of Quebec and the State of Maine, and after a circuitous course of 450 miles enters the Bay of Fundy at St. John. It is celebrated for its beautiful scenery, and is navigable up to Fredericton, 85 miles, for vessels of considerable size, and to Woodstock and Grand Falls for smaller vessels. It receives on the left bank the waters of *Lake Temiscouata*, in Quebec, the *Tobique*, *Salmon River*, expanding into *Grand Lake*, *Washedemoak*, and *Kennebecasis*, and on the right bank the *Aroostook* and *Oromocto*.

The **Restigouche** forms part of the northern boundary between New Brunswick and Quebec, and after a course of 200 miles falls into the Bay of Chaleur, flowing past Campbelltown and Dalhousie.

The **Miramichi**, 220 miles long, flows past Newcastle, Douglastown, and Chatham, near its mouth, into Miramichi Bay. The *Petitcodiac*, 100 miles long, flows into Shepody Bay; Moncton is situated at the bend of the river. The *St. Croix*, rising in Grand Lake, and flowing into the Bay of Fundy, 125 miles long, forms part of the boundary between New Brunswick and the United States.

The **coast line** of New Brunswick is deeply indented with a great number of fine bays and harbors, but has few islands.

The Principal Bays are:

Bay of Chaleur, so called from the heat experienced there by the first discoverers; *Miramichi Bay*, *Richibucto Harbor*, *Buctouche Harbor*, *Shediac Bay*, and *Bay Verte*, on the north-east coast; *Shepody Bay*, *Chignecto Bay*, *St. John Harbor*, and *Passamaquoddy Bay*, on the Bay of Fundy.

The *Bay of Fundy* is an arm of the sea extending into the land between New Brunswick and Nova Scotia, and terminated by two smaller bays, *Chignecto* and *Minas Basin*. Its length, to the head of Chignecto Bay, is 140 miles, and its greatest breadth 45 miles. It is remarkable for the rapid rise of its tides (caused by the current of the Gulf Stream), varying from 30 feet at St. John to 60 feet at the head of Chignecto Bay, into which it rushes with great rapidity. At Bay Verte, in the Gulf of St Lawrence, distant only 14 miles, the rise is not more than four or five feet.

The Principal Capes are:

Point Miscou, *Escuminac*, *Richibucto Head*, *Shediac Point*, *Cape Tormentine*, on the north-east; *Cape Spencer* and *Point Lepreau*, on the south.

The Principal Islands are:

Miscou and *Shippegan*, at the north-east extremity; *Portage*, in Miramichi Bay; *Campobello*, in Passamaquoddy Bay; and *Grand Manan Island*, at the mouth of the Bay of Fundy.

The **climate** of New Brunswick resembles that of the more southern parts of Quebec. The influence of the Gulf Stream in the Bay of Fundy renders it milder on the southern coast; but, during the summer, fogs prevail on the coast, which do not, however, extend inland. The soil is productive and well cultivated, especially along the courses of the rivers.

The chief source of the wealth of New Brunswick consists in its valuable forests, lumbering being carried on very extensively. The value of the forest products exported annually amounts to over 3,000,000 dollars. The lumber consists chiefly of spruce and pine, and timber for ship-building. Most of the spruce is sawn into deals, affording employment to a large number of men. Ship-building is also an important branch of industry, and is carried on chiefly at St. John and Miramichi. The number of vessels built annually amounts to more than 100, valued at 2,000,000 dollars, most of them being large sea-going vessels.

New Brunswick also contains valuable **mines** of coal, iron, gypsum, and building stone. The most extensive coal mines are in Albert County.

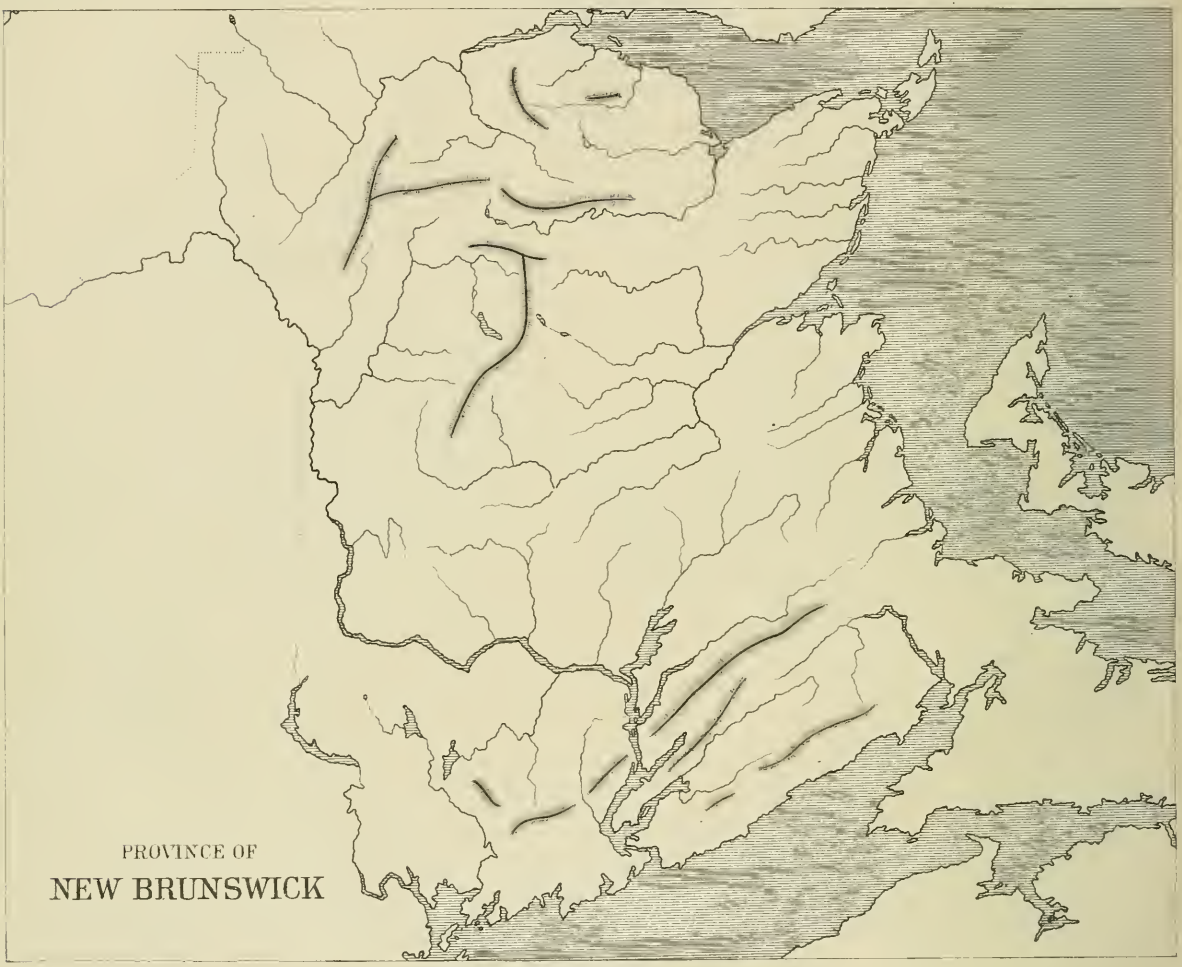
The **fisheries** of New Brunswick are also very valuable, producing over 2,000,000 dollars annually.

There are several lines of railway in New Brunswick—the Intercolonial, connecting St John with Nova Scotia and Quebec, and traversing the northern and eastern

QUEBEC
BAY CHALEUR
Dalhousie
Campbellton
Matapedia
Restigouche
RESTIGOUCHE
Nepisiguit Bay
Bathurst
Miscou I.
Shippegan I.
GULF OF
ST LAWRENCE
GLOUCESTER
MADAWASKA
Edmundston
Temiscouata Lake
Lac Beau
River Saint John
Cleveland
Grand Falls
VICTORIA
NORTHUMBERLAND
Chatham
Newcastle
Douglastown
Miramichi Bay
Portage I.
Escuminac
North Cape
Alberton
PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND
Andover
Perth
Upper Kent
Bath
MAINE
CARLETON
Woodstock
Boiestown
KENT
Richibucto
Kingston
Buctouche
NORTHUMBERLAND STRAIT
Shediac
Charlottetown
YORK
WESTMORLAND
Moncton
Salisbury
Petitcodiac
Hillsborough
Dorchester
Amherst
FREDERICTON
SUNBURY
QUEENS
ALBERT
Hopewell Corner
Elgin
Sussex
Apohaqui
Norton
Alma
KINGS
Chignecto Bay
Chignecto
Mines Basin
ST JOHN
Quaco
St John
CHARLOTTE
St Andrews
Campobello I
Grand Manan I
BAY OF FUNDY
Annapolis
Windsor
NOVA SCOTIA
HALIFAX
PROVINCE OF
NEW BRUNSWICK
English Miles
Railways thus
Do Proposed
Longitude West 66 of Greenwich

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.

How is New Brunswick separated from Nova Scotia? From Prince Edward Island? From the United States? Between what parallels of latitude and longitude is it situated? What counties adjoin Quebec? The United States? Name in order the principal gulfs and bays from Campbellton to St Andrews. The capes from Dalhousie. The principal islands in the Bay of Fundy and mouth of the Bay of Chaleur. In what direction from St John is Fredericton? Shediac? St Andrews? St Stephen? In what direction from Fredericton is Woodstock? In what direction from Shediac is Richibucto? Chatham? Campbellton? In what direction from Chatham is Fredericton? Bathurst? Dalhousie?



EXERCISES ON THE LESSON.

What is the area of New Brunswick? Population? How many persons are there to a square mile? What is its extent? Capital? How is New Brunswick bounded? How is it divided? Name the counties and their chief towns. How is each county bounded? Where are the chief towns situated? Describe the surface of New Brunswick. What is said of the hills? Of the rivers? Describe the course of the St John River. What towns does it flow past? Describe the course of the Restigouche. What towns does it flow past? Describe the courses of the other principal rivers. What towns do they flow past? Describe the coast-line of New Brunswick. Name the principal bays. Where are they situated? Describe the Bay of Fundy. For what is it remarkable? Name the principal capes. Where are they situated? Describe the climate of New Brunswick. What is the chief source of the wealth of New Brunswick? What is said of the mines? Of the fisheries? Of the railways? Name the railways of the Province and their branches. What is said of imports, exports, revenue, &c.? What is the form of government? What is said of education? Name the seats of universities or colleges. What historical facts are stated about New Brunswick? Describe the chief towns.

parts of the province; the European and North American, connecting St. John with the United States on the south; and the New Brunswick and Canada Railway from St. Andrew's to Woodstock, thence to connect with Rivière du Loup in Quebec; these, with various branches, form a complete system of railway communication.

The annual imports exceed 10,000,000 dollars, and exports 6,000,000 dollars. The **revenue** amounts to about 570,000 dollars annually. The **form of government** of New Brunswick is the same as that of Quebec. The Legislative Council consists of 17 members, appointed by the Crown, and the Legislative Assembly of 41 members, chosen by the people. The Lieutenant-Governor is assisted by an Executive Council of 8 members. Education is under the control of the Government, and is liberally supported. There is a university at Fredericton.

New Brunswick formerly belonged to France, forming, with Nova Scotia, and Prince Edward Island, the colony of Acadia. It was ceded to Britain by the treaties of 1713 and 1763, and formed into a separate province in 1784. It has of late progressed rapidly, especially in the northern and north-eastern counties, which but a few years ago were uninhabited except by Indians. These counties have been devastated by fires in the woods, the most destructive occurring in 1825, when 160 persons were burned to death, and 1,000,000 dollars in property destroyed. The Indians of New Brunswick are not numerous. They belong to the tribe of the Micmacs.

St. John (26,127, or, including Carleton and Portland, 41,343), situated near the mouth of the St. John River, with Carleton on the opposite side of the river, possesses a fine harbor, accessible to vessels of the largest size at all seasons of the year. The city is well built, and contains many fine public edifices. The St. John River here contracts and forms the Narrows, through which the tide flows with great violence and danger to vessels. A suspension bridge crosses the river at this point, connecting Carleton with St. John. The principal lumber and shipbuilding trades are carried on here.

Fredericton (6,218), situated on the St. John River, about 85 miles from St. John, is the capital. It is encircled by hills, rendering its situation very picturesque. It contains the Government buildings and the University of New Brunswick.

Chatham, or **Miramichi** (2,500), *Newcastle* (2,000), and *Moncton* (5,032) are important for ship-building; *Richibucto* and *Shediac* for the fisheries; and *St. Andrews* and *St. Stephen*, each about 2,000 in population, for trade with the United States. *Woodstock* (2,487) and *Gagetown*, on the St. John River, and *Bathurst*, *Dalhousie*, and *Campbelltown*, on the Bay of Chaleur, are towns of some importance.

NOVA SCOTIA.

Area, 20,907 square miles; population, 440,572; persons to a square mile, 20; greatest extent from north-east to south-west, including Cape Breton, 350 miles; and greatest breadth, 120 miles.

The **Province of Nova Scotia** comprises the peninsula of Nova Scotia proper and the adjoining island of Cape Breton. It is bounded on the north by the Gulf of St Lawrence; on the west by New Brunswick and the Bay of Fundy; and on the south and east by the Atlantic Ocean.

It is divided into fourteen counties, which, with their chief towns, are:

Counties on the East Coast.

Counties.	*Chief Towns.*	*Counties.*	*Chief Towns.*
Shelburne,	Shelburne.	Halifax,	Halifax.
Queen's,	Liverpool.	Guysborough,	Guysborough.
Lunenburg,	Lunenburg.		

Counties on the West.

Yarmouth,	Yarmouth.	Cumberland,	Amherst.
Digby,	Digby.	Colchester,	Truro.
Annapolis,	Annapolis.	Pictou,	Pictou. / New Glasgow.
King's,	Kentville.		
Hants,	Windsor.	Antigonish,	Antigonish.

The Island of Cape Breton is divided into four counties:

Counties.	*Chief Towns.*	*Counties.*	*Chief Towns.*
Richmond,	Arichat.	Victoria,	Baddeck.
Cape Breton,	Sydney.	Inverness,	Port Hood.

The **surface** of Nova Scotia is mountainous, varied with rich and fertile valleys. Several chains of high hills cross the country, generally parallel with the coast-line. The *Cobequid Mountains* are the principal chain, and stretch from east to west along the peninsula which connects Nova Scotia with New Brunswick, terminating in Cape Chignecto. Their principal summits are 1,100 feet high. The *North* and *South Mountains* extend, in parallel lines, along the shore of the Bay of Fundy; and an irregular range of small hills extends from the Gut of Canso southward. The general slope of the country is in a south-easterly direction, the Cobequid Mountains forming the highest land. There are several chains of lakes in the south-east, giving rise to numerous rivers, which, however, are of no great length.

Cape Breton is, in general, level, but with lofty, rugged promontories towards the sea, especially on the north. The coast-line is much broken, and the island is nearly cut in two by the *Bras d'Or Lake*, which runs from north to south, and is only separated from St. Peter's Bay, on the south, by a narrow neck of land less than half a mile wide. A canal is constructed across this isthmus. This lake is connected with the Atlantic, on the north, by the *Great* and *Little Bras d'Or Channels*, between which is the island of *Boularderie*.

The **principal lakes** in Nova Scotia are *Lake Rossignol*, 20 miles in length, in Queen's County, and *Grand*

and *Ship Harbor Lakes*, in Halifax County. Smaller lakes are numerous, and generally occur in chains, connected by small rivers. The *Bras d'Or Lake* so called, may be more properly termed an arm of the sea.

The Principal Rivers in Nova Scotia are:

St Mary's, *Musquodoboit*, *La Have*, and *Liverpool*, flowing into the Atlantic; the *Annapolis*, flowing between the North and South Mountains, into Annapolis Basin; the *Avon*, into the basin of Minas; the *Shubenacadie*, into Cobequid Bay; and the *East*, *Middle*, and *West Rivers*, into Pictou Harbor. Besides these there are numerous small streams in Nova Scotia proper and in Cape Breton.

The **coast-line** of Nova Scotia as well as that of Cape Breton, is much broken, and deeply indented with numerous bays and harbors, except on the side of the Bay of Fundy, where it is more compact, and possesses few harbors

The Principal Bays, Harbors, and Straits are:

Bay Verte, *Tatmagouche*, and *St. George's Bays*, in Northumberland Strait; *Chedabucto Bay*, at the entrance of the *Gut of Canso*, a narrow strait separating Nova Scotia from Cape Breton; *Halifax Harbor*, *Margaret's* and *Mahone Bays*, on the south-east coast; *St. Mary's Bay* on the south-west; *Annapolis Basin*, *Minas Channel* and *Basin*, and *Cobequid Bay*, on the west; and Bay of Fundy (see page 24). The chief inlets in Cape Breton are *Aspy Bay*, *St. Anne's Bay*, *Sydney Harbor*, *Mir é Bay*, and *St. Peter's Bay*.

The **islands** of Nova Scotia besides Cape Breton, are *Caribou* and *Pictou Islands*, in Northumberland Strait; *St. Paul*, *Scatari*, and *Isle Madame*, off the coast of Cape Breton; *Sable Island*, a dangerous, sandy shoal, 180 miles east of Halifax, on which is an effective humane relief establishment, provided by the Provincial Government for the succor of shipwrecked sailors; *Cape Sable*, *Seal*, and *Mud Islands*, in the south; *Long Island*, at the mouth of St. Mary's Bay.

In the south of St. Peter's Bay is *Isle Madame*, with *Arichat* Harbor, important to fishermen in stormy weather.

The Principal Capes are:

Malagash, *John*, *St. George*, on the north coast; *Porcupine*, *Canso*, *Sambro Head*, *Pennant Point*, *Crown Point*, and *La Have*, on the south-east; *Sable*, on the south; *St. Mary*, *Split*, *Chignecto*, and *Blomidon*, on the west.

In Cape Breton are *St. Lawrence*, *North*, *Egmont*, *Margain*, and *Breton*.

Many of these capes form rugged promontories, rising to the height of 500 feet. The whole of the coast, especially on the Atlantic side, is bold and rocky, and lined with dangerous reefs.

The climate of Nova Scotia is milder than that of the neighboring provinces, owing to its being nearly surrounded by water, and to the influence of the Gulf Stream. The harbors on the Atlantic are seldom closed by ice in winter.

The soil in the valleys and on the mountain slopes is rich and productive, but towards the Atlantic coast it is rocky and less fertile. Oats, potatoes, and hay are the principal agricultural products; apples grow abundantly in the west; and there also cattle are extensively reared.

Nova Scotia is the most important of the eastern provinces of the Dominion for the extent and variety of its mineral productions. Gold, iron, coal, and gypsum are found to a greater extent than in any of the other provinces. It also contains copper and building-stone to a large extent. The quantity of coal, gypsum, etc., annually exported, in addition to what is retained for home consumption, is valued at 1,000,000 dollars; the total quantity of coal annually raised is about 600,000 tons. The principal coal mines are in Cape Breton Island and Pictou County. Iron and coal are found in the Cobequid Mountains, and in Annapolis and Pictou Counties the former is largely mined. Gold is found along most of the Atlantic coast, but is worked chiefly in Guysborough, Halifax, and Lunenburg Counties.

Nova Scotia has also the most extensive fisheries of all the provinces of the Dominion. The principal are the cod, mackerel, and salmon fisheries. The exports of fish are chiefly to the West Indies and the Southern States of America, and amount to over 6,500,000 dollars, affording employment to about 19,000 men.

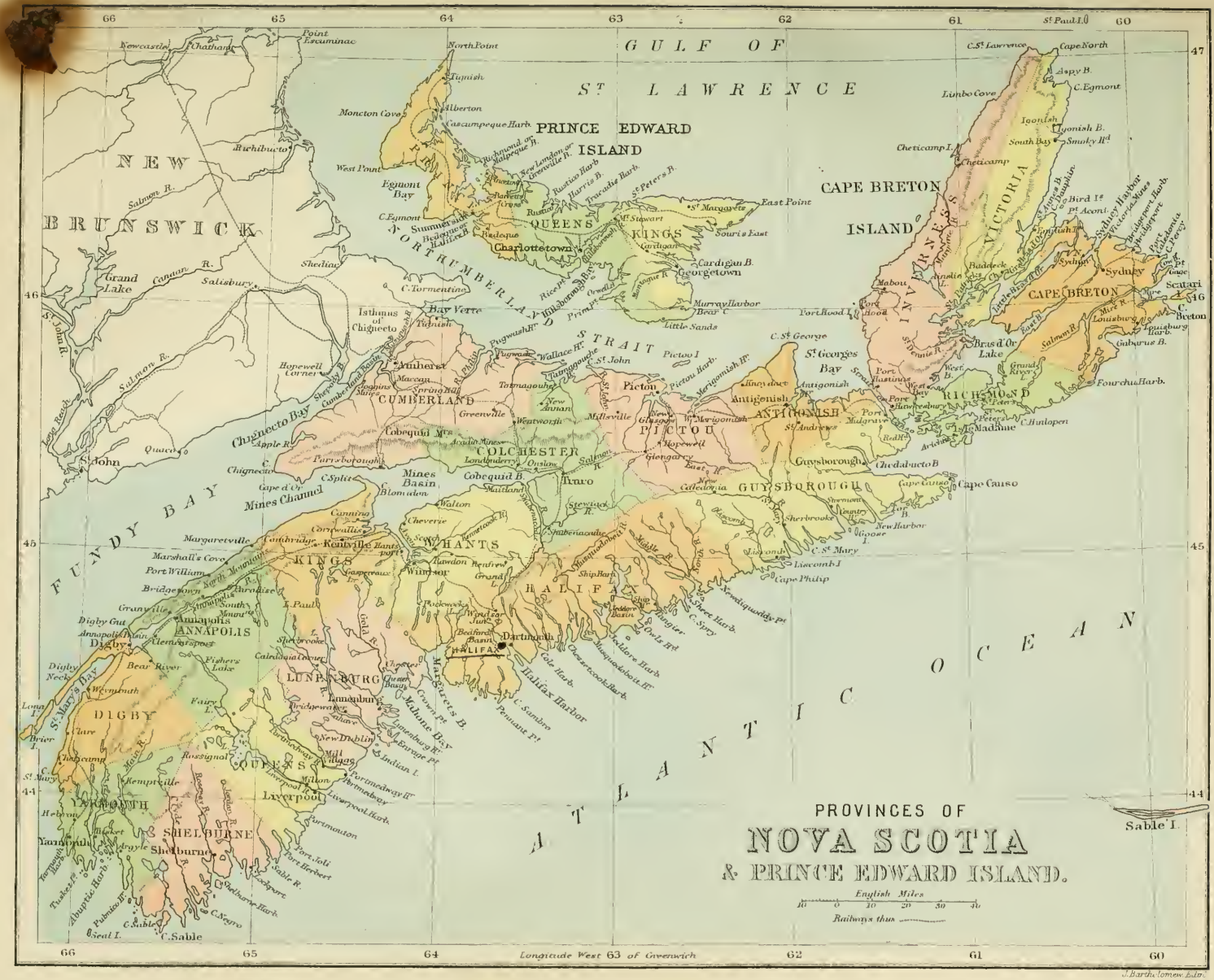
There are two lines of **railway** in Nova Scotia: the Intercolonial, from Halifax to New Brunswick, with a branch from Truro to Pictou; the other from Halifax to Yarmouth. A railway is also in course of construction between Sydney and Louisburg, in Cape Breton.

The annual **imports** of Nova Scotia are about 12,000,000 dollars, and the exports 8,000,000 dollars; revenue, 750,000 dollars. The form of **government** is the same as in the other provinces. The Legislative Council consists of 18 members, appointed by the Crown, and the Legislative Assembly of 38 members, elected by the people. The Lieutenant-Governor is assisted by an Executive Council of 9 members.

Education receives a large share of public interest, and is efficiently supported by government grants. There are five colleges.

Nova Scotia was first settled by the French, but has changed ownership repeatedly, having been taken four different times by the British, and as often relinquished, until France, in 1713, renounced all claim to the country. The French, however, still retained the Island of Cape Breton, with the fortified town of Louisburg, which was not taken by the English till 1758. The island was finally ceded to Great Britain in 1763. Nova Scotia, Cape Breton, Prince Edward Island, and New Brunswick then formed the colony of Acadia, and it was not till 1784 that they were created separate colonies. In 1819 Cape Breton was reunited to Nova Scotia.

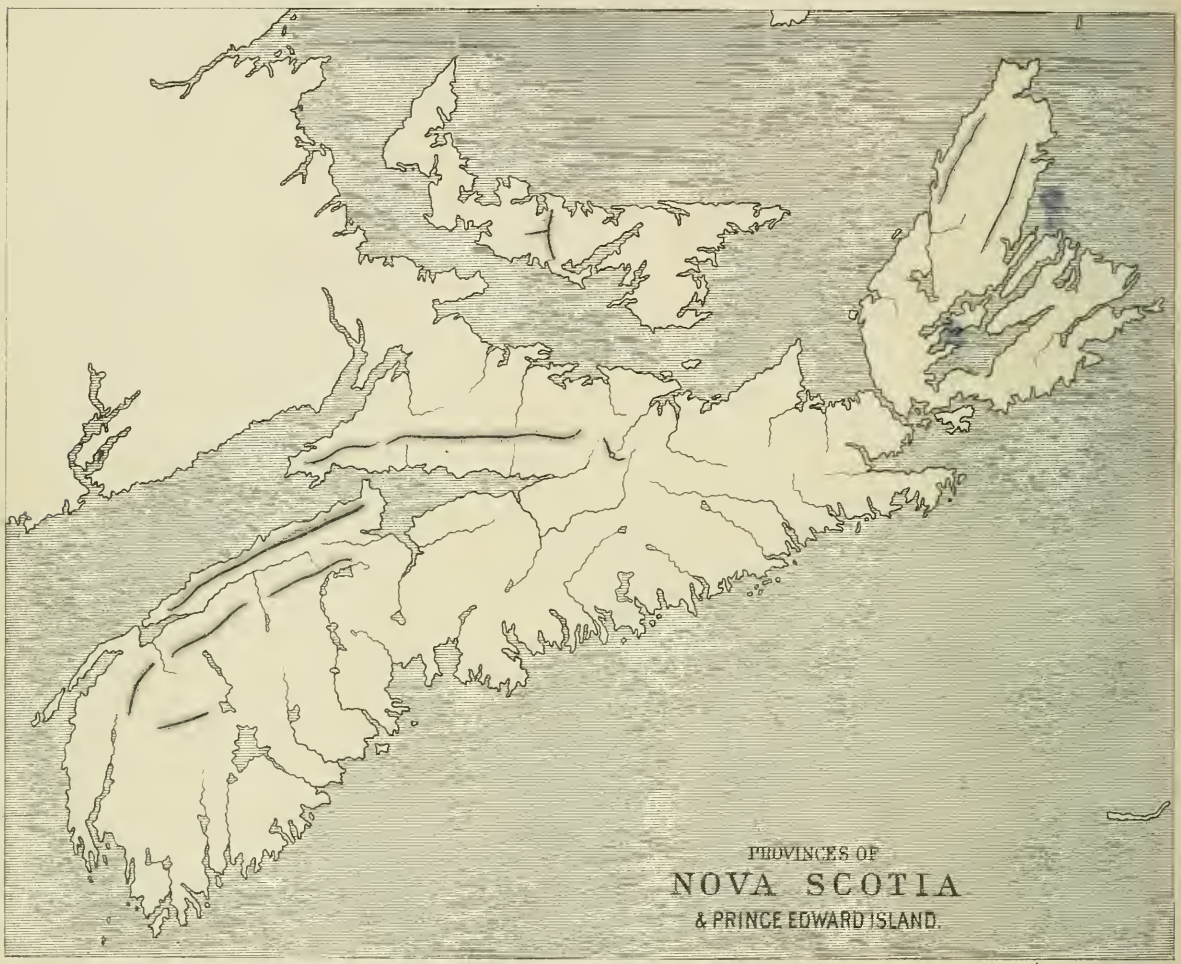
Halifax (36,054), the capital, is situated on the west side of a deep and capacious harbor, formerly called Chebucto Bay. It was founded by Lord Cornwallis in 1749, when some 4,000 colonists were sent out from Britain. It is built on the side of a steep hill, crowned by the citadel, and is, next to Quebec, the most strongly



J. Bartholomew Edin.

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.

How is Nova Scotia separated from Cape Breton? From New Brunswick? From Prince Edward Island? What large bays are on the north-east of Nova Scotia? What bay is on the south-west? Name the principal harbours on the Atlantic coast. What bays are at the head of the Bay of Fundy? What county adjoins New Brunswick? What islands lie to the north-east of Cape Breton? What gulf are they in? Between what meridians is Nova Scotia, including Cape Breton, situated? Between what parallels of latitude? In what direction from Halifax is Pictou? Annapolis? Yarmouth? Windsor? Sydney, C.B.? In what direction from Annapolis is Liverpool? Truro? St John, N.B.? In what direction from Truro is Amherst? Antigonish? Where is Arichat situated? Where is Louisburg situated? What rivers flow into the Atlantic? What island is in the Bay of Fundy? How is Prince Edward Island separated from Nova Scotia and New Brunswick? In what gulf is it situated? What islands lie to the north-east? What are the extreme north and east points called? What island lies to the east? How is Charlottetown situated? In what direction from Charlottetown is Georgetown? Summerside? Souris? Shediac, N.B.? Pictou, N.S.?



EXERCISES ON THE LESSON.

What is the area of Nova Scotia? Population? How many persons are there to a square mile? What does Nova Scotia comprise? How is it bounded? How is it divided? Name the counties and their chief towns. How is each county bounded? Describe the surface of Nova Scotia. Describe the chains of hills. Trace them on the map. What is the general slope of the country? Describe Cape Breton. What is said of the coast-line? Of the Bras d'Or Lake? Name the principal lakes of Nova Scotia. Where are they situated? Name the principal rivers. Name the principal bays, &c. Where are they situated? Name the principal islands. Where are they situated? What is said of the Isle Madame? Name the principal capes. Where are they situated? What is said of some of them? Describe the climate of Nova Scotia. The soil. The products. For what is Nova Scotia important? What minerals does it contain? Where are they chiefly found? What is said of the fisheries? Of the railways? What financial statistics are given? What is the form of government? What historical facts are given? Describe the chief towns. Point them out on the map, and state where they are situated? What is the area of Prince Edward Island? Population? Extent? Capital? How is Prince Edward Island situated? How is it divided? Point out the principal capes. State where they are situated. Name the principal bays and harbours. Describe the climate and soil. The products. What is said of the soil? Of shipbuilding? Of the fisheries? Of the telegraph? Of the mails in winter? Of the railways? What financial statistics are given? Describe the form of government. What is said of education? Of the political history of the island? Describe the chief towns. State where they are situated.

fortified city in the Dominion. It contains many fine edifices—the Parliament and other public buildings, churches, etc. It has also Her Majesty's Dockyard, and is the naval station for the North American and West Indian fleets—the Admiral generally residing here during the summer. It has an extensive shipping trade.

Pictou (3,403) and the adjacent town *New Glasgow* (2,595) derive their importance from the extensive coal mines in the neighborhood. During the season of navigation their harbors are crowded with shipping. Pictou has steam communication with Quebec.

Sydney, C. B. (5,484), is also important as the centre of extensive coal mines, from which coal is largely exported.

Yarmouth (4,200), **Liverpool** (2,900), and **Lunenburg** (3,000) have a large amount of shipping, and are extensively engaged in the fisheries. *Windsor* (3,000) exports large quantities of gypsum, and is the seat of the principal college. *Annapolis*, formerly Port Royal, was, under the French, the principal city in Nova Scotia, and was the scene of several conflicts. *Truro* (3,461), *Amherst*, *Antigonish*, and *Pugwash* are important towns. At Truro the Provincial Normal School has its site.

PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND.

Area, 2,133 square miles; population, 108,891; persons to square mile, 50; greatest extent from east to west, 130 miles; and from north to south, 34 miles.

Prince Edward Island is situated in the Gulf of St. Lawrence, to the north of Nova Scotia, and between New Brunswick and Cape Breton. It is separated from New Brunswick and Nova Scotia by Northumberland Strait, which is 130 miles long, and from 9 to 30 miles wide. It is divided into three counties—*King's*, *Queen's*, and *Prince's*, which are subdivided into 67 lots or townships.

The surface of Prince Edward Island is gently undulating, except in certain central districts, which may be considered hilly; the whole presenting a charming agricultural aspect of hill and dale.

Its northern outline resembles a crescent, the two horns being called *North* and *East Capes*. The island is deeply indented with bays, the largest of which, *Hillsborough* on the south, and *Richmond* on the north, nearly divide it into three parts. It has also numerous harbors, the principal of which are *Charlottetown*, *Georgetown*, *Bedeque*, *Egmont*, *Cascumpec*, and *Souris*.

The climate is temperate and healthy, and the soil remarkably fertile, and favorable for agriculture. Prince Edward Island has more land under cultivation, in proportion to its size, than any of the other provinces. Potatoes, oats, and barley are the staple productions, and are largely exported.

The lots or townships were originally granted by the British Government to certain proprietors, nearly 100 in number, on certain conditions, which have never been fulfilled, thus originating a "land question," which, however, has now been settled by a Government commission. The fertility of the soil has induced a large population to make the island their permanent home, and it is already the most densely peopled of the British North American provinces. Ship-building is carried on largely; and the fisheries in the gulf give employment to a large number of men.

A submarine telegraph connects the island with New Brunswick, crossing the narrowest part of Northumberland Strait, between Capes Tormentine and Traverse, a distance of 9 miles. In winter the mails are carried over between the same points in boats fitted for the ice or water. Navigation is wholly obstructed from the end of December to the beginning of April.

A railway connects Charlottetown, the capital, with Summerside, Cascumpec, and Tignish on the west, and with Georgetown and Souris on the east.

The imports of Prince Edward Island amount to about 2,500,000 dollars, and the exports to rather less. The public debt is 250,000 dollars, and the revenue about 150,000 dollars. Since 1851 the population has increased 50,000, being nearly double what it was at that time. The form of government is similar to that of the other colonies, consisting of a Lieutenant-Governor, an Executive Council of 9 members, an elective Legislative Council of 13 members, and a Legislative Assembly of 30 members. Education is very liberally supported, and is directly under control of the Government.

Prince Edward Island formerly belonged to France, but was ceded to Britain in 1763, after the capture of Louisburg and Cape Breton. It was called St. John's Island till the beginning of the present century. It was formed into a separate province in 1770, and was admitted into the Dominion of Canada in 1873.

Charlottetown (10,807), the capital, is situated on the north side of a large, safe, and commodious harbor, formed by the junction near the city of the East, North, and West Rivers. The city is 3 miles from the entrance of the harbor, and is built on gently rising ground, with very wide streets. The Provincial buildings, churches, and colleges are the principal edifices. It carries on the principal trade of the island, and is largely engaged in ship-building. It is also the county town of Queen's County.

Georgetown (1,100), the county town of King's County, about 30 miles east of Charlottetown, is an important place, with a fine harbor. *Summerside* (2,853), in Prince's County, about 40 miles west of Charlottetown, on the north side of Bedeque Harbor, is a rapidly rising town, with much ship-building and important trade with New Brunswick. *Princetown*, on Richmond Bay, is the county town of Prince's County. Many thriving villages are springing up all over the island.

BRITISH COLUMBIA.

Area, 341,305 square miles: population, about 50,000; greatest extent from north to south, 760 miles; and from east to west, including Vancouver Island, 370 miles.

VANCOUVER ISLAND, greatest length, 275 miles; greatest breadth, 90 miles.

British Columbia is the most western province of the Dominion, and consists of Vancouver Island, and the mainland, or British Columbia proper, which were formerly two separate provinces.

It is bounded on the north by the parallel of 60° N.; on the east by the meridian of 120° W. to lat. 54°, and the Rocky Mountains; on the south by the parallel of 49° (the boundary of the United States), the Gulf of Georgia, and Juan de Fuca Strait; and on the west by the Pacific Ocean.

The **surface** of British Columbia is in general mountainous and intersected by numerous rivers and lakes. The **Rocky Mountains**, which form the eastern boundary, extend from north to south in two parallel chains, the eastern being the main and most important, containing the highest peaks in the whole range, Mount Hooker (16,750 feet), Mount Brown (16,000 feet), and Mount Murchison (15,700 feet), besides others but little short of them in elevation. Parallel to the main chains are other smaller ranges, as the *Gold* and *Selkirk* ranges, enclosing the upper courses of the Columbia and Fraser Rivers, and the *Peak Mountains*, enclosing the upper course of the Finlay River. The principal passes across the Rocky Mountains are the *Kootanie*, *Vermilion*, *Kicking Horse*, *Yellow Head* or *Leather*, and the *Peace River Pass*, the Kicking Horse Pass being the route of the Canadian Pacific Railway.

On the west, the **Cascade Range** extends northward from the mouth of the Fraser River to Alaska, closely following the Pacific coast, and extending from 60 to 100 miles in breadth. A few of the summits of this range attain an altitude of 10,000 feet. The most valuable part of the country lies between the Rocky Mountains and the Cascade Range, forming an elevated table-land varying from 1,000 to 3,500 feet in height, through which the Fraser River flows.

The **rivers** and **lakes** of British Columbia are numerous, but of little importance to navigation. The *Fraser River* rises in the main chain of the Rocky Mountains, and, flowing north, passes through a gap in the lesser chain, where it is joined by its northern branch, then, following a southern course, it receives the *Nechaco*, *Quesnel*, *Chilcoten*, and *Thompson Rivers*, and flows into the Gulf of Georgia by three mouths, after a course of 740 miles. It is navigable for small steamers to Fort Hope, a distance of 158 miles from its mouth, but the numerous rapids above that point render navigation almost impossible. The *Peace River*, and its northern branch the *Finlay River*, rise in the northern part, also between the Rocky Mountain chains, and flow eastward to form the *Mackenzie River*. Further north are the *Skeena* or *Simpson*, and *Stickeen*, flowing into the Pacific, and the *au Liard*, flowing into the Mackenzie River. The *Columbia River*, the most important on the Pacific coast, rises in the southern part of the Rocky Mountain ranges in British Columbia, then, like the Fraser, first flowing northward, bends to the southward, and after receiving the Kootanie River, flows through Washington Territory in the United States into the Pacific Ocean, after a course of about 1,200 miles. The lakes are numerous, but of minor importance.

The **coast-line** of British Columbia is much broken with numerous islands, bays, and deep inlets, and it is remarkable that while from San Francisco to Cape Flattery, a distance of 700 miles, there is not a single harbor on the coast, in British Columbia and Vancouver Island harbors are numerous and excellent. The islands are disposed chiefly in two groups, the more southerly, of which *Vancouver Island* is the principal, being separated from the mainland by *Juan de Fuca Strait*, the *Gulf of Georgia*, and *Queen Charlotte Sound*; and the other, about 200 miles to the north-west, called the *Queen Charlotte Islands*, being separated from the mainland by *Vancouver Strait*. The other islands to the north belong to the United States, being part of the territory of Alaska. The principal inlets are *Burrard Inlet*, *Howe Sound*, *Jervis*, *Bute*, and *Knight Inlets*, *Bentinck Arm*, *Gardner's Channel*, *Port Essington*, *Portland* and *Observatory Inlets*, in the mainland; *Quatsino*, *Nootka*, and *Barclay Sounds*, in the west coast of Vancouver Island; and the harbors of *Esquimalt*, *Victoria*, and *Nanaimo*, in the south and east of Vancouver Island.

The **climate** of British Columbia is temperate, and much warmer than in the same latitude on the east coast of the continent. Between the Cascade Range and the Rocky Mountains it is very dry, but on the coast and in the islands the climate is humid. On the islands the fig will ripen in the open air, and even in winter the climate is very mild.

The **soil** is in general fertile, and well adapted for agriculture and pasturage, although as yet little progress has been made in farming. Along the western slopes of the Cascade Mountains are magnificent forests of Douglas pine, and the islands also are densely wooded.

British Columbia first derived its importance from the rich and extensive gold discoveries which were made in 1858, principally along the course of the Fraser River and its tributaries. The gold fields, however, have not been found so productive as was at first anticipated, and for some years neither the population nor the resources of the country have materially increased. Silver, lead, and copper are abundant. Excellent coal is found both

on the mainland and on the islands, and is worked in Vancouver Island. Marble and building-stone are also found, and are exported to the United States.

The chief **exports** are gold, coal, lumber, furs, and fish, amounting to about 2,000,000 dollars annually. The imports are about the same value.

Previous to 1858, the whole country was in the possession of the Hudson Bay Company. In that year British Columbia and Vancouver Island were formed into Crown colonies, each having a Governor and Legislature of its own. In 1866 a legislative union was effected, under the name of British Columbia, in compliance with the wishes of the people; and in 1871 British Columbia became one of the provinces of the Dominion of Canada.

The **Legislature** consists of a Lieutenant-Governor, appointed by the Governor-General, an Executive Council of 5 members, and a Legislative Assembly of 25 members, elected by the people for a term of four years. The province is represented in the Dominion Parliament by 3 senators and 6 members of the House of Commons.

The Province is divided into five districts—*New Westminster*, *Cariboo*, *Yale*, *Victoria*, and *Vancouver*.

The **population** has been very fluctuating, but is estimated at about 15,000 whites and about 35,000 Indians and Chinese. Education is liberally provided for, free schools being established wherever there are a dozen children to attend them.

Victoria (5,925), the capital, is situated in the south of Vancouver Island, and possesses an excellent harbor. It is well laid out, and carries on the principal trade of the province. At *Nanaimo*, Vancouver Island, are valuable coal mines. *Esquimalt* possesses a magnificent harbor, and is Her Majesty's naval station in the North Pacific.

New Westminster (3,000), the former capital, is beautifully situated on the north bank of the Fraser River, about 15 miles from the gulf, and carries on the principal local trade of the mainland. The other settlements are small and are chiefly situated on the Fraser River.

MANITOBA.

Area, 123,200 square miles; length from east to west, 500 miles; width from north to south, 280 miles; population, 65,954.

The **Province of Manitoba** (formerly the Red River Settlement) forms an oblong, lying between the United States on the south and latitude 53° on the north, and extending east and west between 91° 10′ and 101° 30′ of longitude.

It is intersected from south to north by the *Red River*, which, rising in Minnesota, near the sources of the Mississippi, and flowing nearly due north, crosses the boundary between the two countries, and falls into *Lake Winnipeg*, after a course of about 700 miles. It is also partially intersected from west to east by the *Assiniboine River*, which flows into the Red River at Winnipeg. Lakes Winnipeg and Winnipegosis, which lie partly in Manitoba, and Lake Manitoba, which lies wholly within it, and from which it derives its name, are of considerable size, the first-named being 280 miles long, and the other two being each about 110 miles long.

The country is chiefly one vast prairie covered with grass, with scarcely a tree except on the banks of the rivers. The climate resembles that of Ontario, and the soil is very fertile, producing wheat and other grains in great abundance.

Before Manitoba became a province of the Dominion (1870), the population consisted chiefly of Indians and French and English half-breeds. Since then, settlers have poured in from the older provinces, and there are now nearly 10,000,000 acres of land surveyed for settlement. One-sixth of the land is reserved for the half-breeds, chiefly on the banks of Red River.

The **government** of Manitoba is administered by a Lieutenant-Governor, with an Executive Council of 5 members, a Legislative Council of 7 members, and a Legislative Assembly of 24 members, elected by the people. They also elect 2 members for the Senate and 4 members for the House of Commons, as their proportion of representatives in the Dominion Parliament.

Winnipeg (12,000), the capital, is situated at the junction of the Assiniboine with the Red River. It is the seat of government, and is rapidly becoming a place of importance.

NORTH-WEST AND NORTH-EAST TERRITORIES AND DISTRICTS OF KEEWATIN, ATHABASCA, ALBERTA, SASKATCHEWAN, AND ASSINIBOIA.

Area, 2,665,252 square miles; greatest extent from east to west, 2,200 miles; and from north to south, 1,400 miles; population, about 56,446.

The **North-west Territory** is bounded on the north by the Arctic Ocean; on the west by the Pacific Ocean and British Columbia; on the south by British Columbia, the districts of Athabasca, Saskatchewan, Manitoba, and Ontario; and on the east by Hudson Bay.

The **North-east Territory** consists of that portion of the peninsula of Labrador which lies between Hudson Bay on the west, and Labrador proper and Quebec on the east and south.

The North-west Territory, up to the year 1870, was in the possession of a large trading company, called the Hudson Bay Company. With the exception of British Columbia, which was formed into a separate province in 1858, the Company held all the tract of land extending from Labrador to the Pacific, and from the former province of Canada and the United States to the Arctic Ocean. The Hudson Bay Company received the charter, granting them the exclusive right to the greater part of

this territory, from Charles II. in 1670, the remainder having been leased from the Crown.

By virtue of an Act of the Imperial Parliament, passed in 1869, and which took effect in 1870, all this immense territory was, on certain conditions (including the payment of £300,000 sterling to the Hudson Bay Company), transferred to the Dominion of Canada for purposes of colonization. In 1876, by Act of Parliament, the District of Keewatin was formed from the North-west Territory. By order in Council passed May 8th, 1882, by the Dominion Government, the Districts of Athabasca, Alberta, Assiniboia, and Saskatchewan were formed out of the North-west Territory.

The surface of this vast country is much diversified by ranges of small hills, rivers, numerous lakes, and marshy tracts. The great chain of the *Rocky Mountains*, on the west, extends across the Territory from the Arctic Ocean southward into the United States; but the general slope of the country is in a northerly direction towards the Arctic Ocean and Hudson Bay.

Hudson Bay, from which the Territory formerly derived its name, is a large inland sea, with numerous but barren and desolate islands at its mouth, and connected with the Atlantic by *Hudson Strait*. Around it, as well as at its southern extremity, *James Bay*, there is an extensive plain, bounded by ranges of low but rugged hills, nearly parallel with the shore. On the east are the *Wotchish Mountains*, which run from north-east to south-west. From this range a ridge of more or less elevation extends, first due west and then north-west, until it meets the Laurentide chain of Canada, north of Lake Superior, and forms the watershed which divides the rivers of Canada from those flowing into Hudson Bay. From the Rocky Mountains two small ranges extend in an easterly direction, enclosing the fertile valley of the Saskatchewan.

The remarkable feature of the Territory is the extensive **chain of lakes**, forming an almost unbroken line of communication from the head of Lake Superior to the Arctic Ocean. The more northern of these are drained by the rivers flowing into the Arctic Ocean; the more southern, by those flowing into Hudson Bay. The principal are:

The *Lake of the Woods*, *Winnipeg*, *Winnipegosis*, *Manitoba*, *Deer*, *Wollaston*, *Athabasca*, *Great Slave*, and *Great Bear Lakes* in the west; and *Abbitibe*, *Mistassini*, and *Clear Water* in the east.

The North-west Territory is well watered, containing a large number of rivers, the principal of which is the *Mackenzie River*, formed by the junction of the Athabasca and Peace Rivers, which rise near the highest summits of the Rocky Mountains, and unite a little north of Athabasca Lake, through the west end of which the Athabasca River flows. After the junction the river flows through Great Slave Lake, drains Great Bear Lake, and after a course of over 2,400 miles enters the Arctic Ocean by a number of mouths. It is navigable for more than 1,200 miles, but being frozen for the greater part of the year can never be of much service to commerce. The other principal rivers are the *Coppermine* and *Back* or *Great Fish Rivers*, flowing into the Arctic Ocean; the *Saskatchewan*, north and south branches, and *Red Rivers*, flowing into Lake Winnipeg, and thence by the *Nelson* to Hudson Bay. The Saskatchewan is navigable for boats for upwards of 700 miles; the *Red River* rises in the United States, nearly interlocking with the Mississippi, and receives the *Assiniboine* on the west bank; it is navigable for light-draught steamboats for upwards of 300 miles. The *Churchill*, draining Lake Winnipeg, and *Severn Rivers*, besides numerous smaller streams, flow into Hudson Bay, and the *Albany*, *East Main*, and other rivers flow into James Bay.

The **climate** and **soil** of the North-west Territory may be divided into two distinct regions. The smaller, extending from the Lake of the Woods along the valleys of the Assiniboine and Saskatchewan to the Rocky Mountains, enjoys a climate equal to that of Ontario, although so much farther north, but with rather greater extremes of heat and cold. This temperate region is upwards of 100 miles in breadth in Manitoba, but three times that breadth near the Rocky Mountains, and is capable of producing the same cereals as Ontario. It is also admirably adapted for pasture; the great prairies, even as far north as Lake Athabaska, furnish abundance of nutritious grasses, and were frequented by vast herds of buffalo, even in winter. The other region lies north and east of this. It is cold, bleak, and barren, except along the Mackenzie River, which is well wooded. In the Saskatchewan valley iron and coal abound, and gold is found. Coal, copper, and lead are found also as far north as the Arctic Ocean.

The **Hudson Bay Company** have upwards of fifty forts scattered over various parts of the country for the purpose of collecting furs, which form their chief trade. The principal are *Fort Garry* (now *Winnipeg*), and *Stone Fort*, in Manitoba; *York Fort*, on the shore of Hudson Bay; *Moose Fort*, on James Bay; *Carlton House* and *Fort Edmonton*, on the Saskatchewan River, and *Fort Simpson*, on the Mackenzie. The Company employs about 3,000 persons. The population of the whole of this vast country does not amount to more than 60,000, composed, to some extent, of half-breeds and Indians.

The **government** of the Hudson Bay Company is in the hands of a Governor and Council in England, and the trade is managed by the resident chief traders and chief factors, the latter holding the highest posts in the service. Some of the principal forts or posts have a complement of thirty or forty men, but most of them have only about four or five. Vessels generally arrive at and

leave York and Moose Forts once a year, for the transport of goods between the Territory and England. The Indians inhabiting the country are the Crees round Hudson Bay, and the Saulteaux farther in the interior, both inoffensive tribes, subsisting by trapping and fishing; and farther west, in the vast prairies, are the more warlike Blackfeet and other tribes living on the produce of the chase. In the more northern districts are the Chippewyan and Eskimo Indians.

Until 1875, the Lieutenant-Governor of Manitoba, assisted by a Council appointed by the Governor-General of Canada, constituted the Legislature and administrators of the North-west Territory; but a law then passed, "to amend and consolidate the laws respecting the North-west Territories," provide for the appointment of a Lieutenant-Governor, three stipendiary magistrates, and a Legislative Council, to which members may be elected from a district of 1,000 square miles, when it contains 1,000 civilized residents. The sale of intoxicating liquors is prohibited in the North-west Territory.

District of Keewatin.—This district is bounded on the north by the Arctic Ocean, on the south by Manitoba and Ontario, on the west by meridian 100° west longitude, and on the east by the Hudson Bay and meridian 91° west longitude. Area, about 400,000 square miles; population, about 10,000. The district is under the government of the Lieutenant-Governor of Manitoba.

District of Athabasca.—This is bounded on the north by a line near the 60th parallel of north latitude, on the south by a line near the 55th parallel of north latitude, on the west by British Columbia, and on the east by the Slave and Athabasca Rivers, and by a line near meridian 111° 30′ west longitude. It takes in the Peace River country, a very fertile region. Area, about 122,000 square miles.

District of Alberta.—This is bounded on the north by Athabasca, on the south by the United States, on the west by British Columbia, and on the east by a line near meridian 111° 30′ west longitude. It includes the Battle, Red Deer, and Bow Rivers countries. Area, about 100,000 square miles.

District of Saskatchewan.—This is bounded on the north by a line near the 55th parallel of north latitude, on the south by a line near the 52d parallel of north latitude, on the west by Alberta, and on the east by Lakes Winnipegosis and Winnipeg and the Nelson River. The Forks of the Saskatchewan are near the centre of the district. Area, about 114,000 square miles.

District of Assiniboia.—This is bounded on the north by Saskatchewan, on the south by the United States, on the west by Alberta, and on the east by Manitoba. Area, about 95,000 square miles. The capital is *Regina*, near the Q'Appelle district, with a small but rapidly growing population.

THE ARCTIC REGIONS.

The **Arctic Regions** extend from Davis Strait on the east to Behring Strait on the west, along the shores and in the waters of the Arctic Ocean. They comprise numerous islands, peninsulas, gulfs, bays, sounds, and straits, and are chiefly interesting as having been the scene of numerous strenuous and determined attempts to find a highway to the west by means of the Arctic Ocean. No practical benefit has resulted from these expeditions, as the seas are sometimes icebound for years, or blocked up by enormous icebergs. That a passage does exist was definitely discovered by M'Clure in 1850–51, when he found that Barrow and Banks (or M'Clure) Straits unite in Melville Sound. The Arctic Ocean is much more open on the west than on the east, and from Banks Strait navigation is uninterrupted by islands as far as Behring Strait; but the sea is almost constantly filled with ice.

The most important expeditions have been sent out by the British Government during this century; several have also been fitted out by the Government of the United States. The most interesting, as it was the most unfortunate expedition, was that of Sir John Franklin, which sailed in 1845, and the fate of which was long unknown. No less than twenty-seven expeditions were sent out in search of him, with but little success, until 1854, when the remains of several of the explorers and articles belonging to his expedition were discovered by Dr. Rae in King William Land, and some years later further remains were found by Captain M'Clintock and others, proving conclusively that the whole party had miserably perished.

On the Coppermine and Back or Great Fish Rivers extensive beds of coal have been found; but they are not likely to be worked until those of more temperate latitudes are exhausted.

NEWFOUNDLAND.

Area, 40,200 square miles; population, 181,753; persons to square mile, 4½; greatest extent from north to south, 320 miles; breadth from east to west, 320 miles.

The **Island of Newfoundland** lies at the mouth of the Gulf of St. Lawrence. It is separated from Labrador on the north by the Strait of Belle Isle (about 12 miles in breadth), and is distant from Cape Breton, on the south-west, about 60 miles. It is the only settlement in British North America not forming part of the Dominion of Canada.

It is divided into 15 Electoral Districts.

St. John's, East.	Trinity.
St. John's, West.	Bonavista.
Harbor Grace.	Twillingate and Fogo.
Carbonear.	Ferryland.
Harbor Maine.	Placentia and St. Mary's.
Port de Grave.	Burin.
Bay de Verde.	Fortune Bay.

Burgeo and La Poile.

The territory under the **government** of Newfoundland includes also the coast of Labrador for nearly 700 miles, from Anse Sablon to the entrance of Hudson Strait. The principal islands on the coast are *North* and *South Belle Isle* and *Fogo Island*.

The **Island of Newfoundland** is triangular in shape, but the coast-line is deeply indented with numerous large bays. The principal of these are:

Conception, *Trinity*, *Bonavista*, *Notre Dame*, and *White Bays*, on the north-east coast.

Bay of Islands and *St. George*, on the west.

Hermitage, *Fortune*, *Placentia*, and *St. Mary's Bays*, on the south.

As the bays extend far into the land, they form numerous peninsulas. The principal is the *Peninsula of Avalon*, which contains nearly two-thirds of the whole population.

The Principal Capes are:

Bauld, on the north; *Ray*, *Point May*, *Freels*, and *Race*, on the south; and *St. Francis*, *Breakheart Point*, *Bonavista*, *Freels*, and *St. John*, on the east.

Cape Race was formerly the calling point of the Atlantic steamships with late news from Europe. A line of telegraph connects it with Cape Ray, from which a submarine telegraph line extends to Cape Breton, and thence over the continent. After repeated failures, several Atlantic telegraph cables have been successfully laid, and now connect Newfoundland at Trinity Bay with Europe at Valentia Bay in Ireland, by which wonderful enterprise the European news is published in the American newspapers on the same day as that on which the events occur. On the north and east coast the capes are numerous, but of little importance. There has been no thorough survey made of the island, which is but thinly inhabited, especially in the west. The settlements comprise only a narrow strip along the coast, scarcely extending more than a mile or two inland.

The **surface** of the island is hilly, varied with numerous rivers, lakes, and marshes. The ranges of hills generally run in short parallel chains, from north to south. The *Blue Hills* in the interior are the principal.

Lakes and Rivers.—The chief river is the *River of Exploits*, which flows almost across the island from south-west to north-east, through *George IV.* and *Red Indian Lakes*.

The other chief Lakes and Rivers are:

Grand Pond, drained by the *Humber River*; *Victoria*, *Jameson*, and *Bathurst Lakes*, drained by *Little River*; and *Gander Pond*, drained by *Gander River*.

The **climate** of Newfoundland is cold and severe, owing to the quantity of ice to be found around the island, brought down by the winds and currents in enormous icebergs from the Arctic Ocean. Fogs also prevail, especially on the Banks, and are caused by the cold currents from the north meeting the Gulf Stream. The soil, especially in the interior, is rocky and barren, the principal crops being raised along the southern shore: even there they frequently require to be cut green for fodder. Most of the supplies are brought from the neighboring provinces. Copper and lead are said to be plentiful in the island; but the mineral resources have as yet been little developed.

Newfoundland derives its main importance from its fisheries, which are chiefly cod and seal. Nearly the whole population is employed in the catching and curing of fish. The cod fisheries on the Banks of Newfoundland are the most important fisheries in the world. These Banks, as they are called, are elevated plateaus of the ocean-bed, rising far above the bottom of the Atlantic. The Great Bank, situated to the east and south of the island, extends about 600 miles in length, and 200 in breadth. The depth of water on these Banks varies from 150 to over 500 feet, and forms the favorite feeding ground of the codfish. Besides the British, the French and Americans carry on the fishery, almost to the same extent, the French having also the privilege of fishing on certain parts of the coast of the island. The seal fishery is carried on chiefly on the coast of Labrador, and on the northern coast of Newfoundland.

The annual value of the **exports** of Newfoundland, consisting chiefly of fish, is about 13,000,000 dollars, or over 70 dollars for every inhabitant. The imports are about 10,000,000 dollars, and the annual revenue about 2,000,000 dollars. The chief markets for fish are Great Britain, Spain, Portugal, Brazil, and the West Indies.

The **form of government** is the same as in the Canadian provinces, consisting of a Governor appointed by the Crown, an Executive Council of 7 members, a Legislative Council of 15 members, and a Legislative Assembly of 31 members, elected by the people. Responsible government was granted in 1855. The population is nearly equally divided between Protestants and Roman Catholics.

St. John's (22,583), the capital, possesses a fine harbor almost surrounded by hills. It is the chief commercial station on the island, and is the nearest port to Europe, being only 1,620 miles distant from Ireland. The city was formerly built of wood, but having been several times nearly destroyed by fire, the lower part is now built of brick. The great fire of 1844 destroyed 4,000,000 dollars worth of property.

Harbor Grace (6,700) and *Carbonear* (2,000) are the next most important towns. *Port de Grave*, *Brigus*, *Trinity*, and *Greenspond* are also rising towns.

The islands of *St. Pierre*, *Langley*, and *Miquelon*, lying to the south of Newfoundland, belong to France, and are important fishing stations. They are the only portions now remaining to the French of their once large possessions in North America.

UNITED STATES

120
115
110
105
100
45
40
35
30
25
BRITISH COLUMBIA
ASSINIBOIA
DOMINION
WASHINGTON
OREGON
IDAHO
MONTANA
DAKOTA
WYOMING
NEBRASKA
NEVADA
UTAH
COLORADO
KANSAS
CALIFORNIA
ARIZONA
NEW MEXICO
INDIAN TERRI
TEXAS
MEXICO
LOWER CALIFORNIA
PACIFIC OCEAN
NORTH PACIFIC OCEAN
Victoria
Olympia
Portland
Salem
Seattle
Tacoma
Spokane Falls
Walla Walla
Lewiston
Boise City
Helena
Virginia City
Salt Lake City
Ogden
Cheyenne
Denver
Carson City
Sacramento
San Francisco
Oakland
San Jose
Monterey
Los Angeles
Santa Barbara
San Diego
Prescott
Santa Fe
Albuquerque
Las Vegas
Taos
Tucson
El Paso del Norte
Hermosillo
Chihuahua
Guaymas
Arispe
Guadalupe I.
Cedros I.
Monterey
Matamoras
Brownsville
Corpus Christi
San Antonio de Bexar
Laredo
Eagle Pass
Fort Stockton
Fort Sumner
Fort Union
Fort Buford
Fort Benton
Fort Bridger
Fort Laramie
Fort Yuma
Fort Whipple
Fort Wingate
Fort Craig
Fort Bliss
Fort Concho
Fort Griffin
Fort Elliott
Fort Supply
Fort Reno
Fort Arbuckle
Fort Gibson
Fort Smith
Fort Scott
Fort Leavenworth
Fort Riley
Fort Hays
Fort Wallace
Fort Dodge
Fort Larned
Fort Lyon
Fort Garland
Fort Lewis
Fort Wingate
Fort Defiance
Fort Whipple
Fort Mojave
Fort Tejon
Fort Yuma
Fort Bliss
Fort Stockton
Fort Concho
Fort Griffin
Fort Elliott
Fort Supply
Fort Reno
Fort Arbuckle
Fort Gibson
Fort Smith
Fort Scott
Fort Leavenworth
Fort Riley
Fort Hays
Fort Wallace
Fort Dodge
Fort Larned
Fort Lyon
Fort Garland
Fort Lewis
Fort Wingate
Fort Defiance
Fort Whipple
Fort Mojave
Fort Tejon
Public Lands
Llano Estacado
Staked Plain
Rio Grande
Rio Colorado
Rio Gila
Rio Bravo del Norte
Rio Pecos
Rio Puerco
Rio San Juan
Rio Grande del Norte
Rio Colorado
Rio Gila
Rio Bravo del Norte
Rio Pecos
Rio Puerco
Rio San Juan
Rio Grande del Norte

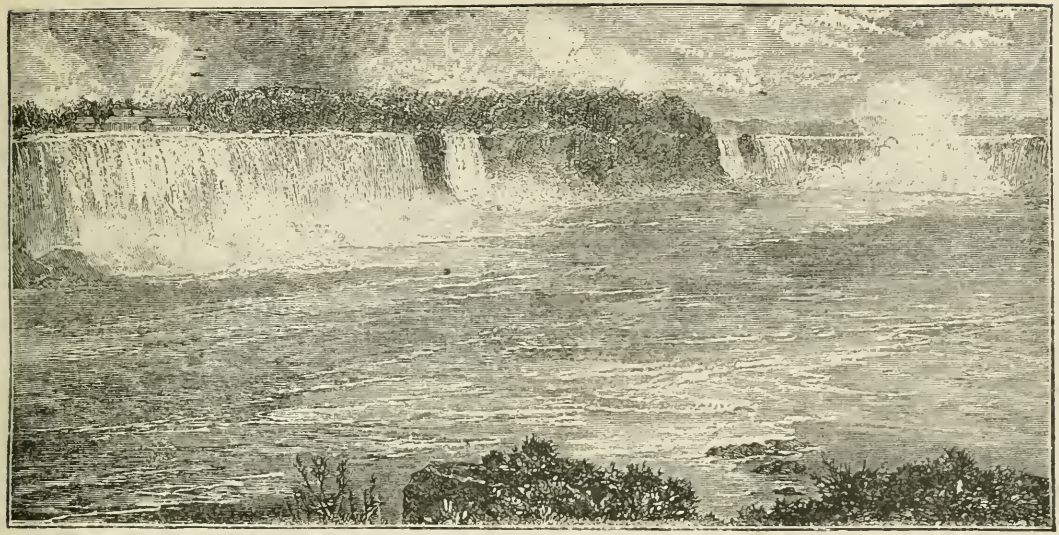
90
85
80
75
70
65
45
40
35
30
25
Lake Superior
Lake Michigan
Lake Huron
Lake Erie
Lake Ontario
MICHIGAN
WISCONSIN
ILLINOIS
INDIANA
OHIO
KENTUCKY
TENNESSEE
MISSOURI
ARKANSAS
MISSISSIPPI
ALABAMA
GEORGIA
FLORIDA
S. CAROLINA
N. CAROLINA
VIRGINIA
W. VIRGINIA
PENNSYLVANIA
NEW YORK
MAINE
VT. Vermont
N.H. New Hampshire
MASS. Massachusetts
R.I. Rhode Island
CONN. Connecticut
N.J. New Jersey
DEL. Delaware
MD. Maryland
NORTH ATLANTIC OCEAN
GULF OF MEXICO
UNITED STATES
English Miles
0 50 100 200 300 400
Duluth
Chicago
Milwaukee
Detroit
Cleveland
Buffalo
Toronto
Montreal
Quebec
Boston
New York
Philadelphia
Baltimore
Washington
Pittsburgh
Cincinnati
Louisville
St. Louis
Memphis
Nashville
Atlanta
Charleston
Savannah
Wilmington
Norfolk
Richmond
New Orleans
Mobile
Galveston
Havana
Nassau
Bahama
Eleuthera
Cat I.
Watlings I.
Andros I.
C. Sable
C. Canaveral
C. Hatteras
C. Fear
C. Lookout
Raleigh Bay
Albemarle Sound
Pamlico Sound
Delaware Bay
Chesapeake Bay
Lake Superior
Lake Michigan
Lake Huron
Lake Erie
Lake Ontario
Gulf of Mexico
Florida Chan.
Bahama Islands
West Indies
North Carolina

EXERCISES ON THE LESSON.

What is the area of the United States? Population? Size? Capital? How are the United States bounded? What do the United States comprise? Name the principal mountain chains. How do they divide the country? Describe the Rocky Mountains. The mountains of the Pacific. The Alleghany Mountains. For what are the United States noted? Describe the course of the Mississippi. Name the other principal rivers. Where do they rise? Where do they flow? What lakes are in, or border on, the United States? Describe the coast line. Name the principal bays, straits, &c. Where are they situated? Name the principal capes. In what States are they? Describe the climate of the United States. Describe the soil. What are the principal products? What are the principal minerals, and where are they found? What is said of the Western States? For what is the Mississippi useful? How have the United States been peopled? Describe the form of government of the States. The General Government. What is the position of the Territories of the United States? Describe the United States when British Colonies. What institution was peculiar to the Southern States? What is the amount of the commerce of the United States? Name the Southern States and their chief towns. What is said of these States? What are the principal mountains? Describe the surface. Name the principal rivers. What is said of Georgia and other States? Describe Virginia. How is it bounded? For what is it remarkable? How is it now divided? What are the chief towns? Describe North Carolina. How is it bounded? What are its chief towns? Describe South Carolina. How is it bounded? What are its chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe Georgia. How is it bounded? What are its chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe Florida. How is it bounded? What is remarkable on the south coast? What are its chief towns? Describe Alabama. How is it bounded? What are its chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe Mississippi. How is it bounded? What are its chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe Louisiana. To whom did Louisiana formerly belong? Describe New Orleans. What are the other chief towns? Describe Texas. How is it bounded? What rivers flow through it? What are its chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe Arkansas. What is its capital? Describe Kentucky and Tennessee. How is Kentucky bounded? How is Tennessee bounded? What are the chief towns of Kentucky? Of Tennessee? Name the Western States, and their chief towns. How are they situated? Describe the surface. What part of the country do these States comprise? What minerals are found in them? How have they been peopled? Describe Ohio. How is it bounded? What are the chief towns? Describe Michigan. How is it bounded? What are the chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe Indiana, Illinois, Iowa, Wisconsin, and Minnesota. How is each bounded? What are their chief towns? Where are they situated. Describe Missouri. How is it bounded? What are the chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe Kansas. How is it bounded? What are the chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe California. How is it bounded? Where is gold chiefly found? What are the chief towns? Describe Oregon. How is it bounded? What are the chief towns? Where are they situated? What are the chief towns of Nebraska, Colorado, and Nevada. How are these States bounded? What is the position of the Territories of the United States before they become States? Name those now in existence. Where are they situated? Who inhabit Utah? Describe their city. Describe the Territory of Alaska. What are its geographical features? What is its value? To whom did it formerly belong? What is the chief trading port? Describe its inhabitants.

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.

How are the United States separated from Ontario? From the North-West Territory? From Mexico? What peninsula extends into the Atlantic from the south-east? What peninsula extends into the Pacific from the south-west? What islands are near Florida? What large gulf lies to the south of the United States? What large rivers flow into it? What large rivers of the United States flow into the Atlantic Ocean? Into the Pacific Ocean? Into the Gulf of California? Which States are on the Atlantic coast? Which States and Territories are on the Pacific coast? On the Gulf of Mexico? Which States adjoin New Brunswick? Quebec? Which States border on the great northern lakes? Which States or Territories adjoin the North-West Territory? Manitoba? British Columbia? Past which States do the Mississippi, Missouri, Ohio, Red River, Rio Grande, Columbia, Connecticut, and Susquehanna flow? What capes are at the mouth of Delaware Bay? Of Chesapeake Bay? What rivers flow into Delaware Bay? Into Chesapeake Bay? What rivers form the Ohio River? Through which of the Middle States do the Alleghany Mountains extend? In what State is Lake Champlain? In what direction from New York is Philadelphia? Pittsburg? Albany? Boston? Toronto? Montreal? What river separates Virginia and Kentucky from the Western States? Which of the Southern States are on the Gulf of Mexico? How is Florida separated from the Bahama Islands? Which are the principal southern cities on the Mississippi? On the Atlantic coast? On the Gulf of Mexico? What is the eastern point of North Carolina called? In what direction from New Orleans is St Louis? Galveston, Mobile, Charleston? In what direction from Richmond is Washington? Which States are on the west bank of the Mississippi? Which on the east bank? Which adjoin the Dominion? Which are the principal cities on the Ohio? On the Missouri? Which States adjoin Mexico? Through which does the Colorado (west) flow? Which are the principal cities on the Pacific coast? On Lake Michigan? On Lake Huron? On Lake Erie? What Canadian town is opposite Detroit? In what direction from Chicago is Salt Lake city? St Louis? St Paul's? Toronto? In what direction from St Paul's is Pembina? Duluth? Which States touch on Lake Superior? What river flows through Washington Territory from British Columbia? Through which States does the Missouri flow? What rivers flow into San Francisco Bay? What large lake is in Utah? How is Washington Territory separated from Vancouver Island? What is its extreme north-west point called? In what direction from San Francisco is Victoria, Vancouver Island? Sacramento? Salt Lake City? Chicago? Virginia City, Nevada? What peninsula is south of California? Through which States do the Rocky Mountains extend? Which States or Territories adjoin Manitoba? Where does the Red River (north) rise? Where does the Missouri rise? The Mississippi? How are the Western and Southern States separated from the Eastern? Which of the great northern lakes is entirely within the United States? Which States touch on Lake Michigan? How is Lake Michigan connected with Lake Huron? How is Lake Superior connected with Lake Huron? How is Alaska separated from the north-west Territory? What islands extend westward from Alaska?—(see North America.)



FALLS OF NIAGARA.

UNITED STATES.

Area, 3,602,990 square miles; population, 50,442,066; persons to square mile, 14; greatest extent from north to south, 1,60[illegible] miles; and from east to west, 2,700 miles; about the same size as British North America.

The United States of America are bounded on the north—with the exception of the Territory of Alaska, which lies to the north-west of British Columbia—by the Dominion of Canada; on the west by the Pacific Ocean; on the south by Mexico and the Gulf of Mexico; and on the east by the Atlantic Ocean.

They comprise thirty-eight States, one federal district, and ten territories, united under one central government.

Two great mountain chains, the Rocky Mountains on the west, and the **Alleghany Mountains** or Appalachian chain on the east, divide the country into three regions: the Atlantic slope from the Alleghanies to the Atlantic Ocean; the Great Central Plain, or valley of the Mississippi; and the vast plain or plateau between the Rocky Mountains and the Pacific coast.

The **Rocky Mountains** form the principal chain, extending from near the Arctic Circle to the Cordilleras of Mexico. They cover an area 40 to 200 miles in breadth. Their highest summits in the United States are *Uncompaghre Peak* (14,510 feet), *Blanco Peak* (14,464 feet), and *Long's Peak* (14,271 feet), all in Colorado. Along the Pacific coast are several chains of mountains, some peaks of which rise even higher than any of the Rocky Mountains. These are: the *Coast Range* and the parallel range of the *Sierra Nevada*, enclosing Sacramento Valley, the gold region of California; and the *Cascade Range*, in Washington Territory and Oregon, extending through British Columbia into Alaska. The highest summits in the Sierra Nevada are *Mount Shasta* (14,440 feet), and *Mount Whitney* (14,898 feet), both in California; and the highest in the Cascade Range are *Mount Jefferson* (15,500 feet), in Oregon Territory, and *Mount St. Helen's* (15,750 feet), in Washington Territory, the last named being the loftiest summit in the United States.

The **Alleghany Mountains** extend from the peninsula of Gaspé, in Canada, to the north of Alabama, and are known by different names in the various States which they traverse (p. 35). The highest peaks are in the *White Mountains;* but they seldom exceed 5,000 feet, and are generally not more than 3,000 feet in height.

The United States are particularly noted for their numerous and important **rivers**; and no country in the world possesses such an extent of water communication. The estimated length of the navigable rivers is more than 47,000 miles.

The **Mississippi** rises in Lake Itasca, in Minnesota, near Lake Superior, and receives as affluents the *Wisconsin*, *Illinois*, and *Ohio* (with its affluents the *Cumberland* and *Tennessee Rivers*), on the east bank; the *Missouri* (with its affluent the *Platte*), the *Arkansas* and *Red Rivers*, on the west bank; and it flows into the Gulf of Mexico by a number of mouths, after a course of 3,160 miles. The course of the Missouri is even longer than that of the Mississippi, being about 3,000 miles before joining the latter, or about 4,300 miles in all, thus form-

ing the longest river in the world. All these rivers are navigable throughout the greater part of their course, either by steamboats (for the great size and light draught of which the Mississippi is famous) or by flat-boats, which bring the produce of the Northern and Western States down to New Orleans.

The *Brazos*, *Colorado* (in Texas), and *Rio Grande del Norte*, the latter forming the boundary between the United States and Mexico, flow into the Gulf of Mexico west of the Mississippi; and the *Alabama* and several other rivers reach the Gulf east of it.

The *Penobscot*, *Connecticut*, *Hudson*, *Delaware*, *Susquehanna*, *Potomac*, *James*, *Roanoke*, and *Savannah*, together with numerous smaller and less important rivers, flow into the Atlantic.

The *Colorado* (another river of the same name) flows into the Gulf of California; the *Sacramento* and *Columbia Rivers* flow into the Pacific Ocean.

The Great Lakes of Canada all adjoin the United States, *Lake Michigan* being entirely within the latter territory; besides these are *Lakes Champlain* and *George*, many smaller lakes in New York, Minnesota, and other States, and the *Great Salt Lake* in Utah.

The **coast-line** of the United States is very little broken, but along the Atlantic coast are numerous small islands and sand-banks—*Long Island*, *Rhode Island*, and *Nantucket* being the principal.

The bays are chiefly the mouths of the rivers.

The Principal Bays, Straits, etc., are:

On the east coast, *Penobscot* and *Massachusetts Bays*, *Long Island Sound*, *Delaware* and *Chesapeake Bays*, *Pimlico* and *Albemarle Sounds*, *Strait of Florida*, *Appalachee Bay*, and *Galveston* and *Matagorda Bays*.

On the west coast are *San Francisco* and *Columbia Bays*, *Juan de Fuca Strait*, and *Admiralty Inlet*.

The Principal Capes are:

On the east coast, *Ann*, *Cod*, *Montauk Point*, *May*, *Charles*, *Henry*, *Hatteras*, *Sable*, and *St. Blas*.

On the west coast are *Point Conception*, *Mendocino*, *Blanco*, and *Flattery*.

As the territory occupied by the United States extends over 24° of latitude, or a distance of about 1,600 miles from north to south, the **climate** varies very much with the locality. It is temperate in the North, and hot in the South. Along the south-eastern coast are numerous large swamps, and the rivers are sluggish in their course, rendering the climate very unhealthy for the white population. In the interior it is hot, but more healthy. On the Pacific coast, owing to their proximity to the sea, the mountains intercept the rain-clouds, and the country to the east of the Coast Range suffers very much from drouth.

The **soil** is in general rich and productive, especially in the Great Central Plain, or Mississippi Valley. In the north-eastern States it is more rocky and barren, but everywhere well cultivated. On both sides of the Rocky Mountains, but more especially on the high plateau between that range and California, are arid desert tracts of country. In the Great Central Plain almost all the country west of the Ohio River consists of vast prairies, originally covered with tall grass, and easily cultivated, but with little timber. In the Northern and Western States, grain is the chief production—principally wheat and Indian corn. Cattle are also extensively reared. In the Middle States, tobacco and Indian corn are the staples; and in the Southern States, cotton, sugar, and rice.

Gold, silver, iron, copper, lead, quicksilver, and coal are found in great abundance; gold, silver, and quicksilver chiefly in California and Nevada; iron, coal, and petroleum in the western parts of Pennsylvania, in Virginia, and also in Ohio; and copper and lead in Illinois, Michigan, Missouri, and Wisconsin.

The Western States so called, or those occupying the northern part of the Great Central Plain, are the chief sources of the supplies of the South and East; the Mississippi forming the great channel of communication for the exchange of the grain and cattle of the North for the sugar, cotton, and other products of the South; while the Great Lakes, the river St. Lawrence, and the Erie Canal form highways to the East.

The United States have been peopled principally by settlers from Great Britain and Ireland, and from Germany, although the native-born population, descended from the earlier settlers, now largely predominates.

The **form of government** is a Federal Republic.

Each State is a separate Republic, and makes its own laws; each possesses exclusive control of all local interests, and is governed by a Governor, Senate, and a House of Representatives, all elected by the people.

The **General Government** regulates all affairs relating to commerce, the defence and general interests of the country. It consists of a President, Vice-President, and a Congress consisting of a Senate of 76 members and a House of Representatives of 293 members.

The **President** and **Vice-President** are chosen every four years by electors representing the people, each State being entitled to as many electors as it has Senators and Members of Congress.

The **Senate** is composed of two members from each State, who are chosen by its Legislature for a term of six years.

The **representatives** of the people are elected every two years, each State being entitled to one member for every 168,000 of its inhabitants.

The **Territories** of the United States are under the direct control of the General Government, until they have a sufficiently large population to entitle them to representation in Congress. They are then formed into States, and are entitled to the privileges enjoyed by States.

The United States were formerly British Colonies, and in order to avoid the taxation which Britain wished to

impose on them, declared their independence in 1776, and after some years of war, were finally acknowledged independent by Great Britain in 1783. They then consisted of thirteen States—New Hampshire, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North and South Carolinas, and Georgia. The population at this period only amounted to 3,000,000.

Until 1862 negro slavery existed in all the Southern States of the Union, and was the cause of constant dissensions between them and the free States of the North and West. These dissensions culminated in a prolonged and bloody war, which lasted from the accession of President Lincoln, early in 1861, until near the end of his four years' term of office, in 1865. The result was the entire overthrow of the slaveholding power of the South, and the securing to the black population of their personal freedom, and all the other rights and privileges of their white fellow-citizens.

The United States present the most remarkable example of national progress and of successful enterprise of any country in the world. Although just a century old, their foreign exports now amount to 850,000,000 dollars, their imports to nearly as much, and their shipping to close upon 5,500,000 tons. The national debt largely increased during the civil war, but it is being rapidly paid off. It now amounts to about 1,700,000,000 dollars, besides the debts contracted by the separate States. The annual revenue is about 360,000,000 dollars.

There is no country in the world, with the exception of Great Britain, which possesses such a complete network of railways and canals.

There is no established religion in the United States, every denomination possessing equal privileges. Education, especially in the Northern and Western States, is generously aided, under the management of the different State Governments.

Each State is divided into counties, as in the British provinces.

The States are usually classed under the heads of Eastern, Middle, Southern, and Western.

EASTERN STATES.

The **Eastern States**, or New England, as they are sometimes called, comprise:

States.	*Chief Towns.*
Maine, . . .	Augusta. Portland, Bangor.
New Hampshire, .	Concord, Portsmouth. Manchester.
Vermont, . .	Montpelier, Middlebury. Burlington
Massachusetts, .	Boston, Lowell, Springfield, New Bedford.
Rhode Island, .	Providence. Newport.
Connecticut, . .	Hartford, New Haven, Bridgeport.

The New England States occupy the north-eastern portion of the United States, adjoining Canada. The country is mountainous, and intersected by numerous lakes and rivers. The Appalachian chain extends through the northern part of the country, under the name of the *Green Mountains* in Vermont, and the *White Mountains* in New Hampshire and Maine; the latter are so called from a few of their summits rising to an elevation of over 6,000 feet, and consequently being covered with snow for a great part of the year. The *Connecticut River* runs from north to south, between and through four of the States, into Long Island Sound.

The **coast-line** is much broken, being indented by numerous bays and harbors, with many small islands. The coast is rocky, and dangerous for navigation.

The **climate** resembles that of Ontario, but is rather colder in Maine. The **soil** is in general rocky, and not well adapted for agriculture; but in Vermont, particularly, it is favorable for pasture.

The New England States are especially noted as being the principal manufacturing districts of the United States. They were originally settled by the "Pilgrim Fathers," or "Puritans"—religious refugees who left England during the reigns of James I. and Charles I.

Maine possesses fine harbors. The principal trade is in lumber and the fisheries. Lumbering is carried on extensively in the northern part, chiefly on the St. John River and its tributaries, and on the Penobscot.

Augusta (8,000), the capital, is situated on the Kennebec River. *Portland* (33,810), the largest and most important town, has a fine harbor, and is much resorted to for sea-bathing. The Grand Trunk Railway of Canada has its eastern terminus at Portland. *Bangor* (16,900) is the second important town in Maine, and carries on a large lumber trade.

New Hampshire is very mountainous, and is famed for its beautiful scenery. It possesses very little seacoast. The principal occupations of the inhabitants are agriculture and the rearing of cattle.

Concord (14,000) is the capital. *Portsmouth* (10,000) possesses a fine harbor and navy yard, and carries on extensive fisheries. *Manchester* (33,000), *Dover*, and *Nashua*, are manufacturing towns.

Vermont is an inland State, intersected by the Green Mountains, which afford excellent and abundant pasture to large herds of cattle. Between Vermont and New York States lies *Lake Champlain*, which, with *Lake George*, is celebrated for its fine scenery, and for having been the scene of many battles between the French and English in early colonial days.

Montpelier (3,000) is the capital. *Middlebury* and *Burlington* possess colleges.

Massachusetts is the richest and most populous of the Eastern States, and the most important State in the Union for manufactures, chiefly consisting of cotton, woollen, and leather goods.

The surface is hilly, and the soil rocky and poor, but it is carefully cultivated.

The coast is very irregular; a semi-circular peninsula, terminated by Cape Cod, extends from the south-east into the Atlantic. The islands of *Nantucket* and *Martha's Vineyard* lie to the south of this peninsula. The State possesses many fine harbors, and carries on the principal trade in the American cod-fishery off the Banks of Newfoundland.

Boston (362,839), the capital, is a handsome city, situated on a peninsula at the head of Massachusetts Bay. Next to New York, it possesses the largest shipping trade of any city in the United States, and carries on extensive manufactures, especially in boots and shoes.

Lowell (59,485), *Springfield* (33,340), *Lynn* (38,284), *Fall River* (49,006), and *Worcester* (58,295) are large and important manufacturing towns, producing chiefly cotton and woollen goods and boots and shoes. *Marblehead* is the chief port for the American cod-fishery, and *New Bedford* (26,900) and *Nantucket* for the whale-fishery. *Cambridge* (52,740), near Boston, is the seat of Harvard University. At *Plymouth* the "Pilgrim Fathers" made their first landing in 1620.

Rhode Island, so called from the island of that name in Narragansett Bay, is the smallest State in the Union; but, compared with its population, it carries on more extensive manufactures, chiefly woollen and cotton, than any other State.

Its surface is rocky, and the soil is poor, but the latter is industriously cultivated.

Providence (104,850), the capital, is situated at the head of Narragansett Bay, and is the chief centre of the manufactures. *Newport*, on Rhode Island, is a favorite summer resort for sea-bathing.

Connecticut lies to the north of Long Island Sound. The country is hilly, but the soil fertile, especially in the valley of the Connecticut River. It carries on various and extensive manufactures, especially of clocks, cottons, woollens, etc.; but agriculture is the chief occupation of the inhabitants. Education receives more attention than in any of the other States.

Hartford (42,553), the capital, is situated on the Connecticut River. It is a flourishing town, and is surrounded by a fertile country. *New Haven* (62,882) is the seat of Yale College. *New London* and *Bridgeport* possess good harbors, and a large amount of shipping. *Norwich* (21,100) is an important manufacturing town.

MIDDLE STATES.

The Middle States comprise:

States.	*Chief Towns.*
New York,	New York, Albany, Buffalo, etc.
New Jersey,	Trenton, Newark, Paterson.
Pennsylvania,	Philadelphia, Harrisburg, Pittsburg.
Delaware,	Wilmington, Dover.
Maryland,	Baltimore, Annapolis, Hagerstown, etc.

District of Columbia, WASHINGTON.

The section of the **Alleghany Mountains** locally known as the *Catskills* extends through the eastern part of New York, and through Pennsylvania and Maryland into Virginia. The country is in general hilly both east and west of the Alleghany Range, with rich and fertile valleys, and abounds in valuable minerals. The Middle States are watered by the principal rivers of the Atlantic slope; the *Hudson*, *Delaware*, *Susquehanna*, and *Potomac*. All these rivers enter the ocean by broad mouths, forming bays and excellent harbors. The Susquehanna and Potomac flow into Chesapeake Bay. On the west side of the Alleghany Mountains, the *Alleghany* and *Monongahela Rivers* combine to form the *Ohio*. The climate is temperate, though warmer than in the Eastern States, especially in Maryland.

New York is the most important State in the Union, not only in population, but in the extent of its commerce and the character of its public improvements. It is well watered by rivers, and large and extensive canals connect the Great Lakes with the Atlantic seaboard. The principal canal is the *Erie*, which connects Buffalo on Lake Erie with Albany on the Hudson River. Important lines of railway supply communication with all the cities of the West. The soil is rich, and produces vast quantities of wheat, which forms the staple of the State.

The surface is much diversified by numerous beautiful lakes, among which are *Cayuga*, *Seneca*, *Canandaigua*, and *Oneida*. *Lake Champlain* lies between New York and Vermont. New York is separated from Ontario by *Lakes Erie* and *Ontario*, and by the *Niagara* and *St. Lawrence Rivers*.

Long and *Staten Islands* are the principal islands of the State on the Atlantic coast.

The original settlers were the Dutch, who colonized New York, then called New Amsterdam, and founded settlements on the Hudson River as far north as Albany.

New York (1,206,577), the largest and most important city in the Union, is situated on Manhattan Island, at the junction of Hudson River and East River, a continuation of Long Island Sound. It contains, with Brooklyn and other suburbs situated on the opposite banks of the rivers, about 2,000,000 inhabitants, and is the great centre of trade for the whole of the United States, about two-thirds of the entire foreign commerce passing through the city. New York is rich in public buildings, and it ranks next to London and Paris among the great cities of the world.

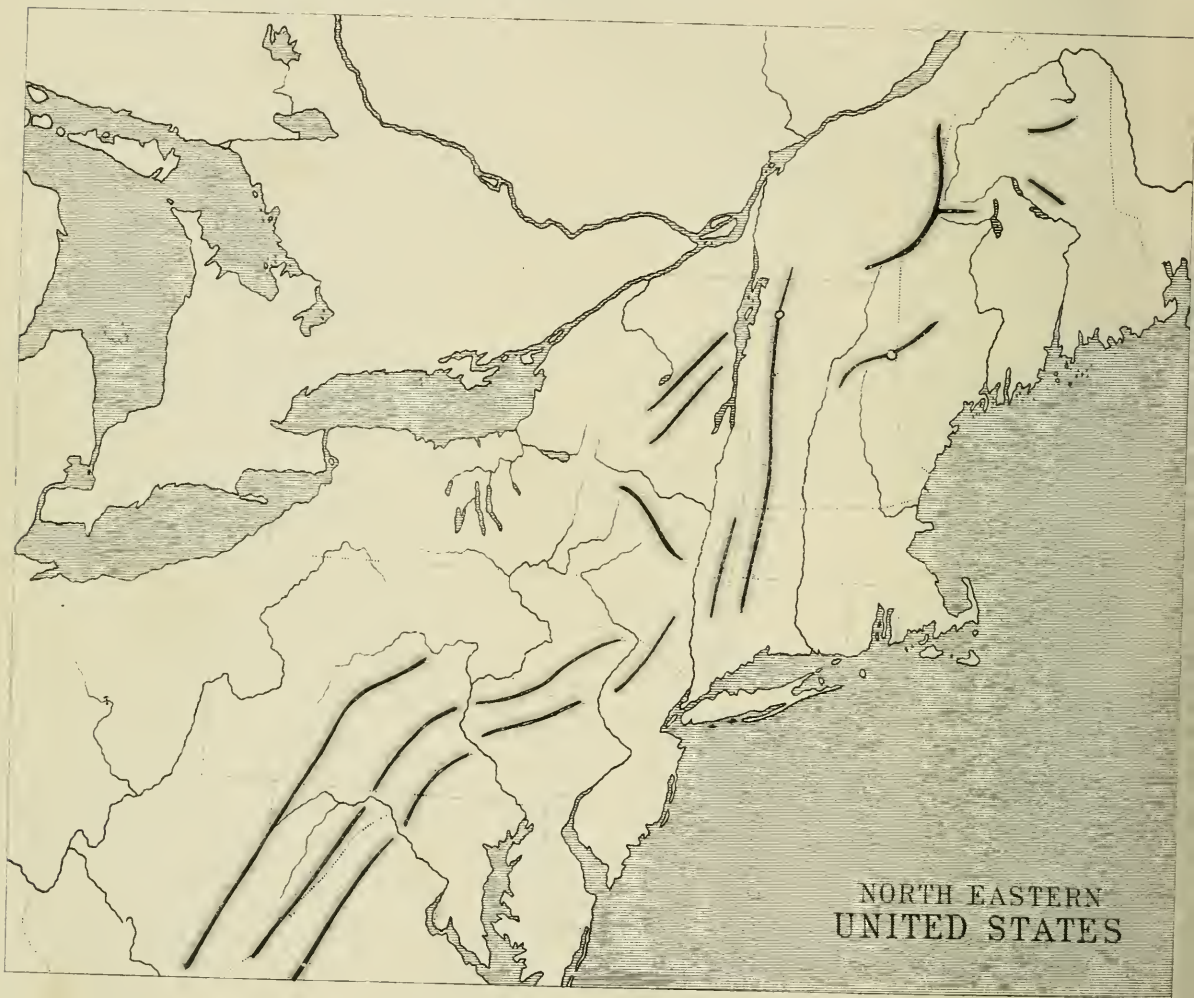
Brooklyn (567,000), on Long Island, contains a United States Navy Yard, and is the third city in the Union.

Albany (91,000), the capital, is situated on the Hudson River, at the terminus of the Erie and Champlain Canals. It is an old and wealthy city. *Buffalo* (155,000), the largest city in the State next to New York, is situated on Lake Erie, and derives its importance from its extensive

EASTERN &
MIDDLE STATES
(UNITED STATES)
English Miles
0 50 100 150
Longitude West 72 from Greenwich
CANADA
QUEBEC
ONTARIO
MAINE
VERMONT
NEW HAMPSHIRE
MASSACHUSETTS
CONNECTICUT
RHODE ISLAND
NEW YORK
PENNSYLVANIA
NEW JERSEY
MARYLAND
DELAWARE
VIRGINIA
WEST VIRGINIA
OHIO
LAKE HURON
LAKE ONTARIO
LAKE ERIE
LAKE MICHIGAN
ATLANTIC OCEAN
Montreal
Quebec
OTTAWA
Toronto
Buffalo
Detroit
Cleveland
Pittsburgh
Philadelphia
Baltimore
WASHINGTON
Boston
Portland
AUGUSTA
Albany
Syracuse
Rochester
Hartford
Providence
Newhaven
New York
Trenton
HARRISBURG
ANNAPOLIS
Wilmington
Dover
Atlantic City
Cape May
Cape Cod
Nantucket I. & Tn
Martha's Vineyard
Long Island
Montauk Pt
Lowell
Lawrence
Manchester
Concord
Nashua
Worcester
Springfield
Salem
Cambridge
Fall River
New Bedford
Woodshole
Plymouth
Portsmouth
Bangor
Machias
Eastport
Calais
St John R.
NEW BRUNSWICK
Chaudiere
Richmond
Sherbrooke
Megantic L.
Three Rivers
Montpelier
Burlington
Rutland
Bennington
Troy
Schenectady
Utica
Oswego
Rochester
Niagara Falls
Niagara R.
Lockport
Kingston
Belleville
Cobourg
Port Hope
Hamilton
Brantford
London
Stratford
Goderich
Owen Sound
Collingwood
Georgian Bay
L. Nipissing
Manitoulin I.
Sarnia
Port Huron
Lake St Clair
Windsor
Amherstburg
Port Stanley
Toledo
Sandusky
Elyria
Mansfield
Wooster
Canton
Akron
Youngs Tn
Tiffin
Warren
Meadville
Oil City
Ridgeway
Franklin
Erie
Dunkirk
Chautauqua
Jamestown
Olean
Elmira
Corning
Binghamton
Ithaca
Watkins
Auburn
Seneca
Cayuga
Owego
Norwich
Oneida
Rome
Utica
Mohawk R.
Schenectady
Albany
Troy
Saratoga Spr
Sandy Hill
Ticonderoga
Lake George
Plattsburgh
Ogdensburg
Cape Vincent
Clayton
Thousand Islands
Kingston
Belleville
Cobourg
Port Hope
Toronto
Hamilton
Niagara Falls
Niagara R.
Lockport
Rochester
Buffalo
Detroit
Cleveland
Akron
Youngs Tn
Tiffin
Mansfield
Wooster
Canton
Ohio R.
Allegheny R.
Pittsburgh
Allegheny City
Delaware
Newark
COLUMBUS
Zanesville
Wheeling
Marietta
Athens
Millicothe
Pomeroy
Portsmouth
Ironton
Parkersburg
Grafton
Clarksburg
Fairmont
Morgantown
Uniontown
Connellsville
Greensburg
Johnstown
Altoona
Huntingdon
Bedford
Chambersburg
Carlisle
Harrisburg
Lancaster
Reading
Pottsville
Allentown
Easton
Bethlehem
Wilkesbarre
Scranton
Williamsport
Lock Haven
Tyrone
Lewistown
Sunbury
Shippen
Tunkhannock
Montrose
Towanda
Elmira
Corning
Binghamton
Owego
Ithaca
Watkins
Auburn
Seneca
Cayuga
Oswego
Syracuse
Utica
Rome
Oneida

EXERCISES ON THE LESSON.

Name the Middle States and their chief towns. Describe their surface. Name the principal mountains. The principal rivers. Point them out on the map, and trace the courses of the rivers. Describe the climate. Describe New York State. How is it bounded? Describe its surface. What islands belong to it? Who were the original settlers? Describe the city of New York. What is its population? What are the other chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe New Jersey. How is it bounded? What are its chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe Pennsylvania. How is it bounded? From what does it chiefly derive its importance? Describe Philadelphia. What are the other chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe Delaware. How is it bounded? What are its chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe Maryland. How is it bounded? What are its chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe the district of Columbia. Describe Washington. Name the Eastern States, and their chief towns. Where are they situated? Describe the country. What are the principal mountains? What river flows through them? Describe the coast-line. The climate. For what are the Eastern States noted? How were they first settled? Describe Maine. How is it bounded? What are the chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe New Hampshire. How is it bounded? What are its chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe Vermont. How is it bounded? What are its chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe Massachusetts. How is it bounded? Describe its coast and islands. What are its chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe Rhode Island. How is it situated? What are its chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe Connecticut. How is it bounded? What are its chief towns? Where are they situated? For what are they noted?



EXERCISES ON THE MAP.

What river flows into Penobscot Bay? In what State is it? In what State is the Hudson River? What islands lie to the south of Massachusetts? What is the extreme eastern point of Long Island called? Which are the principal cities in the Eastern States on the Atlantic coast? On Long Island Sound? On Connecticut River? On what bay is Boston situated? In what direction is Boston from Toronto? Montreal? St John, N.B.? Portland? How is Connecticut separated from Long Island? Which river drains Lake Champlain?

trade with the Western States. *Rochester* (90,000), with extensive flour-mills, *Oswego* (21,100), the terminus of the Oswego Canal on Lake Ontario, *Sackett's Harbor*, and *Ogdensburgh* (10,000) carry on extensive trade with Canada and the Western States. *West Point*, on the Hudson River, is the seat of the Military Academy of the United States. *Poughkeepsie* (20,000) and *Troy* (57,000), also on the Hudson River, are towns of some importance. *Utica* (34,000), *Syracuse* (52,000), and *Auburn* (21,900) are centres of fertile districts.

New Jersey is situated on the Atlantic coast, extending from Delaware Bay to the Hudson River, and is separated from Pennsylvania by the Delaware River. Its surface is generally low and somewhat marshy, but its soil is good—fruit and vegetables being raised in immense quantities for the New York and Philadelphia markets. Numerous unimportant islands skirt the coast, but there are no harbors. This State was the scene of many battles during the Revolutionary war.

Trenton (30,000), near the lower falls of the Delaware, is the capital. *Newark* (137,000) and *Paterson* (51,000) are important manufacturing towns. *Princeton* contains two colleges. *Jersey City* (121,000) is a suburb of the city of New York.

Pennsylvania is the second State in the Union in respect of population. It is an inland State, connected with the ocean by Delaware Bay. The Alleghany Mountains intersect it, rendering the surface hilly. The soil is good, especially in the south, which is the most populous part. Wheat is the staple.

Pennsylvania derives its chief importance from its valuable coal and iron mines and petroleum wells. It was originally settled by Quakers, under the direction of William Penn; a considerable proportion of the inhabitants, however, are of German origin, and still retain their mother tongue.

Philadelphia (847,000), the largest city in the State, and second largest in the Union, is built on a flat peninsula between the Delaware and Schuylkill Rivers, and is about 120 miles from the sea. It is the most regularly built city on the continent, all the streets being laid out at right angles. It contains many fine buildings and extensive water-works, and carries on a large shipping and inland trade. *Harrisburg* (30,800), on the Susquehanna, is the capital. *Pittsburg* (156,400) is situated on a peninsula between the Alleghany and Monongahela Rivers, which here join and form the Ohio River. It is at the head of steamboat navigation, and the centre of the coal and iron region of Pennsylvania. It possesses the most important iron manufactures in the United States. *Alleghany* (78,500) does a large trade in coal, iron, and glassware. *Reading* (43,000) and *Lancaster* (25,800) are thriving towns, chiefly peopled by Germans. *Pottsville* and other towns derive their importance from the adjacent coal mines. *Gettysburg* was the scene of a great battle between the Northern and Southern forces in 1863. *Erie* (27,700) is a considerable port on Lake Erie. *Scranton* (46,000) is the centre of a large trade in anthracite coal.

Delaware, situated to the south of Delaware Bay, is a small and unimportant State. Its surface is low and sandy, and its population chiefly agricultural, but in the northern part manufactures are carried on.

Wilmington (43,000), the largest town, is situated near the mouth of the river Brandywine. It has numerous manufactures and a considerable trade. *Dover*, near the middle of the State, is the capital.

Maryland is the most northerly of the late Slave States. In soil and surface it resembles Pennsylvania, but the climate is warmer. Tobacco is its staple. Iron and coal are found in the west.

Baltimore (332,000), the largest city in Maryland, is situated on the Patapsco River, 14 miles from Chesapeake Bay. It is well built, and possesses some fine monuments. It is the commercial emporium for a large part of the western trade. *Fort McHenry* is at the mouth of the harbor. *Annapolis*, a small town on an arm of Chesapeake Bay, is the capital. *Frederick*, *Hagerstown*, and *Cumberland* are also important centres for local trade.

The **District of Columbia** is the seat of the United States Government, and is under its direct control. It was originally ten miles square, extending on both sides of the Potomac, but the part in Virginia was given back to that State, and the District is now confined to the Maryland side of the river. The inhabitants have no representation in Congress.

Washington (147,300), the capital of the United States, and the seat of the Federal Government, is situated on the Potomac River, about 110 miles from its mouth, and contains the finest public buildings in the United States, viz., the Capitol, Treasury, and Patent Office. The President, during his term of office, resides at the White House—the official residence of the head of the nation. The city occupies a large space of ground, but it derives its importance from being the seat of government.

SOUTHERN STATES.

The Southern States comprise:

States.	*Chief Towns.*
Virginia,	Richmond, Norfolk, Petersburg.
West Virginia,	Wheeling, Charleston.
North Carolina,	Raleigh, Newbern, Wilmington.
South Carolina,	Columbia, Charleston, Beaufort.
Georgia,	Atlanta, Savannah, Augusta.
Florida,	Tallahassee, Pensacola
Alabama,	Montgomery, Mobile.
Mississippi,	Jackson, Natchez, Vicksburg.
Louisiana,	New Orleans, Baton Rouge.
Texas,	Austin, Galveston, Houston.
Tennessee,	Nashville, Memphis, Knoxville.
Kentucky,	Frankfort, Louisville, Lexington.
Arkansas,	Little Rock.

These together with Maryland and Missouri, were formerly Slave States; all of which, except Kentucky and Maryland, seceded from the Union in 1861. A frightful civil war then ensued, which lasted for nearly four years, when they were forced back into the Union, and slavery was abolished. After a period of probation, their right to representation in Congress was restored to them.

The country occupied by these States is intersected in the north by the **Alleghany Mountains**, forming two parallel chains, called the *Cumberland Mountains* in Kentucky and Tennessee, and the *Blue Ridge* in Virginia. They extend to the northern part of Alabama. In the interior the surface is hilly, but along the coast it is low and flat, forming vast and unhealthy swamps, as the *Dismal Swamp* in Virginia, the *Great Pedee Swamp* in South Carolina, and the *Everglades* in Florida. The rivers to the east of the Alleghanies are of little commercial importance. In the West the important rivers are the *Ohio*, with its tributaries the *Cumberland* and *Tennessee*, flowing into the *Mississippi*; and the *Alabama River*, flowing into the Gulf of Mexico.

The coast-line is not so broken as in the north, but numerous sand-banks and small islands line the coast. The peninsula of **Florida**, terminated by *Cape Sable*, juts out in a remarkable manner, as if originally joined to South America by means of the West India Islands. The climate is hot, and in the most southerly States very unhealthy, so that few white people can live on the plantations in summer. Almost all the labor is carried on by negroes. The soil is rich and productive; cotton, rice, sugar, tobacco, and Indian corn being the staples. Gold is found in small quantities in North Carolina and Georgia.

Virginia is one of the oldest States in the Union, and the birthplace of many of the most celebrated men of the United States. It possesses an extremely rich soil, which, however, has been much exhausted by careless cultivation. Tobacco is the great staple, and wheat and cattle are also extensively raised. It is celebrated for its picturesque scenery and natural wonders, such as the Natural Bridge, etc. It was the scene of severe engagements in the late civil war, and was devastated by the troops of both North and South, until the eastern section of the State became almost a desert.

The western part of **Virginia**, having owned the authority of the Federal Government, was in 1862 formed into a separate State.

Richmond (63,600), the capital of Virginia, is situated on the James River, and carries on the principal trade. It was the capital and army headquarters of the Confederate States, and many bloody and obstinate battles were fought near it. *Norfolk* (22,000) possesses a fine harbor, and is the chief seaport. At *Portsmouth*, opposite Norfolk, is the United States Navy Yard and Naval Hospital. *Petersburg* is the chief centre of the tobacco trade. *Fredericksburg*, *Harper's Ferry*, and other places became famous during the war. *Wheeling* (32,000), on the Ohio, is a large manufacturing town, and the capital of West Virginia. Charleston was formerly the capital.

North Carolina is densely covered with pine woods, and exports large quantities of tar and turpentine. Grain and cattle are raised in the western part of the State. Its coast is almost enclosed by low sandy islands. Cape Hatteras is one of the most dangerous points on the Atlantic coast.

Raleigh, a small town near the centre of the State, is the capital. *Newbern* and *Wilmington* (17,400) are the chief seaports.

South Carolina is an important and wealthy State, and was the first to secede from the Union. The soil is very fertile. The numerous islands along the coast produce the best cotton, called sea-island cotton Rice is the staple product of the lowlands, and cotton of the interior.

Charleston (50,000) is the largest city, and before the war was almost the only one on the eastern coast of the Southern States possessing direct trade with Europe. It is an elegantly built city, and carries on a large trade in cotton and rice. *Columbia*, near the centre of the State, is the capital. *Georgetown* and *Beaufort* have a large trade.

Georgia is one of the largest and most populous of the Southern States, producing vast quantities of cotton, rice, and wheat.

Savannah (31,000), the largest city, is situated on a river of the same name, 17 miles from its mouth, and carries on the principal trade of the State. *Atlanta* (37,400) is the capital. *Augusta* and *Macon* are important towns with a large local trade. *Columbus* is the seat of cotton manufacture.

Florida was formerly in the possession of Spain, but was ceded to the United States in 1820, and became a separate State in 1845. The country is low and flat, but vegetation is most luxuriant. The coast-line, although extending 1,200 miles, possesses few harbors, and is the scene of many wrecks. The coral reefs on the south, called the Florida Keys, are especially dangerous, owing to the rapid current of the Gulf Stream.

Pensacola, on the Gulf of Mexico, has a fine harbor, and a United States Navy Yard. *Tallahassee* is the capital. *Apalachicola*, at the mouth of the river of the same name, is the chief commercial city of the State. *St. Augustine* is a favorite resort for invalids, on account of its delightful climate. *Key West*, one of the Florida Keys, has a fine harbor.

Alabama is watered by several important rivers—the *Alabama*, *Tombigbee*, and other streams—and produces vast quantities of cotton.

Mobile (29,100), the largest city, is situated at the

mouth of the Mobile River, and carries on a large trade in cotton, which is conveyed down the rivers from the interior and from the adjoining States. *Montgomery*, near the centre, is the capital, and was for a short time the capital of the Confederate States. *Tuscaloosa* and *Huntsville* are also important towns.

Mississippi is the principal cotton State, and extends along the east bank of the Mississippi River. *Jackson* is the capital; *Natchez* (10,000) and *Vicksburg* (15,000) carry on the principal trade of the State. The latter is noted for the long siege it withstood in 1863.

Louisiana is the principal State for the production of sugar. Cotton is also extensively grown in the northern part of the State. The country is very flat on both sides of the Mississippi. To protect the land from being inundated, the river is kept between vast dykes or *levees*, as they are called, which extend for about 300 miles above New Orleans.

Louisiana formerly belonged to France, but was purchased by the United States in 1803, along with the vast territory extending from the Mississippi north-west to the Pacific, for 15,000,000 dollars. The French language is still used to some extent, and the laws are published both in French and English.

New Orleans (215,000), the capital, and the largest city in the South, is situated on the Mississippi River, about 100 miles from its mouth. All the commerce of that great river and its tributaries centres at New Orleans, and the number of steamboats and flatboats crowding its *levée* is enormous. It carries on a large foreign shipping trade, and has a considerable population composed of French and Spanish creoles. *Baton Rouge*, formerly the capital, and *Alexandria* are important centres of trade.

Texas is the largest State in the Union. Previous to 1835 it belonged to Mexico, but was conquered by the United States in 1845 and 1846, and ceded to the latter in 1848. The surface of the country is a rolling prairie, intersected by numerous rivers, and separated from Mexico by the Rio Grande del Norte. The *Brazos* and *Colorado* are the principal rivers. The products of the State are sugar, cotton, and Indian corn. Vast herds of wild cattle, buffaloes, and wild horses roam over the prairies. *Austin*, the capital, is situated on the Colorado. *Galveston* is the chief seaport, and *Houston* the former capital. *Matagorda* and *San Antonio de Bexar* are important towns.

Arkansas, a rapidly growing State, lies to the north of Louisiana, and west of the Mississippi River. Cotton is the chief product. It is intersected by the Arkansas and other rivers. *Little Rock* is the capital of the State.

Tennessee and **Kentucky** are the great centres for the production of Indian corn and tobacco; Tennessee has also valuable iron mines. Cattle are reared in vast numbers. The surface is mountainous or undulating, and is well watered by large and navigable rivers. The soil is very productive.

Nashville (44,000), the capital of Tennessee, is situated on the Cumberland River. *Memphis* (33,200), on the Mississippi, and *Knoxville* are important commercial towns.

Frankfort, a small town, is the capital of Kentucky. *Louisville* (123,800), on the Ohio, is the largest city, with important manufactures and extensive trade. *Covington* is the second largest city in Kentucky. *Lexington* is the centre of a large and fertile district.

WESTERN STATES.

The Western States comprise:

States.	*Chief Towns.*
Ohio,	Cincinnati, Columbus, Cleveland, Toledo.
Michigan,	Detroit, Lansing, Grand Rapids.
Indiana,	Indianapolis, Madison, Terre Haute.
Illinois,	Springfield, Chicago, Alton.
Wisconsin,	Milwaukee, Madison, Green Bay.
Minnesota,	St. Paul, Minneapolis.
Iowa,	Des Moines, Davenport, Burlington, Dubuque.
Missouri,	St. Louis, Jefferson City.
Kansas,	Topeka, Leavenworth.
California,	San Francisco, Sacramento City.
Oregon,	Salem, Portland, Oregon City.
Nebraska,	Lincoln, Omaha.
Nevada,	Carson City, Virginia City.
Colorado,	Denver, Pueblo.

The term **Western States** is generally applied to those lying west of the Ohio and Mississippi Rivers. The surface of the country is in general composed of vast level prairies, sometimes gently undulating, and thus called rolling prairies. They are principally covered with tall rank grass, forests only occurring in a few places between the Rocky Mountains and the chain of the Pacific. These prairies are admirably adapted for agriculture and pasturage, requiring but little labor to raise wheat, Indian corn, and other grains, in vast abundance. They are, however, in many places, marshy and unhealthy, especially in the neighborhood of rivers, the slope of the country being too slight to carry off rapidly the superabundant moisture. South of the Missouri the country is more hilly and wooded. These States comprise the greater portion of the vast plain drained by the Mississippi and its tributaries. They are rich in minerals; gold, iron, lead, copper, and salt being found in great abundance. They have been chiefly peopled by settlers from the Eastern States, Great Britain, and Germany.

Ohio is the most important of the Western States in regard to population and commerce. In the western section the prairies commence, but in the east it is well wooded. The soil is fertile, producing wheat and Indian corn in great abundance. Pork and wool are largely exported. Iron, coal, and salt are found in the south-east.

Cincinnati (256,000), one of the largest and most important cities in the West, is situated on the Ohio. It carries on an extensive trade in pork and distilling. *Columbus* (52,000), near the centre of the State, is the capital.

Cleveland (160,000), *Sandusky* (15,800), and *Toledo* (50,-100), on Lake Erie, have a large shipping and inland trade. *Dayton* (39,000), *Marietta*, and *Portsmouth* are important towns.

Michigan possesses the largest extent of lake-coast of any State in the Union, being washed by *Lakes Superior*, *Michigan*, *Huron*, and *Erie*. Lake Michigan is entirely within the United States. It is connected with Lake Huron by the Straits of Mackinaw, both shores of which are in Michigan. The soil is fertile, wheat being the staple. Lumbering is extensively carried on, and on the shores of Lake Superior copper is found in great quantities.

Detroit (116,300), on the Detroit River, opposite Windsor, in Ontario, is the principal city, possessing an extensive lake commerce. *Lansing* is the capital. *Grand Rapids* (32,000), *Monroe*, *Saginaw*, *Ann Arbor*, and *Kalamazoo* are important towns, with a large local trade.

Indiana, Illinois, Iowa, Wisconsin, and **Minnesota,** all present the same general physical features, and resemble each other in their soil and productions. They are composed chiefly of vast prairies (Minnesota and Wisconsin being the only States which are at all wooded), and are watered by the Mississippi and its tributaries. The climate is dry, and warmer than in Canada, even in those States which are in the same latitude. The principal products are wheat and Indian corn, though vast quantities of cattle are reared for the eastern markets. Iowa and Wisconsin have valuable lead mines. These are comparatively new States, and are remarkable for the rapidity with which they have been settled and brought under cultivation.

The chief towns in Indiana: *Indianapolis* (75,000), the capital; *Terre Haute*, *Evansville*, *Madison*, and *New Albany*, are important centres of trade.

In Illinois, *Chicago* (503,000), on Lake Michigan, is the largest city. It has been built chiefly since 1830, and has risen with unparalleled rapidity into a large and elegant city. It carries on an extensive commerce on the lakes, and is the great centre of the grain-growing States. In October, 1871, it was devastated by a fire which destroyed one-half the city, with enormous loss of property, but it has since been rebuilt and remarkably improved. *Springfield* is the capital. *Peoria* (29,300), *Alton*, and *Galena* are important towns.

The chief towns in Iowa are *Des Moines*, the capital, *Davenport* (21,800), *Burlington*, *Dubuque*, and *Muscatine*.

In Wisconsin, *Milwaukee* (115,600), the largest city, is another example of rapid growth and prosperity. It has been built principally since 1830, possesses a fine harbor on Lake Michigan, and does a large trade on the lakes. *Madison* is the capital. *Racine* and *Green Bay* are rising towns. *Superior City* is at the extreme west end of Lake Superior.

In Minnesota, *St. Paul* (42,000), the capital, is at the head of Mississippi navigation. *Minneapolis* (46,900) is the largest town. *Duluth* is at the western end of Lake Superior.

Missouri is a large and important State, intersected by the Missouri River, which joins the Mississippi at St. Louis. Its surface is level, consisting of extensive prairies, with a very fertile soil. It is especially rich in minerals, chiefly iron, lead, coal, and salt. The Iron Mountain in Missouri is an immense mass of almost pure iron. Corn, hemp, and tobacco grow abundantly in this State, and vast herds of cattle are reared on the prairies.

St. Louis (351,000), on the Mississippi, is the principal centre of trade for the hunters and traders whose operations extend to the Rocky Mountains. It has also a large trade on the Mississippi and Missouri Rivers. *Jefferson City*, near the centre of the State, is the capital. *St. Geneviève*, *Independence*, etc., are rising towns.

Kansas is a new but rapidly rising State, lying to the west of Missouri, with fertile prairie lands in the east, but barren in the west. The chief towns are *Leavenworth*, *Lecompton*, and *Lawrence;* and near them is *Topeka*, the capital.

California, on the Pacific coast, is celebrated for its rich gold and silver mines, discovered in 1849. Previous to that time it was almost uninhabited, except by Indians. It now contains 864,700 inhabitants. The country is mountainous, lying mainly between the parallel chains of the Pacific ranges. The mountains are generally covered with magnificent timber, and contain groves of enormous trees, many of which measure from twenty to thirty feet in diameter. Gold is chiefly found on the west side of the *Sierra Nevada* mountains. Quicksilver is also found. The soil is very productive, wheat and Indian corn being extensively cultivated. Good wine is also made in considerable quantities.

San Francisco (234,000), the largest city, and capital of California, is situated on a bay of the same name. Its commerce is enormous, it being the principal commercial emporium of the Pacific coast. *Oakland* (35,000), *Sacramento*, in the gold regions, *San José*, *Los Angelos*, and *Stockton* are important towns.

Oregon is a new State, lying to the north of California, on the Pacific coast. It is mountainous, and covered with magnificent forests. The coast is rocky, and has few good harbors. The soil is very fertile between the mountains and the coast. It contains as yet but a small population, which is principally settled in the valley of the Willamette, between the Cascade range and the Pacific Ocean. *Salem*, on the Willamette, is the capital; *Portland* and *Oregon City* are the chief towns.

Nebraska, Nevada, and **Colorado** are recently settled States, lately admitted into the Union. Nebraska is a prairie country; but Nevada and Colorado are mountain-

ous, and are important for their valuable gold and silver mines.

In Nebraska are: *Lincoln*, the capital, and *Omaha* (31,000).

In Nevada are: *Carson City*, the capital, and *Virginia City*, with its celebrated silver mines.

In Colorado are: *Denver* (36,000), the capital and principal city, and *Pueblo*, a growing town.

TERRITORIES OF THE UNITED STATES.

The **Territories of the United States** are under the direct control of Congress until they become sufficiently populous to entitle them to be formed into independent States. They are ten in number, including Alaska:

Washington.	Dakota.	Utah.	New Mexico.	Alaska.
Idaho.	Indian.	Montana.	Arizona.	Wyoming.

The country embraced in these Territories generally resembles that of the adjacent States. Those to the east of the Rocky Mountains are level prairie lands. Those to the west are more mountainous, or consist of high table-lands, such as Utah. In Washington Territory the country is covered with magnificent forests; but along the Rocky Mountains, on each side, is a vast, barren tract, almost destitute of fresh water, which extends its area into Utah, New Mexico, and Arizona.

Washington Territory lies between British Columbia and Oregon. *Olympia*, at the head of Puget Sound, is the capital.

Idaho, **Montana**, and **Dakota** adjoin the North-west Territory of Canada, and are as yet thinly peopled. Their capitals are respectively *Boisé City*, *Helena*, and *Yankton*. *Pembina*, in the north-east corner of Dakota, on the Red River, is the nearest point of communication with Manitoba, and a railway connects it with Winnipeg.

Arizona and **New Mexico** adjoin Mexico, and are mountainous and rich in minerals, particularly those of gold and silver. *Prescott* is the capital of Arizona; and *Santa Fé*, on the great south-west overland route, the capital of New Mexico.

Wyoming is traversed by the Union Pacific Railway, to which it owes most of its progress. It is mountainous, and contains valuable coal mines. *Cheyenne City*, the capital, and *Laramie*, both stations on the railway, are the principal towns.

The **Indian Territory** is a portion of land set apart for the Indians who have been deported from the more settled States. The tribes represented are Cherokees, Creeks, Choctaws, and Seminoles.

Utah contains the famed Great Salt Lake, near which is *Salt Lake City* (20,000), the chief town and settlement of the Mormons. It has been made by irrigation the centre of a fertile district, and round it are a number of small villages, also peopled by the Mormons.

Alaska, formerly Russian America, comprises the north-west corner of the continent of North America, and is separated from the Dominion of Canada by the 141st degree of west longitude. A chain of volcanic mountains extends from Mount St. Elias through the peninsula of Alaska and the Aleutian Isles. The Yukon River, rising in the Rocky Mountains, flows north-west and west through the centre of the country, and falls into Behring Strait. The Colville River flows north into the Arctic Ocean.

It is an inhospitable region, valuable only for its furs, which the natives barter at the several factories along the coast, the chief of which is Sitka, formerly New Archangel, on Sitka Island. The inhabitants are Eskimos and Indians, who lead a wandering and barbarous life, and subsist by hunting and fishing.

This Territory was purchased by the United States from Russia, in 1867.

MEXICO.

Area, 751,000 square miles; four times the size of Quebec; population, 9,577,000; persons to square mile, 13.

The **United States of Mexico** are bounded on the north by the United States; on the west by the Pacific Ocean; on the south by the Pacific Ocean and Central America; and on the east by the Gulf of Mexico.

Mexico consists of twenty-seven States, one Territory, and one Federal district, united under a government formed like that of the United States.

The surface is for the most part a high plateau, from 6,000 to 8,000 feet above the sea. It is subject to volcanic eruptions and earthquakes. The *Rocky Mountains* are continued through Mexico under the name of the *Cordilleras*. These are highest in the south, where the lofty volcanoes Orizaba and Popocatepetl rise to the height of 17,373 and 17,884 feet respectively.

The principal rivers are the *Rio Grande*, which forms the north-eastern boundary, and flows into the Gulf of Mexico, and the *Santiago*, flowing into the Pacific Ocean.

The coast-line of Mexico is more broken on the Pacific than on the Gulf of Mexico. The principal gulfs are those of *Mexico*, *Campeachy*, and *California*; the latter extending 700 miles between the peninsula of Lower California and the mainland, and meeting the Colorado River from the United States.

The principal capes are *Catoche*, *Corrientes*, and *San Lucas*.

Mexico possesses the temperatures and climates of the three zones. On the coast it is hot and unhealthy, gradually becoming milder towards the high plateau in the interior; on the higher mountains it is cold, and the snow never melts. Its productions are varied. Indian corn forms the principal staple; and, besides that,

coffee, cocoa, sugar, indigo, and the maguey, from which pulque, the favorite drink of the lower classes, is made, are extensively cultivated. On the coast all the tropical fruits, and on the high lands all the European grains, flourish. Yucatan exports mahogany and logwood.

The cochineal insect, yielding a valuable dye, is largely exported. Immense herds of cattle, horses, and mules are reared on the northern prairies. It is also rich in minerals; and, previous to the revolution of 1821, its mines produced nearly 25,000,000 dollars of silver annually. They are not now so productive. Iron, copper, lead, and quicksilver are also found. The inhabitants are composed of native whites or creoles, Indians, and mixed races of whites, Indians, and negroes. The Indians of the south are comparatively civilized, and live in villages; in the north they are savage, and are continually at war with each other and with the white inhabitants.

Mexico was first conquered by the Spaniards, under Cortez, in 1521. At that time it consisted of an extensive empire under a regular government. The people were the most civilized on the continent; and many interesting monuments still remain to show their ancient grandeur. The chief of these is the pyramid of Cholula, 70 miles east of Mexico, which is a lofty mound, covering a larger area than any of the great pyramids of Egypt. The colonists threw off the Spanish yoke in 1821, and in 1823 established a republic. Since then they have been almost continually engaged in intestine feuds. In 1845–48, during the war with the United States, Mexico lost Texas and the northern part of the territory which now forms the State of California, and the territories of Utah, New Mexico, and Arizona. In 1861, France, England, and Spain sent an expedition against Mexico, in order to indemnify themselves for losses sustained by their subjects in that country. England and Spain withdrew their forces, but the French, not satisfied, conquered the greater part of the country, and induced the Archduke Maximilian of Austria to accept the title of Emperor. So long as the French army occupied the country, Maximilian retained his position and title, but in 1867, when the French troops were withdrawn, the Emperor, after a brave but futile struggle, was taken prisoner and shot by the Republican forces. The government is now in form republican.

Owing to the hitherto unsettled state of the country, educational progress and material advancement have been slow. The Roman Catholic is the only religion tolerated.

Mexico (242,000), the principal city, is beautifully situated in a fertile plain, about 7,500 feet above the sea. It is an elegant city, adorned with fountains and magnificent churches. About 50 miles south-east, amid numerous peaks, rises the volcano Popocatepetl, or Smoking Mountain. *Vera Cruz* (10,000), to the east of the capital, is the principal port. Its harbor is poor, and the situation low and unhealthy. In going from Vera Cruz to Mexico, the traveller passes through several distinct zones of vegetation, from the tropical on the coast to the temperate on the plains. *La Puebla* (65,000) and *Guadalajara* (68,000) are important towns. *Matamoras* (20,000), near the mouth of the Rio Grande, *Tampico*, and *Campeachy* are the principal ports on the east, and *Acapulco* and *Mazatlan* on the west; *Guanajuata* (56,000), *Zacatecas* (16,000), and *San Luis Potosi* (34,000) are in the centre of the richest silver mines. *Merida* (30,000) is the capital of Yucatan.

CENTRAL AMERICA.

Area, 180,000 square miles; about the size of Quebec; population, 2,567,000; persons to square mile, 14.

Central America is the name generally given to that portion of North America lying between Mexico and South America, and which forms an isthmus between the two continents.

It is composed of five independent States and one British colony:

States.	*Chief Towns.*
Guatemala,	New Guatemala.
San Salvador,	San Salvador.
Honduras,	Tegucigalpa, Truxillo.
Nicaragua,	Leon, Managua.
Costa Rica,	San José.
British Honduras,	Belize.

Central America resembles Mexico in climate, productions, religion, and institutions. It consists of a high plateau, from which rise numerous volcanoes. Earthquakes and volcanic eruptions are frequent and destructive. Most of the principal towns are situated on the inland plateau; on the coast the settlements are unhealthy. The inhabitants are chiefly Indians, or a mixed race of Indians, Negroes, and Spaniards.

These republics formerly belonged to Spain, but in 1821 they declared themselves independent; and since then they have been the scene of almost continual war and strife. In 1823, they formed themselves into a confederation as the United States of Central America, but in 1839 the union was dissolved, and they are now all independent States.

The soil is rich and fertile, and, as in Mexico, combines the productions of the tropical with those of the temperate zone. The chief exports are mahogany, logwood, indigo, cochineal, cocoa, sarsaparilla, etc.

The Isthmus of Panama, at the southern extremity of these States, belonging to Colombia, in South America, is traversed by a railway, which affords direct communication between the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans.

Several schemes have been proposed for the construc-

EXERCISES ON THE LESSON.

What is the area of Mexico? Population? Size? Capital? How is Mexico bounded? What mountains are there in Mexico? Name the principal rivers, and trace them on the map. Name the principal gulfs, and state where they are situated. Name the principal capes, and say where they are situated. When and by whom was Mexico first conquered? What was the state of the country and people at that time? What has happened in Mexico during this century? Describe the principal towns. Where are they situated? What is the area of Central America? Population? Size? Describe Central America. Describe the soil, products, and exports. Of what States is it composed? What is their political condition? Describe British Honduras and its chief town. How is it situated? Describe the chief towns of Guatemala. San Salvador. Honduras. Nicaragua. Costa Rica. How are they situated? What is the area of the West India Islands? Their population? Describe them. How are they divided? To whom do they belong? How have they been formed? Describe the coast. Describe the climate, productions, animals, &c. How is the population composed? What did the British Government do for the slaves? What is the extent of the British West India Islands? Population? How are they divided? Name them, and point them out on the map. Describe the Bahamas. How are they situated? The chief islands? Describe Jamaica. How is it situated? What mountains does it contain? Describe its products. What are the chief towns? Describe the Leeward Islands. How are they situated? What are the principal islands, and their chief towns? Describe the Windward Islands. How are they situated? Describe Trinidad. What remarkable lake, &c., does it contain? What is its chief town? Describe the Bermudas. Where are they situated? What is the principal island and town, and for what is it useful? Which are the Spanish West India Islands? How are they situated? Population? Size? Describe Cuba. Its productions, soil, climate, &c. Which are its chief towns? Describe Puerto Rico. Its chief town. Describe Hayti. How is it situated? What are the chief towns? What islands belong to France? Where are they situated? What are their chief towns? What islands belong to Holland? What are their chief towns? What islands belong to Denmark?

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.

What large gulf is on the west of Mexico? What is the southern point of the peninsula of Lower California called? What river separates Mexico from Texas? Which Central American States adjoin Mexico? What large gulf is on the east of Mexico? Which are the principal ports on the Gulf of Mexico? On the Pacific Ocean? In what direction from the city of Mexico is Vera Cruz? Mazatlan? Acapulco? Between what States is the Isthmus of Panama? What gulf lies to the east of Yucatan? What is the eastern point of Honduras called? Which are the principal Central American ports on the Caribbean Sea? On the Pacific Ocean? In what direction from Aspinwall is Jamaica? New Orleans? New York? In what zone are the Central American States What sea is between the West India Islands and Central America? Which is the largest of the West India Islands? In what position is Jamaica from Cuba? From Trinidad? Which island is nearest to Yucatan? Which group is most northerly? Which most southerly? In what direction is Havana from Key West? St Thomas from Kingston, Jamaica? What islands are near San Domingo? Among what groups of islands are the French Islands? The Danish Islands? How is Trinidad separated from South America on the West? In what groups are St Kitts, Nevis, Barbadoes, Barbuda?

WEST INDIES
& CENTRAL AMERICA.
English Miles
0 100 200 300 400 500
Longitude West 70 of Greenwich.
GULF OF MEXICO
ATLANTIC OCEAN
PACIFIC OCEAN
CARIBBEAN SEA
UNITED STATES
Florida
Bahama Is.
Cuba
Jamaica
HAYTI OR ST DOMINGO
Puerto Rico
DOMINICA
Yucatan
MEXICO
Belize
GUATEMALA
HONDURAS
NICARAGUA
COSTA RICA
CENTRAL AMERICA
San Juan de Nicaragua
Bluefields
Chagres
Panama
Gulf of Panama
Gulf of Darien
Isthmus of Panama
Magdalena
Cartagena
Santa Marta
Maracaibo
Lake Maracaibo
Puerto Cabello
CARACAS
La Guayra
Barcelona
Cumana
Margarita
Trinidad
Tobago
Barbadoes
St Vincent
Grenada
Grenadines
St Lucia
Martinique
Guadeloupe
Dominica
Antigua
Montserrat
Nevis
St Christophers
Saba
Eustatius
St Martin
Anguilla
Virgin Is.
Tortola
Bermudas
Bahama Is.
Turks Is.
Caicos Is.
Windward Passage
Mona Passage
Old Providence
St Andrews
Corn Is.
Cayman Is.
Grand Cayman
Swan Is.
Roncador
Serrana
Quita Sueno
Serranilla
Alacran
Triangles
Coco Is.
Pedro Bank
Rosalind Bank
Great Bahama Bank
Little Bahama Bank
Providence
Eleuthera I.
Andros I.
Cat I.
Exuma Is.
Long I.
Crooked I.
Acklin I.
Mariguana
Ragged Is.
Inagua
Hayti
Jamaica
Cuba
Yucatan
Campeachy
Honduras
Guatemala
Nicaragua
Costa Rica
Panama
Colombia
Venezuela
Brazil
Dutch Guiana
British Guiana
Brit. Guiana
Surinam
Cayenne
Demerara
Essequibo
Berbice
Pomeroon
Orinoco
Maracaibo
Lake Maracaibo
Gulf of Venezuela
Leeward Islands
Windward Islands
Curacao
Aruba
Bonaire
Los Roques
Orchilla
Margarita
Tortuga
Blanquilla
Testigos
Dragons Mouth
Serpents Mouth
Mouths of the Orinoco
Trinidad
Tobago
Barbadoes
Grenada
Grenadines
St Vincent
St Lucia
Martinique
Dominica
Guadeloupe

tion of a ship-canal from the Caribbean Sea to the Pacific through the Isthmus of Panama or by way of Lake Nicaragua, and at last one of the many projects is about to be realized. The San Juan River has its outlet in the Caribbean Sea, 180 miles distant from the Pacific.

British Honduras is a British colony. It exports large quantities of mahogany. *Belize*, the capital, is an important dépôt for British goods.

The **Mosquito Coast** extends along the east of Honduras and Nicaragua, from Cape Gracias à Dios to the mouth of the San Juan River. It was formerly under the protectorate of Britain, but since 1860 it has formed part of Nicaragua.

New Guatemala (50,000) is the largest city in Central America. *Old Guatemala*, once a magnificent city, was almost destroyed by a volcanic eruption, and afterwards, in 1773, by an earthquake; in consequence, most of the inhabitants removed from it, and founded the new city.

San Salvador (20,000), near the Pacific coast, is the centre of the indigo-producing country. The city was nearly destroyed by an earthquake in 1854.

Tegucigalpa (10,000) is the capital, and *Truxillo* the seaport, of **Honduras**.

Leon (25,000) is the largest city, and Managua (10,000) is the capital, of **Nicaragua**. *San Juan*, or *Greytown*, was bombarded by a United States force in 1854.

San José (12,000) is the capital of **Costa Rica**.

WEST INDIA ISLANDS.

Area, 94,400 square miles; population, 4,617,000; or nearly 50 persons to a square mile.

The **West India Islands** form an extensive archipelago, reaching from the peninsula of Florida, in North America, to the delta of the Orinoco, in South America, and enclosing the Caribbean Sea. They comprise nearly 1,000 islands, most of them small uninhabited rocks. They are usually divided into three groups—the Bahamas, and the Greater and Lesser Antilles; the latter include the Virgin Islands in the north, the Windward Islands in the south, and the Leeward Islands between.

They all belong to European Powers, except Hayti, which is independent, and Margarita and a few small islands along the coast, which belong to Venezuela, in South America. They are in general mountainous, the largest being traversed by ranges of a considerable height. In the Lesser Antilles there are many volcanoes, and earthquakes are frequent. Most of the small islands have been formed by submarine volcanoes.

The climate is hot and unhealthy, though modified by the sea and land breezes on the coast, and by the height of the mountains in the interior. Like most tropical countries, there is a wet and a dry season: violent hurricanes occur from August to October.

The islands are celebrated for their rich products. Every variety of tropical fruits and spices, such as oranges, pineapples, bananas, ginger, etc., grows in abundance, and the forests produce valuable cabinet woods. The sugar-cane and coffee form the great staple products; the first yielding sugar, rum, and molasses. Tobacco, indigo, pepper, and various spices are extensively cultivated. No wild animals are found; but birds and insects are beautiful and numerous. Turtles are found on the coasts.

The population consists chiefly of negroes and mixed races, the whites numbering only about one-sixth of the whole. The negroes are slaves, except in the British and French islands. The Imperial Government in 1834 paid 100,000,000 dollars to free the slaves on the British Islands.

BRITISH ISLANDS.

Area, 13,320 square miles; three-fourths the size of Nova Scotia; population, 1,200,000.

The **British Islands** comprise all the Bahamas, Jamaica, in the Greater Antilles, and the principal islands of the Lesser Antilles. They are formed into five separate Governments, as follows:

	Chief Towns.
1. Bahamas,	Nassau.
2. Jamaica,	Kingston, Spanish Town.
3. Leeward Islands, comprising:	
Tortola,	Tortola.
Anegada, and Virgin Gorda,	Roadtown.
Anguilla,	Anguilla.
Barbuda,	Barbuda.
St. Christopher (St. Kitts),	Basseterre.
Nevis,	Charlestown.
Antigua,	St. John.
Montserrat,	Plymouth.
Dominica.	Roseau.
4. Windward Islands, comprising:	
St. Lucia,	Castries.
St. Vincent,	Kingston.
Barbadoes,	Bridgetown.
Grenadines (cluster of small islands).	
Grenada,	St. George.
Tobago,	Scarborough.
5. Trinidad,	Port of Spain.
Bermudas,	Hamilton.

1. The **Bahamas** (43,500) are the most northerly of the West India Islands, and comprise about 500 islands, few of which are inhabited. They are generally low, barren, and rocky, and surrounded by coral reefs. The Gulf Stream sweeps through the channel between Florida and the Great Bahama Bank, from which most of the Bahama Islands rise, at the rate of five miles an hour, rendering navigation dangerous. The principal islands are: *Bahama*, which gives its name to the group; *New Providence*, on which is situated Nassau (7,000), the capital; *San Salvador*, the first land reached by Columbus.

2. **Jamaica** (560,000), the largest and most valuable of the British Islands, is nearly three times the size of Prince Edward Island. It was taken from Spain in 1655. The *Blue Mountains*, rising above 7,000 feet in height, and covered with forests, traverse the island from east to west. The country is well watered by small streams

Its products are sugar, rum, coffee, and spices, which are chiefly exported to Britain. *Kingston* (35,000), the capital, is situated on the north side of Port Royal, a fine harbor, which is well defended. It carries on a large shipping trade, and is connected by railway with *Spanish Town*, the former capital, ten miles distant.

3. **Leeward Islands** (118,000). Antigua is the principal island, of which *St. John* (18,700) is the capital, and seat of government. *St. Christopher* has a fertile soil. *Basseterre* (7,000), its principal town, and *Roseau* (5,000), the chief town of Dominica, export sugar, rum, and molasses.

4. The **Windward Islands** (285,000) are the most easterly and southerly of the West India Islands. *Barbadoes*, the oldest British settlement, is densely peopled: it has 1,035 persons to the square mile. *Bridgetown* (21,000), the largest town, is the capital and seat of government. In *St. Vincent* is the volcano of Morne Garou. *Kingston* (5,500), its chief town, carries on an extensive trade. *St. George*, in Grenada, *Castries*, in St. Lucia, and *Scarborough*, in Tobago, are important towns.

5. **Trinidad** (153,128) is the most southerly of the West India Islands, and, next to Jamaica, is the largest of the British Islands. It is separated from Venezuela by the Gulf of Paria. It is distinguished for its fertility and beautiful scenery, and is covered with valuable forests. On the south-west promontory is a lake of asphalt, or pitch, a mile and a half in diameter, and of unknown depth: near it are a number of remarkable mud volcanoes. The exports are cocoa, sugar, and molasses. *Port of Spain* (32,000), on the west coast, is the capital.

The **Bermudas** (14,000) are a group of small coral islands, nearly 400 in number, of which only five are inhabited. They lie in the Atlantic, about 650 miles east of South Carolina. They are celebrated for their delightful climate, and are the favorite resort of invalids. The chief products are potatoes and arrowroot. *Long Island* is the largest of the group, and contains *Hamilton*, the capital, with 3,000 inhabitants. *Georgetown*, on *St. George's Island*, has a good harbor, is well fortified, and is an important British naval station.

SPANISH ISLANDS.

Area, 49,500 square miles; about the size of New Brunswick and Nova Scotia; population, 2,056,000.

The **Spanish Islands** are Cuba, Isla de Pinos, and Puerto Rico.

Cuba (1,395,000) is the largest and most important of all the West India Islands. It is 760 miles long, and about 60 broad, and is traversed by an extensive chain of mountains from east to west, covered with valuable cabinet woods. The soil is fertile, especially in the valleys in the north, producing sugar, coffee, and the finer tobaccos. It possesses valuable copper mines in the east. Its climate is delightful, and hurricanes rarely occur. A large proportion of the inhabitants are negro slaves.

Havana (230,000) is the capital and largest city, and possesses a magnificent harbor. It carries on a large trade, and is famed for its cigars. It is elegantly built: the cathedral contains the remains of Columbus. The city is connected by railway with *Matanzas* (36,000), a considerable seaport, as is also *Santiago* (35,000). *Puerto Principe* (33,000) is situated in the interior.

Puerto Rico lies to the east of Hayti. It has a beautifully diversified surface, well watered, and fertile. It exports chiefly sugar, coffee, and tobacco. *San Juan* (15,000), on the north coast, is the capital.

Hayti, or *St. Domingo* (about 750,000), lying to the east of Cuba and Jamaica, is the second in size of the West India Islands. For many years it was owned jointly by France and Spain; but in 1791, during the French Revolution, the negroes expelled the French, formed a republic of their own, and were declared independent in 1800. The Spaniards held possession till 1821. Both portions now form the separate independent republics of Hayti and Dominica. The island is fertile, producing sugar, tobacco, cocoa; but commerce has been almost destroyed by the unsettled state of the country. Area, 29,829 square miles.

Port au Prince (27,000) is the capital of **Hayti**, and *Cape Haytien* a large and important town.

St. Domingo (16,000) is the capital of **Dominica**, and is remarkable as having been the first city founded by the Spaniards in America. *Santiago* is a large and important town. *Samana*, on the north-east coast, has one of the finest natural harbors in the world.

The **French Islands** comprise:

Martinique, *Guadaloupe*, *Marie Galante*, *Les Saintes*, *Desirade*, the northern part of *St. Martin*, and *St. Bartholomew*.

St. Pierre (20,000) is the capital, and *Port Royal* the seaport of Martinique. Guadaloupe contains the volcano *La Souffrière*, or Sulphur Mountain. *Basseterre* is the capital, and *Point-à-Pitre* the largest town.

St. Bartholomew lies between Barbuda and St. Martin. It formerly belonged to Sweden, but was ceded to France in 1878. It is a dependency of Guadaloupe.

The **Dutch Islands** comprise:

St. Eustatius, *Saba*, the southern part of *St. Martin*, and *Los Roques*, *Buen Ayre*, *Curaçoa*, and *Oruba*.

St. Eustatius, on the island of the same name, and *Willemstadt*, on Curaçoa, are the principal towns.

The **Danish Islands** comprise:

St. Thomas, *St. John*, and *Santa Cruz*.

St. Thomas, on the island of the same name, is the principal station for the West India mail-steamers.

CARIBBEAN SEA
WEST INDIA ISLANDS
CENTRAL AMERICA
NORTH ATLANTIC OCEAN
PACIFIC OCEAN
SOUTH ATLANTIC OCEAN
VENEZUELA
COLOMBIA
ECUADOR
PERU
BRAZIL
BOLIVIA
PARAGUAY
ARGENTINE REPUBLIC
URUGUAY
BRITISH GUIANA
DUTCH GUIANA
FRENCH GUIANA
Falkland Is.
Tierra del Fuego
Cape Horn
Equator
Tropic of Capricorn
SOUTH AMERICA
English Miles

EXERCISES ON THE LESSON.

What is the area of South America? Extent? Population? What does South America comprise? How may it be divided? Describe the divisions. Describe the Andes. Describe their appearance in the different countries. Name the principal rivers. Trace their courses on the map. Describe the Amazon, La Plata, Orinoco. Describe the coast-line of South America. Name the principal gulfs, bays, straits, &c. Where are they situated? Name the principal islands, and point them out on the map. Where are they situated? Describe the soil, vegetable productions; state of the country. Describe the animals, minerals, and where they are found. What was the condition of Peru when first conquered? Describe the present inhabitants. How is South America divided? What is the area of New Granada? Population? Size? Capital? Where is it situated, and how bounded? What are found on the llanos? What minerals are found? For what is Panama famous? Describe the chief towns. What is the area of Venezuela? Population? Size? Capital? Of what did it formerly compose part? Describe the surface, climate, &c. Describe Lake Maracaybo. Describe the chief towns. What is the area of Ecuador? Population? Size? Capital? From what does it receive its name? Where is it situated, and how bounded? Describe the celebrated volcanoes it contains. What islands belong to Eucador? Describe the chief towns. What is the area of Guiana? Population? Size? Where is it situated, and how bounded? Describe British Guiana. Its chief town. Its inhabitants. Describe Dutch Guiana. Its capital. Describe French Guiana. Its capital. What is the area of Brazil Population? Size? Capital? To whom did it formerly belong? What are its principal rivers? For what is the valley of the Amazon celebrated? Describe the climate, products, minerals, and where they are found. Describe the chief towns. Where are they situated? For what noted? What is the area of Peru? Population? Size? Capital? Where is it situated, and how bounded? Describe the products. Minerals. What islands belong to Peru? For what are they famous? Describe the chief towns. What is the area of Bolivia? Population? Size? Capital? Where is it situated, and how is it bounded? What is the area of Chili? Population? Size? Capital? Where is it situated, and how bounded? How far does it extend? What is its breadth? How many miles high is it? Describe the climate. Soil. Productions. Seasons. Minerals. Trade. Describe the chief towns. Where are they situated? What is the area of La Plata? Population? Size? Capital? Describe the surface. Which is the largest of the pampas? What do the pampas supply? Describe Buenos Ayres. Describe the chief towns. Where are they situated? What is the area of Paraguay? Population? Capital? How was it formerly governed? What is the area of Uruguay? Population? Size? Capital? Describe its capital. Where is it situated? Where is Patagonia situated? What is known of it? Describe Tierra del Fuego. Its inhabitants. Describe Cape Horn. Describe the Falkland Islands. Where are they situated? What is their population?

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.

How is South America joined to North America? What oceans and sea wash the shores of South America? What rivers flow into the Atlantic? Into the Caribbean Sea? Do any rivers flow into the Pacific? What is the cause of this? In what zone is the greater part of South America situated? Which is the largest country? Which is entirely in the interior? What is the southern point of South America called? What strait divides the most southern part of South America from the mainland? What islands lie to the east of the Strait of Magellan? What is the north-eastern point of South America called? What river flows through New Granada? For what is the north-western part of New Granada important? What large river flows through Venezuela? What important island belonging to Britain lies on the north-east of Venezuela? What countries adjoin Venezuela? What large gulf is on the north-west? What countries adjoin Ecuador? Guiana? Brazil? On what ocean is Ecuador situated? Guiana? Brazil? What river separates Ecuador from Peru? What great rivers flow through Brazil? To whom does the largest portion of Guiana belong? How is Rio Janeiro situated? How is Bahia situated? Pernambuco? Quito? In what direction from Rio Janeiro is Bahia? Cayenne? Quito? On what ocean are Peru and Chili situated? How is Peru separated from Bolivia? Chili from La Plata? What countries adjoin Bolivia? What are the principal cities on the Pacific coast? Are Peru, Bolivia, and Chili north or south of the equator? In what direction from Valparaiso is Lima? Chuquisaca? Rio Janeiro? What celebrated island lies to the west of Chili? What valuable islands lie to the west of Peru? What seaport town has Bolivia? Has it any other seaports. In what zone is it? What countries adjoin La Plata? How is it separated from Uruguay? From Brazil? From Paraguay? From Chili? Which country occupies the most southern part of South America? How is Buenos Ayres situated? How is Monte Video situated? In what direction from Buenos Ayres is Rio Janeiro? Valparaiso? Callao? Asuncion? Santiago? What is the southern coast of Chili remarkable for? Which is the largest island? In what direction from the capital is Valparaiso? What States are crossed by the equator? Which are north of the equator? Which are south? Are any of them in the temperate zone? What cities lie near the equator? What States are crossed by the tropic of Capricorn? Which States are in the torrid zone? What island is at the mouth of the Amazon? What cities are on the La Plata River? On the Parana? In what State does the Amazon rise? The Orinoco? The Paraguay?

BOTAFOGO BAY, RIO DE JANEIRO.

SOUTH AMERICA.

Area, 6,850,000 square miles; greatest extent from north to south, 4,600 miles; and from east to west, 3,200 miles; population, 29,350,000; persons to square mile, 4.

South America comprises the southern portion of the American continent from the Isthmus of Panama. It is bounded on the north by the Caribbean Sea; on the west by the Pacific Ocean; on the south by the Antarctic Ocean; and on the east by the Atlantic Ocean.

Like the Northern Continent, South America may be divided into four great regions, besides the narrow strip of land between the Andes and the Pacific, viz.: the north-eastern slope, or valley of the Orinoco; the great central plain, or valley of the Amazon, extending from the Andes on the Pacific coast to the Atlantic Ocean, across the widest part of the continent; the Atlantic slope from the mountains of Brazil eastward; and the south-eastern slope, or valley of La Plata, consisting chiefly of vast pampas or desert plains.

The great chain of the *Andes*, over 4,000 miles in length, extends from the extreme north to the southern point of the continent, parallel with the Pacific coast, from which it is never more than 200 miles distant. The Andes are only exceeded in height by a few peaks of the Himalayas, but even these they surpass in the vast extent and size of their rugged masses. In the north they consist of three parallel chains, soaring to their greatest height when they unite in the high table-lands of Quito, in Ecuador, which are 6,000 feet above the sea. Here they form a mass of active volcanoes from 18,000 to 20,000 feet above the sea, their summits covered with perpetual snow. Amongst these are Chimborazo (20,650); Cotopaxi, the most dreaded volcano; Antisana, and others. They then extend south in two parallel chains, enclosing Lake Titicaca, which is 12,540 feet above the sea, and 125 miles in length, and discharges into a smaller lake, which has no apparent outlet. On the table-lands between Bolivia and Peru they form another group of immense peaks of nearly equal height, comprising Illimani, Sorata, Sahama, Arequipa, and others. From here they extend southwards in one chain, till, from covering an area 400 miles in breadth, they gradually narrow down to 20 in Patagonia. The highest summits in the whole range are Sorata in Bolivia, 21,470 feet, Sahama, also in Bolivia, 22,350 feet, and Aconcagua, near Valparaiso, in Chili, 22,422 feet high, the highest peak in America.

In the north-east are the parallel chains of the Parimé and Acarai Mountains, rising to an elevation of from 7,000 to 10,000 feet. To the east, in Brazil, there are several chains of mountains, generally stretching from north to south, but not of any great height.

In the Andes are the sources of some of the greatest rivers in the world. The *Amazon* rises in Peru, receives on the north bank the *Napo*, *Putumayo*, *Yapura*, and *Negro*—the latter forming a remarkable connection with the Orinoco, by means of the *Cassiquiare River;* and on the south bank, the *Ucayali*, *Purus*, *Madeira*, *Tapajos*, and *Xingu;* and flows into the Atlantic by an estuary 180 miles wide at its mouth, after a course of over 4,000 miles. It is navigable to the mouth of the Ucayali, over 2,000

miles, and up most of its affluents for the greater part of their courses. On the Madeira are remarkable falls. The tide flows into the Amazon as far as 550 miles from its mouth, and at spring tides is headed by a bore, or tidal wave, which frequently swamps any boats on the river.

The *La Plata* is formed by the junction of the *Uruguay* and *Parana Rivers*, rising in the high table-lands of Brazil, the latter receiving from the west the *Salado*, and *Paraguay*, which also has several large tributaries. La Plata is 2,400 miles long, and is navigable for large vessels for 1,300 miles. At Buenos Ayres, 200 miles from its mouth, it is 30 miles wide.

The *Orinoco* rises in the Parimé Mountains, and flows, by a number of mouths, into the Atlantic, a little south of the Island of Trinidad. Its length is about 1,600 miles, and it is navigable for more than half this distance. The Orinoco connects with the Rio Negro and Amazon by the *Cassiquiare River*, forming a complete chain of inland navigation.

The other important rivers are the *Magdalena*, flowing into the Caribbean Sea; the *Essequibo*, *Para* (with its affluent the *Tocantins*), *Paranahyba*, and *San Francisco* in the north, and the *Colorado* and *Negro* in the south, flowing into the Atlantic. The Para may be considered as an arm of the Amazon, separating Marajo Island from the mainland.

West of the Andes there are no rivers of any consequence, the mountains being near to the coast, and the intervening country generally hot and dry.

South America is very compact, the coast-line being almost unbroken. The principal capes are on the east coast—*Gallinas*, *St. Roque*, *Frio*, *St. Antonio*; and *Horn*, at the southern extremity.

The bays, straits, etc., are few in number. The chief are:

The *Gulfs of Darien*, *Maracaybo*, and *Paria*, on the north; *All Saints Bay*, *Gulfs of San Matias* and *St. George*, on the east; the *Strait of Magellan*, between Patagonia and Tierra del Fuego at the south; the *Gulfs of Guayaquil* and *Panama* on the west; besides the estuaries of the rivers Amazon and La Plata.

To the south are the *Falkland Islands*, *Tierra del Fuego*, *Cape Horn*, *Staten Island*, and numerous small groups of islands off the west coast of Patagonia, the principal of which are *Wellington Island* and *Chiloe Island*. To the west of Chili is *Juan Fernandez Island*, and off the coast of Ecuador are the *Galapagos* or *Turtle Islands*.

The climate of South America varies greatly even within the distance of a few miles. At the equator the snow-line is about 16,000 feet above the sea, and from this height to the base of the mountains are to be found in succession the climate and vegetation of all the zones. It is generally hot and unhealthy on the coast; on the east within the tropics it is very moist, but on some parts of the west coast rain seldom falls. No part of the world is so subject to volcanic eruptions and earthquakes as the countries situated near the Andes. Nearly all the principal cities in the western part of the continent have been more or less destroyed by them. An earthquake at one time permanently raised a great part of the coast of Chili from two to seven feet above its former level.

The soil of South America is remarkable for its fertility. Humboldt estimates the vegetable productions of South America at about one-third of all the varieties in the world. Along the banks of the Amazon the country is densely wooded; but the courses of the other large rivers are chiefly through vast grassy plains. Cassava, cocoa, indigo, sugar, cotton, corn, coffee, arrow-root, Peruvian bark and other medicinal plants, and all the tropical fruits and spices, are produced abundantly and with but little labor; but owing to the unsettled political state of the continent, and the want of enterprise in the inhabitants, agriculture is greatly neglected, and the vast resources of the country are still undeveloped.

The animals peculiar to South America are the llama and the alpaca; the first a species of small camel, but without a hump; the other resembling a sheep or goat, and yielding fine wool. The condor of the Andes, the sloth, tapir, armadillo, are also to be found; while monkeys, serpents, birds of brilliant plumage, and a great variety of insects abound, especially in the forests of Guiana.

South America is also rich in the most valuable minerals; gold, diamonds, and precious stones are extensively found, together with iron and other metals in Brazil and other parts; silver is largely met with in Peru and Bolivia.

The Portuguese formerly possessed Brazil, and the Spaniards the rest of the continent, except Patagonia, which is little known and little valued; but all the States are now independent.

When Peru was first conquered by the Spaniards, the inhabitants were to a great extent civilized, had a regular form of government, and built fine cities, temples, and monuments; but most of the other inhabitants of the continent were ignorant and barbarous. The present population, besides the Spanish and Portuguese colonists and their descendants, consists of Indians, and mixed races of whites, Indians, and negroes. The whites probably number less than one-third of the whole.

South America is divided into nine republics, one limited monarchy (Brazil), and one European possession (Guiana).

The Countries are:

United States of Colombia.	Bolivia.
Venezuela.	Chili.
Ecuador.	Argentine Republic.
Guiana.	Paraguay.
Brazil.	Uruguay.
Peru.	

UNITED STATES OF COLOMBIA.

Area, 320,735 square miles, one-half larger than Ontario; population, 3,000,000; persons to square mile, 9¾.

The **United States of Colombia** occupy the north-west part of the continent, and join Central America by the Isthmus of Panama or Darien, which is from 30 to 50 miles wide. Together with the adjoining States of Venezuela and Ecuador, it formed the republic of Colombia, after the Spanish Colonies had gained their independence; but Venezuela seceded in 1829, and Ecuador in 1831; each State now forms an independent republic.

The Andes traverse the western part of the country in three chains, but in the south and east it is a level tract, forming part of the llanos, or vast grassy plains annually inundated by the Orinoco. The *Magdalena River* flows northward, between the parallel chains of the Andes, into the Caribbean Sea, after a course of about 860 miles.

The climate in the lower parts of the country is hot, damp, and unhealthy; most of the cities, however, are built on the high table-lands of the Andes. The forests on the mountain slopes contain mahogany, caoutchouc, and other valuable trees. The soil is fertile; and cotton, sugar, indigo, coffee, cocoa, and other tropical products grow in great abundance; but agriculture and commerce are at a low ebb. On the llanos vast herds of cattle roam; and hides and tallow form important articles of export. Gold, platinum, and precious stones are also found in the mountains.

The Isthmus of Panama, belonging to the United States of Colombia, is now traversed by a railway from Aspinwall, on the Caribbean Sea, to Panama, on the Pacific, affording great facilities for the commerce of the Eastern States with California and the Pacific. All religions are tolerated.

Bogota (50,000), the capital, is a well-built city, situated on a level plain, nearly 9,000 feet above the sea. Coal is found in the vicinity. Near the city the Bogota River falls over a perpendicular precipice 600 feet high. *Cartagena* is the principal seaport.

VENEZUELA.

Area, 440,000 square miles; twice the size of the Province of Quebec; population, 2,675,000; persons to a square mile, 6½.

Venezuela lies to the east of Colombia, on the Caribbean Sea, and south of the Lesser Antilles. It formed one of the States of the republic of Colombia, which was dissolved in 1831, and is now an independent republic.

The Parimé Mountains separate it from Brazil; and one of the chains of the Andes is continued from Colombia in a north-easterly direction along the coast. It is watered by the Orinoco, which flows through extensive llanos, or level grassy plains, supporting vast herds of cattle. The climate, soil, products, and religion are the same as those of Colombia.

Lake Maracaybo is situated in the north-west, and on its shores is an inexhaustible mine of asphalt, or pitch.

Caracas (50,000) is the capital. It was nearly destroyed by an earthquake in 1812, when 12,000 persons lost their lives. *Valencia* (30,000) is the next largest town. *Maracaybo* and *Cumana*, the chief seaports, are very unhealthy.

ECUADOR.

Area, 230,000 square miles; nine times the size of New Brunswick; population, 1,150,000; persons to a square mile, 4¾.

Ecuador is situated to the south of Colombia, and is directly under the equator, as its name implies. It also formed one of the States of the republic of Colombia.

In the west it is traversed by the Andes, which have here some of their highest summits and most remarkable volcanoes. Cotopaxi is the most active volcano in the world, and rises to the height of 19,500 feet, in the form of a perfect cone. The flames from its crater sometimes rise 3,000 feet above its summit, with a terrific roaring noise. Chimborazo is also a conical peak, upwards of 20,000 feet high. Pichincha, on the slope of which the city of Quito is built, and Antisana, are also formidable volcanoes. In the east, Ecuador includes part of the level wooded valley of the Amazon. The climate, soil, and productions resemble those of Colombia. The *Galapagos*, or Turtle Islands, in the Pacific Ocean, 650 miles to the west, belong to Ecuador.

Quito (80,000), the capital, is 9,500 feet above the level of the sea, and is built in a valley on the east side of the volcano Pichincha. It possesses a most delightful climate, but, like most of the towns in the republic, has suffered much from earthquakes. *Cuença* (20,000) is the seat of a university, and, with *Loxa*, exports Peruvian bark. *Guayaquil* (26,000) is the principal seaport.

GUIANA.

Area, 178,000 square miles; nearly as large as Ontario; population, 347,000; persons to a square mile, 2.

Guiana is situated on the Atlantic, between Venezuela and Brazil. It is the only part of the continent possessed by European nations. It is divided into—

	Chief Towns.
British Guiana,	Georgetown.
Dutch Guiana, or Surinam,	Paramaribo.
French Guiana,	Cayenne.

The Acarai Mountains separate it from Brazil. From being low and marshy on the coast, the land gradually rises towards the interior, and becomes more mountainous. The climate is the mildest of any country situated in the tropics, owing to the trade winds, and prevailing land and sea breezes. The soil is remarkably fruitful,

producing sugar, coffee, rice, and various medicinal plants. Cayenne pepper and other tropical spices are to be found in the greatest abundance. Vegetation is most luxuriant, and the forests swarm with monkeys, birds of brilliant plumage, insects, etc.

British Guiana, the largest of the three divisions, was conquered from the Dutch in 1803. It is divided into three districts — Berbice, Demerara, and Essequibo. *Georgetown* (47,175), the capital, is situated at the mouth of the Demerara River. Most of the inhabitants of the colony are negroes.

Dutch Guiana is the central portion of the country, and is sometimes called Surinam. *Paramaribo*, the capital, is situated on the Surinam River.

French Guiana is used as a penal settlement. *Cayenne*, the capital, is situated on an island of the same name, and gives to commerce the spice of red pepper, or capsicum, grown in Guiana, and known as Cayenne pepper.

BRAZIL.

Area, 3,220,000 square miles; about the same size as the Dominion of Canada; population, 11,100,000; persons to a square mile, 4.

The **Empire of Brazil** is bounded on the north by Guiana and Venezuela; on the west by Colombia, Ecuador, and Peru; on the west and south by Bolivia, Paraguay, La Plata, and Uruguay; and on the east by the Atlantic.

This immense country formerly belonged to Portugal, but was acknowledged independent in 1825, and now constitutes an hereditary monarchy, under a branch of the royal family of Portugal.

It is intersected by a number of mountain chains, generally extending from north to south, and by high table-lands, stretching westward, and dividing the tributaries of the *Amazon* from those of the *Paraguay*. The *Amazon* forms the great feature of the northern part of the empire, and most of its large tributaries flow through Brazil. There are, besides these, the *Para*, *Paranahyba*, and *San Francisco Rivers*; so that no country in the world possesses within the same limits so many or so extensive navigable rivers. The valley of the Amazon is celebrated for its valuable forests of mahogany, logwood, and Brazil wood. From the south-west portion of the central table-lands, the vast pampas, or level plains covered with grass and sma.. .rubs, commence, and extend as far south as Patagonia.

The climate of Brazil is of the most delightful character, especially in the south and east, where it is almost perpetual summer. In the valley of the Amazon it is hotter and more moist, rain falling almost every day for some months each year; but on the table-lands it is cooler and more healthy. Sugar, rice, coffee, and tobacco grow extensively in the north, and grain and fruits in the southern and more elevated parts. Vast herds of cattle are raised, and hides and tallow are largely exported; but agriculture and commerce are greatly neglected. Most of the animals of South America are found in Brazil, together with a varied and prolific vegetation. About three-fourths of the population consist of Indians and negroes.

The Roman Catholic is the prevailing religion.

Rio Janeiro (275,000), the capital, is situated on a magnificent bay, and is the largest city in South America. It contains many fine buildings, and is the chief centre of commerce in the country. *Bahia* or *San Salvador* (130,000), the former capital, is situated on the Bay of All Saints, and exports large quantities of sugar. *Pernambuco*, *Maranhao*, and *Para*, situated on the coast, are also important commercial towns. The inland towns are small and unimportant.

PERU.

Area, 433,000 square miles; twice the size of Ontario; population, 3,050,000; persons to a square mile, 7.

Peru is situated on the Pacific, to the south of Ecuador, and west of Brazil and Bolivia. It was conquered by the Spaniards under Pizarro in 1532, and remained in their possession till 1824, when it became an independent republic.

It is traversed by the double chain of the Andes, between which are high table-lands about 8,000 feet above the sea, where are situated most of the large towns. The climate is there cool and delightful, and the soil rich and fertile, yielding all the ordinary grains. The products resemble those of Brazil; and Peruvian bark, guano, and various dyewoods are largely exported. In the eastern range of the Andes are the valuable gold and silver mines for which Peru has long been famous. The tract between the Andes and the Pacific is chiefly a hot sandy desert. To the east the country forms part of the vast forest plain or valley of the Amazon. About fifteen miles from the coast are the Chincha Islands—three in number—famed for their extensive deposits of guano, which is largely exported. Nearly everything has to be carried into or out of the interior of the country on the backs of mules or llamas. The Andes are celebrated for their rugged and dangerous, but picturesque scenery. Travelling is very difficult, men and mules sometimes requiring to be taken across a torrent, slung to a single rope. Earthquakes are frequent, and some of the largest volcanoes of the Andes rise on the borders of Peru and Bolivia. The only religion tolerated is that of Roman Catholicism.

Lima (100,000), the capital, is situated in the midst of a fertile plain, and is connected by railway with *Callao*, its seaport. *Cuzco*, the ancient capital of the Incas of

Peru, is situated in the interior, and still contains the remains of the magnificent Temple of the Sun, and other monuments attesting the ancient civilization of the inhabitants. *Arequipa* and *Pasco* are the next most important towns.

BOLIVIA.

Area, 500,000 square miles; more than twice the size of Quebec; population, 2,325,000; persons to a square mile, 4.

Bolivia, up to the year 1825, formed part of Peru, and now takes its name from Bolivar, the leader who was chiefly instrumental in gaining its independence.

It is situated almost entirely in the interior, between Peru and Brazil, to the north of La Plata, possessing only a small portion of coast-line with one small seaport, Cobija.

On the borders of Bolivia and Peru the double chain of the Andes encloses *Lake Titicaca*, the sacred lake of the ancient Peruvians. Between the Andes and the Pacific is a sandy desert, but to the east of the Andes the country consists of a vast forest plain, watered by the tributaries of the Amazon and Paraguay. The products are the same as those of Brazil and Peru. The wool of the alpaca is also largely exported. Silver was once found in great quantities, but latterly the mines have not been so productive. Roman Catholicism is the prevailing religion.

La Paz (26,000) is the capital. *Potosi* (23,000) is 13,000 feet above the sea, and contains the famous silver mines. A century ago it contained 150,000 inhabitants. *Cochabamba* (40,000) is a town of some importance.

CHILI.

Area, 217,000 square miles; about the same size as Quebec; population, 2,420,000; persons to a square mile, 11.

Chili consists of a long, narrow strip of land between the Andes and the Pacific Ocean, and extending from Bolivia southwards for 2,200 miles. It is about 150 miles in width at the broadest part. It includes Patagonia west of the Andes, and the westerly part of Tierra del Fuego. *Chiloe Island*, a large, well-wooded island, and *Juan Fernandez*, or Robinson Crusoe's Island, belong to Chili.

The surface is mountainous or hilly from the Andes to the coast. The Andes here form only one chain, and rise in the peak of Aconcagua to the height of 22,422 feet. Between the mountains are beautiful and fertile valleys. In the north is the desert of Atacama.

The climate in the northern and middle regions is hot and dry, but becomes cooler towards the south. Earthquakes are frequent, and often very destructive. The soil is most productive. Potatoes, wheat, and maize are extensively cultivated, besides olives, figs, and vines. Chili is supposed to be the native country of the potato. Gold, silver, and copper are found to a great extent near Copiapo, in the north. Chili is the most progressive of the States of South America, and exports largely guano, copper, and saltpetre. Its trade is chiefly with Great Britain.

In 1881 Chili declared war against Peru and Bolivia, and after some sanguinary contests was completely victorious.

Santiago (150,000), the capital, is situated in a pretty and fertile district, about 60 miles from the coast. *Valparaiso* (100,000), the port of Santiago, is the principal commercial city, and carries on a large trade. *Concepcion* and *Copiapo* are the next towns of importance.

ARGENTINE REPUBLIC.

Area, 1,100,000 square miles; more than twice the size of all the eastern provinces of the Dominion; population, 2,540,000; persons to square mile, 2.

The **Argentine Republic** occupies the central country between the Andes and the rivers Paraguay and Uruguay, and extends from Bolivia to Cape Horn. It comprises 14 Provinces, which obtained their independence between 1811 and 1816, and four Territories, including Patagonia.

The surface consists chiefly of flat level plains, called pampas, covered with coarse grass or sand. The largest is in the north-east, called the desert of *El Gran Chaço*, and from it others extend west to the Andes, and south as far as Patagonia. In the south-west are numerous swamps and salt lakes. On these pampas vast herds of cattle and wild horses roam, and form the chief wealth of the country. Hides, tallow, and bones are largely exported. The rivers of La Plata are large and important, including the *Uruguay* and the *Parana* (with its tributaries, the *Paraguay*, *Pilcomayo*, *Vermejo*, and *Salado*), flowing into the estuary called the Rio de la Plata; and the *Colorado* and *Negro* further south. The climate is hot, and violent hurricanes, called pamperos, occur on the pampas. The soil in the middle region is fertile, producing wheat, cotton, sugar, and rice, but agriculture is little attended to. Indians or mixed races form the greater part of the inhabitants. The prevailing religion is the Roman Catholic.

Buenos Ayres, the most important State of the Confederation, extends from the estuary of La Plata to the Negro River, which separates it from Patagonia. It severed its connection with the Argentine Confederation in 1853, but joined it again in 1861. Grain is now cultivated to a limited extent.

Buenos Ayres (195,000), the capital, and largest city

in the Confederation, is situated near the head of the estuary of the La Plata, the navigation of which is rendered dangerous by numerous shoals, and by the pamperos, or hurricanes from the pampas. It is an important commercial seaport, and its trade is rapidly increasing. Its chief exports are hides, tallow, wool, and skins.

Parana (8,000), the former capital, is situated on the river Parana, 240 miles north-west of Buenos Ayres. *Corrientes* (20,000), *Cordova* (30,000), *Mendoza*, and *San Juan* are the principal towns. The pass of Mendoza is upon the great commercial road across the Andes, between Valparaiso and Buenos Ayres.

PARAGUAY.

Area, 92,000 square miles; three times the size of New Brunswick; population, 300,000; persons to square mile, 3.

Paraguay lies wholly in the interior, between the Paraguay and Parana Rivers. It resembles La Plata in its physical features, climate, and products; but in the north it is more mountainous, where a species of holly is grown, about one and a half feet high, called Maté or Paraguay tea, which is largely used as a beverage in South America.

Paraguay gained its independence from Spain in 1811, and up to the year 1840 was ruled by a native creole, Dr. Francia, who strictly excluded all foreigners. After his death this restriction was removed. The late Dictator, Lopez, indulged in many cruelties both to natives and foreigners. Brazil and the Argentine Republic at last joined in declaring war against him, which continued till his death, in 1870, after a heroic struggle, worthy of a better cause.

Asuncion (15,000), the capital, is situated near the junction of the Pilcomayo and Paraguay Rivers.

URUGUAY.

Area, 72,000 square miles; about one-third the size of the Province of Quebec; population, 438,000; persons to a square mile, 6.

Uruguay, or Banda Oriental as it was called, lies between the Uruguay River and the Atlantic Ocean, and between Brazil and the estuary of La Plata.

It formerly belonged to Buenos Ayres, with which it was long engaged in hostilities, until it gained its independence in 1828.

In physical features, climate, and products it resembles La Plata. Its exports are chiefly hides and tallow to Great Britain, and dried beef to the West Indies. Within the last thirty years it has largely increased in population, and greatly improved its fortunes.

Monte Video (91,000), the capital, possesses the best harbor on the estuary of the La Plata, and carries on the chief trade of the country.

PATAGONIA.

Patagonia was until lately left in the undisturbed possession of the savage natives, but now belongs to the Argentine Republic and Chili; the portion east of the Andes to the former country, and the portion west of the Andes to Chili. It consists chiefly of level pampas, which are cold and barren; and is thinly inhabited by a tall, well-formed race of Indians, who subsist on the flesh of wild animals, and live much on horseback. The pampas abound with wild cattle and horses.

Tierra del Fuego is a cluster of islands separated from Patagonia by the Strait of Magellan. The natives go naked, and are described as the most wretched race of ugly, deformed, and stunted savages in the world. They subsist chiefly on fish. The islands are generally thickly wooded. *Cape Horn*, or Hermit Island, is a huge dark rock, covered with trees, rising about 600 feet high. It is the most southerly point of South America, and is 1,470 miles further south than any part of Africa. It is in about the same latitude south of the equator as the southern part of Hudson Bay is north of it.

THE FALKLAND ISLANDS AND SOUTH GEORGIA.

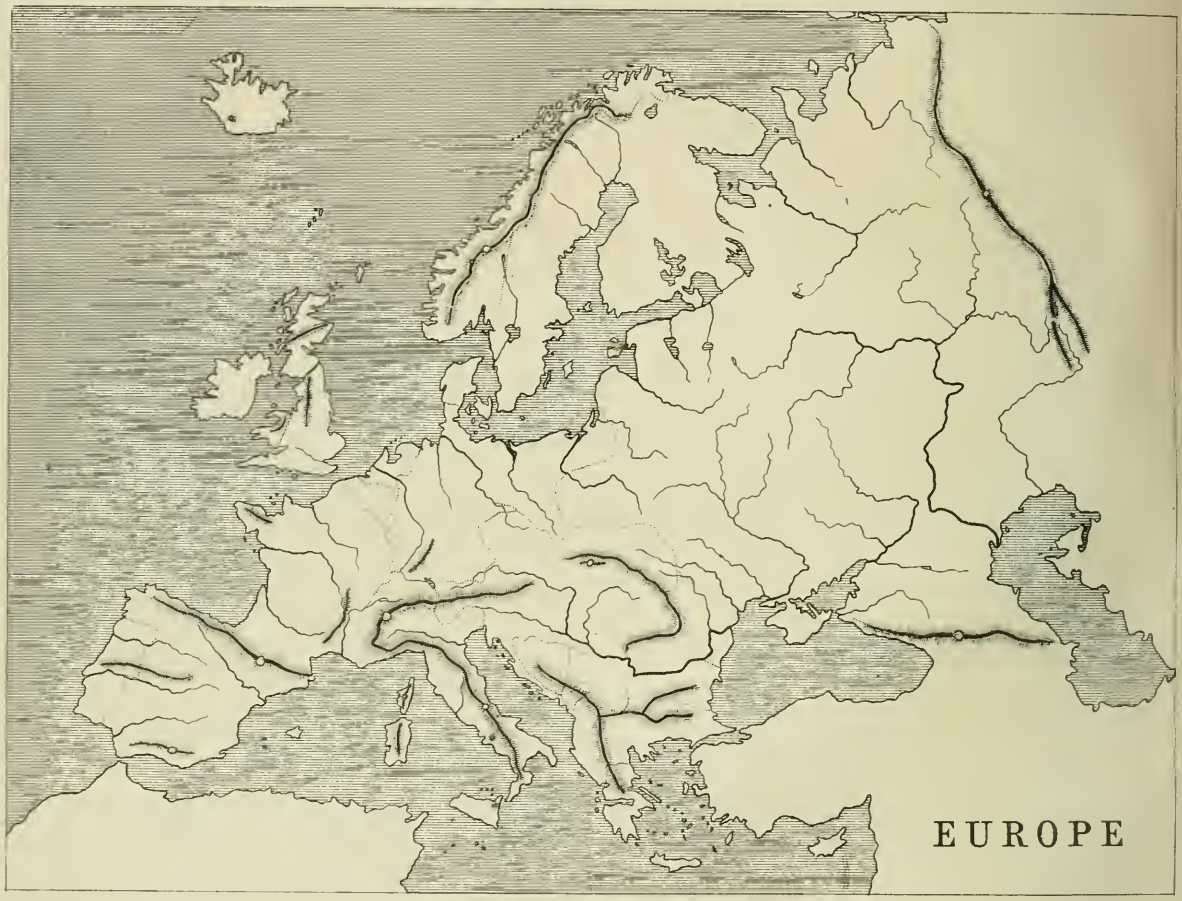
The **Falkland Islands**, about 300 miles east of Patagonia, belong to Britain, and consist of 2 large, and about 200 small islands, with an area of about 5,000 square miles. They are destitute of trees, but nearly covered with peat bogs. Large herds of cattle and horses roam wild. They contain many fine harbors, and are valuable as places of refuge for shipping frequenting the southern seas. They were erected into a colony in 1833, and contain about 1,540 inhabitants. *Stanley* (300) is the capital.

South Georgia is an uninhabited island, lying about 800 miles south-easterly from the Falklands, of which colony it forms a part. Area, 1,570 square miles.

J. Bartholomew, Edin.

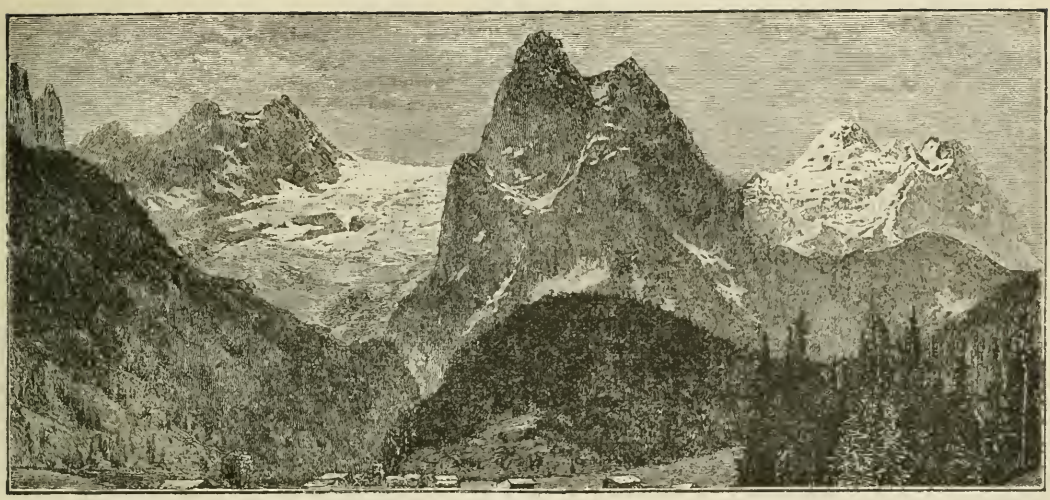
EXERCISES ON THE LESSON.

What is the size of Europe? Population? How is it bounded? For what is Europe remarkable? How is its surface divided? Describe the divisions. What is said of the mountains? Name the principal mountain ranges. Where are they situated? Name the principal rivers. Describe their courses. Which is the largest? Name the principal lakes. Where are they situated? Describe the coast-line of Europe. Name the principal islands. Name the principal peninsulas. Name the principal isthmuses. Name the principal seas and gulfs. What countries do they wash? Name the principal straits and channels. Between what countries are they situated? Name the principal capes. Where are they situated? Describe the climate of Europe. What influences act upon it? Describe the soil. Products. Minerals. Animals, &c. What is said of the commerce of Europe? To what races do the inhabitants belong? Name the countries of Europe. Which are the principal? What is the area of Russia in Europe? Population? Size? Capital? How is Russia bounded? What is said of the Russian Empire? How is Russia in Europe divided? Describe the principal mountains. Describe the rivers of Russia. Describe the lakes of Russia. Where are they situated? Describe the sea-coast. Its principal features. State where they are situated. Name the principal islands. What peninsula is in the south? Describe the climate. The soil and products. The minerals. The government. The state of the people. Describe the principal cities. Describe Circassia and its people. Where is Poland situated? What was its former state? What was its former extent and population? The chief city in Russian Poland. Of what historic interest is it?



EXERCISES ON THE MAP.

What large sea is there to the south of Europe? How is it connected with the Atlantic? With what seas is it connected on the east? How is Europe separated from Asia? Which European islands are situated in the Atlantic? Which in the Mediterranean? What countries border on the Atlantic? On the North Sea? On the Baltic? What mountains separate Europe from Asia? What countries adjoin Poland? On what river is Warsaw situated? Where does it empty? Through what countries does it flow? How is Russia separated from Asia? What five seas wash the shores of Russia? What countries adjoin Russia on the south-west? What large rivers flow into the Black Sea? The Caspian? What are the principal cities on the Baltic? On the Black Sea? On the Volga? How is St Petersburg situated? Moscow? Sebastopol? Archangel? In what direction from St Petersburg is Moscow? Nijni Novgorod? Archangel Odessa? Vienna? Warsaw? Helsingfors? Riga? London? What countries border on the Mediterranean Sea? What countries adjoin Asia What countries are in the interior? Which is the largest? What is the most southern point of Europe called? The south-west point? The most northern point? What large rivers flow into the Black Sea? The Mediterranean? The North Sea? The Baltic? In what direction is Iceland from Norway?



THE ALPS.

EUROPE.

Area, 3,757,000 square miles, comprising about one-fourteenth part of the land surface of the globe; greatest extent from north to south, 2,400 miles; and from north-east to south-west, 3,400 miles; population about 328,000,000.

Europe is bounded on the north by the Arctic Ocean; on the west by the Atlantic Ocean; on the south by the Mediterranean Sea, the Sea of Marmora, the Black Sea, and Mount Caucasus; and on the east by the Caspian Sea, the Ural River, and Ural Mountains, which separate it from Asia.

Although the smallest of the great divisions of the earth in extent, it is second in population, and by far the most important in power and influence, as well as the most advanced in learning, arts, and manufactures.

The surface of Europe is divided by mountain ranges into a north-west and south-east slope, as all the great rivers on the continent flow in these directions. The north and east, with the exception of Norway and Sweden, consists of a vast plain, with occasional small elevations, and comprises about two-thirds of the whole surface, extending from Holland to the Ural Mountains, and including all Russia; in the south and west it is mountainous or hilly.

Unlike the mountain ranges of the New World, those of Europe occur in smaller and more detached chains. The principal are:

The *Dovrefield* mountains, in the Scandinavian peninsula; the *Grampians*, in Scotland; the *Pennine Range*, in England, and *Cambrian Range*, in Wales; the *Alps*, in Switzerland and the adjacent countries; the minor ranges of the *Jura*, and the *Cevennes* mountains in France; the *Pyrenees*, between France and Spain; and the parallel ranges of the *Castile*, *Morena*, and *Sierra Nevada* mountains, in Spain; the *Apennines*, in Italy, with the volcanoes, Vesuvius near Naples, and Etna in Sicily; the *Balkan*, in Turkey; the *Carpathian*, in Austria, with the smaller ranges of the *Black Forest*, *Harz*, *Erz*, and *Sudetic Chains*, in Germany; the *Caucasus*, between the Black and the Caspian Seas; and the *Ural Mountains*, between Europe and Asia.

The Principal Rivers of Europe are:

Those flowing north-west or west—the *Petchora*, *Dvina*, *Vistula*, *Oder*, *Elbe*, *Rhine*, *Seine*, *Loire*, *Garonne*, *Douro*, *Tagus*, and *Guadiana;* those flowing south and east—the *Ebro*, *Rhone*, *Po*, *Danube*, *Dnieper*, *Don*, and *Volga*, and the *Thames* in England.

The **Volga** is the largest river of Europe, rising in the Valdai hills, in the north-west of Russia, and flowing into the Caspian Sea, after a course of about 2,200 miles.

The Lakes in Europe are generally small, but celebrated for their beautiful scenery. The principal are:

Wener and *Wetter*, in Sweden; *Ladoga*, *Onega*, and *Saima*, in Russia; *Geneva* and *Constance*, in Switzerland; *Maggiore* and *Como*, in Italy; *Derwentwater* and *Windermere*, in England; *Lomond* and *Katrine*, in Scotland; and *Neagh* and *Killarney*, in Ireland.

Europe is remarkable for the irregularity of its outline or coast, having numerous islands, peninsulas, seas, bays, and gulfs, giving it about 18,000 miles of coast-line—a very much greater length, in proportion to its size, than is possessed by any of the other great divisions of the globe. Almost every country in Europe has some sea-coast, and nowhere, except in the east of Russia, is there any place more than 400 miles distant from the sea.

The Principal Islands are:

In the Arctic Ocean, *Nova Zembla* and *Spitzbergen*.
In the Baltic, *Zealand*, *Funen*, *Gottland*, etc.
In the Atlantic, *Iceland*, *Great Britain*, *Ireland*, the *Orkney*, *Shetland*, and *Hebrides Islands*, and the *Azores*.
In the Mediterranean, *Majorca*, *Minorca*, *Ivica*, *Sardinia*, *Corsica*, *Sicily*, *Malta*, *Ionian Isles*, *Crete*, and *Eubœa* or *Negropont*; and the *Cyclades*, in the Grecian Archipelago.

The Principal Peninsulas are:

In the north, *Scandinavia* (Norway and Sweden), and *Jutland*, in Denmark.
In the south, the *Iberian* (Spain and Portugal), *Italy*, the *Morea*, in Greece, and the *Crimea*, in the south of Russia.

The Principal Isthmuses are:

Corinth, joining the Morea to the mainland of Greece; and *Perekop*, joining the Crimea to Russia.

The Principal Seas and Gulfs are:

In the north, the *White Sea*, the *Baltic Sea* with the *Gulfs of Bothnia*, *Finland*, and *Riga*, the *Cattegat* and *Skager Rack*; and the *North Sea* or German Ocean.
In the west, the *Irish Sea* and *Bay of Biscay*.
In the south, the *Mediterranean Sea*, the *Gulfs of Lyons*, *Genoa*, and *Taranto*, the *Adriatic Sea*, with the *Gulf of Venice*, *Sea of Marmora*, *Black Sea*, *and Sea of Azov*.

The Principal Straits and Channels are:

In the north, the *Sound*, *Great Belt*, and *Little Belt*.
In the west, the *Strait of Dover* and *English Channel*, *St. George's*, and *North Channels*.
In the south, the *Straits of Gibraltar*, *Bonifacio*, between Corsica and Sardinia, *Messina*, *Dardanelles*, the *Bosphorus* or Strait of Constantinople, and *Kertch* or *Yenikale*.

The Principal Capes are:

In the north, *North Cape*, *Naze*, and *Skaw*.
In the west, *Duncansby Head*, *Wrath*, *Clear*, *Land's End*, *La Hogue*, *Ortegal*, *Finisterre*, and *St. Vincent*.
In the south, *Tarifa*, *Passaro*, *Spartivento*, and *Matapan*.

The **climate** of Europe is warmer than that of the other great divisions of the globe in the same latitude, and not subject to the same extremes of heat and cold, owing mainly to the influence of the Gulf Stream, and to the greater part of it being so near the sea. In the west it is more moist than in the east; and although cold in the north, it is in general mild and salubrious, and in the south warm and delightful. The soil, especially in the south, is fertile; and is everywhere, except in portions of Russia, most industriously cultivated. Wheat is grown as far north as the middle of Norway, and barley much farther north; in the middle latitudes all kinds of grain grow in abundance; and in the south the vine, olive, orange, fig, and other southern fruits flourish. Europe also contains great quantities of valuable minerals—iron, lead, copper, tin, coal, and salt being found in almost every part.

Very few wild animals are found in Europe, the principal being the bear, wolf, and wild boar; but useful animals, such as the horse, ox, etc., are very numerous. It has a great variety of birds of song; in the north, aquatic birds abound; and in the mountain regions, eagles and other birds of prey are found. The seas abound with valuable fish, including the whale, cod, herring, and salmon, and in the Mediterranean the anchovy and other small but delicate fish.

The **commerce** of Europe is greater than that of any of the other divisions of the globe, although it is the smallest in area. This is owing in a great measure to its vast extent of coast-line, its large population, and its valuable mineral resources, but chiefly to the energy and advanced civilization of the people.

The **inhabitants** of Europe are of the Caucasian race, forming four branches—the Celtic in the west, the Teutonic, including the Scandinavian, German, and Anglo-Saxon, in the middle and north, the Græco-Latin in the south, and the Sclavonic in the east. The Christian is the prevailing religion, under the three forms of the Protestant, Roman Catholic, and Greek Churches; except in Turkey, where the principal religion is the Mahommedan.

The Countries of Europe are:

Great Britain and Ireland.
Norway and Sweden.
Russia.
Denmark.
Holland.
Belgium.
France.
Spain.
Portugal.
Germany.
Austro-Hungary.
Italy.
Switzerland.
Turkey in Europe.
Roumania.
Servia.
Greece.

Great Britain, France, Russia, Germany, and Austria are considered the five great Powers of Europe; and the kingdom of Italy, although formed only in 1859, is gradually gaining a position scarcely secondary to them.

BRITISH EMPIRE.

The **British Empire** is composed of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland, and of numerous colonies and possessions in every quarter of the globe. The British Islands consist of Great Britain, including England, Wales, and Scotland; Ireland lying to the west of Great Britain; and a number of small islands adjoining them.

The British Colonies and Possessions are:

In Europe.

Heligoland, a small island near the mouth of the Elbe.
Gibraltar, an important fortress at the southern extremity of Spain, commanding the entrance to the Mediterranean.
Malta, with the small islands of Gozo and Cumino in the Mediterranean.

In North America.

The Dominion of Canada.
Newfoundland.
Bermudas.
British Honduras, in Central America.
The West India Islands, including the Bahamas, Jamaica, Leeward Islands, Windward Islands, and Trinidad.

In South America.

British Guiana.
The Falkland Islands and South Georgia.

ENGLAND & WALES
English Miles
0 20 40 60 80 100
SCOTLAND
NORTHUMBERLAND
CUMBERLAND
WESTMORLAND
DURHAM
LANCASHIRE
YORK
SHIRE
CHESHIRE
DERBY
NOTTINGHAM
LINCOLN
SHIRE
NORFOLK
SUFFOLK
CAMBRIDGE
ESSEX
HERTFORD
MIDDLESEX
LONDON
KENT
SURREY
SUSSEX
HAMPSHIRE
BERKSHIRE
WILTSHIRE
SOMERSET
DORSET
DEVON
CORNWALL
BUCKINGHAM
OXFORD
GLOUCESTER
WARWICK
LEICESTER
RUTLAND
NORTHAMPT
BEDFORD
HUNTINGDON
STAFFORD
SHROPSHIRE
WORCESTER
HEREFORD
MONMOUTH
MONTGOMERY
RADNOR
BRECKNOCK
CARDIGAN
CARMARTHEN
PEMBROKE
GLAMORGAN
CARNARVON
DENBIGH
FLINT
MERIONETH
ANGLESEY
Isle of Wight
IRISH SEA
ENGLISH CHANNEL
NORTH SEA
St George's Channel
Bristol Channel
Cardigan Bay
The Wash
Solway Firth
Firth of Clyde
North Channel
Irish Sea
Portland Bill
The Lizard
Beachy Head
Dungeness
Flamborough Hd
Spurn Head
Start Pt
Eddystone Lts
Land's End
Pembroke
Milford Haven
Swansea B.
Carmarthen Bay
Barnstaple or Bideford Bay
Hartland Pt
Padstow B.
Mounts B.
Falmouth Bay
Plymouth Sound
Torbay
Portland I.
Weymouth B.
Lyme B.
Start B.
Dartmouth
Plymouth
Torquay
Exmouth
Teignmouth
Tavistock
Launceston
Bodmin
Truro
St Ives
Penzance
Falmouth
Redruth
Helston
Newquay
Padstow
Ilfracombe
Lundy I
Minehead
Watchet
Weston
Bridgwater
Taunton
Wellington
Tiverton
Honiton
Exeter
Axminster
Bridport
Poole
Dorchester
Weymouth
Lyme Regis
Sidmouth
Budleigh Salterton
Exmouth
Torbay
Dartmouth
Start B.
Portland Bill
St Catherine's Pt
Isle of Wight
Needles
Hurst Castle
Christchurch
Bournemouth
Poole
Swanage
Durlston Head
Beachy Head
Eastbourne
Pevensey Bay
Hastings
Rye
Dungeness
Romney
Hythe
Folkestone
Dover
Deal
Ramsgate
Margate
North Foreland
Thanet
Goodwin Sands
Sheerness
Chatham
Rochester
Gravesend
Tilbury
Mouth of the Thames
Southend
Harwich
Walton on the Naze
Colchester
Maldon
Chelmsford
Brentwood
Epping
Waltham Abbey
Hertford
Ware
Stevenage
Hitchin
Baldock
Royston
Buntingford
Bishop's Stortford
Saffron Walden
Newmarket
Ely
Wisbech
Peterborough
Stamford
Grantham
Boston
Spalding
Holbeach
Kings Lynn
Wells
Cromer
Norwich
Yarmouth
Lowestoft
Aldeburgh
Orfordness
Ipswich
Sudbury
Bury St Edmunds
Thetford
Downham
Swaffham
Dereham
Fakenham
Wells
Holkham
Blakeney
Sheringham
Cromer
Mundesley
Yarmouth
Lowestoft
Southwold
Dunwich
Aldeburgh
Orfordness
Harwich
Walton on the Naze
Clacton
Southend
Sheerness
Whitstable
Herne Bay
Margate
North Foreland
Ramsgate
Deal
Goodwin Sands
Dover
Folkestone
Hythe
Romney
Dungeness
Rye
Winchelsea
Hastings
St Leonards
Bexhill
Eastbourne
Beachy Head
Seaford
Newhaven
Brighton
Shoreham
Worthing
Littlehampton
Bognor
Chichester
Selsey Bill
Portsmouth
Gosport
Fareham
Southampton
Netley
Calshot
Lymington
Christchurch
Bournemouth
Poole
Swanage
Durlston Head
Isle of Wight
Newport
Cowes
Ryde
Sandown
Shanklin
Ventnor
St Catherine's Pt
Freshwater
Yarmouth
Needles
Hurst Castle
Milford
Lymington
Southampton
Winchester
Basingstoke
Andover
Newbury
Reading
Windsor
Slough
Uxbridge
Staines
Kingston
Richmond
Hampton Court
Chertsey
Weybridge
Guildford
Godalming
Farnham
Aldershot
Alton
Petersfield
Midhurst
Arundel
Worthing
Littlehampton
Bognor
Chichester
Selsey Bill
Portsmouth
Gosport
Fareham
Southampton
Salisbury
Wilton
Amesbury
Stonehenge
Devizes
Marlborough
Swindon
Cirencester
Tetbury
Malmesbury
Chippenham
Calne
Devizes
Trowbridge
Frome
Bath
Bristol
Clevedon
Weston
Burnham
Highbridge
Bridgwater
Taunton
Wellington
Tiverton
Barnstaple
Ilfracombe
Lundy I
Minehead
Watchet
Dunster
Porlock
Lynton
Barnstaple or Bideford Bay
Hartland Pt
Bideford
Torrington
Holsworthy
Launceston
Bodmin
Truro
St Ives
Penzance
Falmouth
Redruth
Helston
Newquay
Padstow
Wadebridge
Camelford
Boscastle
Tintagel
Bude
Stratton
Hartland Pt
Clovelly
Ilfracombe
Lundy I
Minehead
Watchet
Dunster
Porlock
Lynton
Barnstaple
Bideford
Torrington
Holsworthy
Launceston
Okehampton
Crediton
Tiverton
Wellington
Taunton
Bridgwater
Highbridge
Burnham
Weston
Clevedon
Bristol
Bath
Frome
Trowbridge
Devizes
Marlborough
Newbury
Basingstoke
Andover
Winchester
Salisbury
Wilton
Amesbury
Stonehenge
Swindon
Cirencester
Tetbury
Malmesbury
Chippenham
Calne
Reading
Windsor
Slough
Uxbridge
Staines
Kingston
Richmond
Hampton Court
Chertsey
Weybridge
Guildford
Godalming
Farnham
Aldershot
Alton
Petersfield
Midhurst
Arundel
Worthing
Littlehampton
Bognor
Chichester
Selsey Bill
Portsmouth
Gosport
Fareham
Southampton
Netley
Calshot
Lymington
Christchurch
Bournemouth
Poole
Swanage
Durlston Head
Isle of Wight
Newport
Cowes
Ryde
Sandown
Shanklin
Ventnor
St Catherine's Pt
Freshwater
Yarmouth
Needles
Hurst Castle
Milford
Lymington
Southampton
Winchester
Basingstoke
Andover
Newbury

EXERCISES ON THE LESSON.

How is the British Empire composed? Name the colonies and possessions in Europe. Name those in North America. Name those in South America. Name those in Asia. Name those in Africa. Name those in Australasia. What extent and population do these colonies and possessions comprise? For what is Britain the first country in the world? From what does it derive a great part of its wealth? What is said of its railways, &c.? Of its shipping and navy? What is said of its revenue, &c.? Of its government? Describe the form of government. What is the area of England and Wales? Population? Size? Capital? How are they bounded? What countries do these boundaries separate them from? How are they divided? Name the counties of England. What are the chief towns? Where are they situated? Name the chief towns. Where are they situated? Describe the surface of England. Of Wales. Name the principal mountain. Where are they situated? Name the principal rivers. What cities do they flow past? Describe the coast-line. Name the principal straits, bays, &c. Where are they situated? Name the principal capes. Where are they situated? Name the principal islands. Where are they situated? What is said of the largest? Describe the climate of England. Of what races are the inhabitants composed? What is said of the cities? Describe the principal. Where are they situated?

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.

What seas, straits, and channels nearly surround England? What countries do they separate England from? What rivers flow into the North Sea? Into the Irish Channel? What is the south-western point of England called? What island is in the Irish Sea? What island is on the south coast? Where is Holyhead? In what direction from Dublin? In what direction from Liverpool? Which is the largest county? The smallest? The most northern? What French and English towns are nearest each other? What counties of England border on the North Sea? On the English Channel? On the Atlantic Ocean and Bristol Channel? On St George's Channel? On the Irish Sea? What large cities are on the Thames? On the Severn? On the Trent? On the Humber? On the Wash? On the Mersey? What large cities are on the southern coast? On the eastern? On the western? In what direction from London is Dublin? Edinburgh? Manchester? Bristol? York? Birmingham? Brighton, &c.?

In Asia.

India, comprising the eight Provinces of Bengal, Burmah, Assam, North-west Provinces, Punjab, Central Provinces, Madras, and Bombay.

Ceylon, an important island at the south-eastern extremity of India.

Hong Kong, an island at the mouth of the Canton River.

Aracan, Pegu, and Tenasserim: with the "Straits Settlements," including the Islands of Singapore and Penang, and a part of the Malacca peninsula.

Labuan Island, off the coast of Borneo; and Sarawak, in the north-west of that island.

Aden, an important town at the entrance of the Red Sea.

Cyprus, an island belonging to Turkey, but occupied and governed by England.

In Africa.

Cape Colony and Natal, at the southern extremity.

Mauritius Island and its dependencies.

Seychelles Islands.

Ascension and St. Helena Islands, in the Atlantic.

Sierra Leone, and various settlements on the Gold Coast and the Gambia.

In Australasia.

Australia, comprising West Australia, Queensland, South Australia, New South Wales, and Victoria; Tasmania, New Zealand, Norfolk Island, and the Fiji Islands.

The **British Isles**, with these numerous and extensive colonies and possessions, cover an area of nearly 9,000,000 square miles, with a population of over 300,000,000; so that, although small in the extent of home territory and population, Great Britain is the most important country in the world, ruling over about one-sixth of the whole land surface of the globe, and one-fifth of its population.

It is also the first country in the world for commerce and manufactures, exporting annually goods to the value of 1,500,000,000 dollars, consisting chiefly of cotton, woollen, and iron manufactures, and importing annually to the amount of 1,800,000,000 dollars. The great wealth of Britain is derived from its mines and manufactures. Its coal and iron mines are almost inexhaustible; and its lead, copper, and tin mines are very extensive. The cotton manufacture alone employs 500,000 persons, and it is estimated that four millions of people derive their support from the trade connected with it.

As a consequence of the extensive commerce, the facilities for internal communication are great. Over 18,000 miles of railway are now completed, and canals connect every important point. The number of vessels belonging to Great Britain is nearly 20,000, of which 3,400 are steam-vessels; the number of seamen employed is about 200,000. The British navy is nearly as powerful as all the other navies of the world put together, although the vessels are not so numerous. The annual revenue of Great Britain is 420,000,000 dollars, not including that of India or other colonies, and is equal to a fourth of the revenue of all the States of Europe. The national debt amounts to nearly 3,700 millions of dollars, and has been contracted chiefly in various European wars.

Many of the advantages enjoyed by Great Britain are derived from the excellence of the system of government, which is perhaps the most perfect in existence, combining, in a great measure, the advantages of other forms, without their defects. It is a limited monarchy. The Queen is the head of the State, and carries on the government through her ministers, who must also possess the confidence of the people, as represented by the House of Commons, and of the aristocracy and clergy, as represented by the House of Lords. No law can take effect without receiving the sanction of the Queen and of both Houses of Parliament.

ENGLAND AND WALES.

Area (including the Isle of Man and the Channel Islands), 58,614 square miles; rather more than twice the size of New Brunswick; population, 26,100,000; persons to square mile, 445.

England and Wales occupy the southern portion of the island of Great Britain. England is bounded on the north by the River Tweed, Cheviot Hills, and Solway Firth, which separate it from Scotland; on the west by the Irish Sea and St. George's Channel; on the south by the English Channel; and on the east by the North Sea.

England is divided into 40 counties or shires, and **Wales** into 12.

The Counties of England are:

Counties.	*Principal Towns.*
	Six Northern.
Northumberland,	Newcastle, Berwick, Alnwick.
Cumberland,	Carlisle, Whitehaven, Penrith.
Westmoreland,	Appleby, Kendal.
Durham,	Durham, Sunderland Stockton.
Yorkshire,	York, Leeds, Sheffield, Hull, Bradford.
Lancashire,	Lancaster, Liverpool, Manchester, Preston.
	Six Southern.
Kent,	Maidstone, Canterbury, Dover, Chatham.
Sussex,	Brighton, Chichester, Lewes, Hastings.
Hampshire,	Winchester, Portsmouth, Southampton.
Dorsetshire,	Dorchester, Weymouth, Poole.
Devonshire,	Exeter, Plymouth, Devonport.
Cornwall,	Falmouth, Truro, Bodmin.
	Four Western.
Cheshire,	Chester, Stockport, Macclesfield.
Shropshire,	Shrewsbury, Ludlow, Bridgenorth.
Herefordshire,	Hereford, Leominster.
Monmouthshire,	Monmouth, Chepstow, Abergavenny.
	Four Eastern.
Lincolnshire,	Boston, Lincoln, Stamford, Grimsby.
Norfolk,	Norwich, Yarmouth, Lynn.
Suffolk,	Ipswich, Bury St. Edmund's, Sudbury.
Essex,	Chelmsford, Colchester, Harwich.
	Ten North Midland.
Nottinghamshire,	Nottingham, Newark.
Derbyshire,	Derby, Chesterfield.
Staffordshire,	Stafford, Wolverhampton, Stoke.
Worcestershire,	Worcester, Dudley, Kidderminster.
Warwickshire,	Warwick, Birmingham, Coventry.
Leicestershire,	Leicester, Loughborough.
Rutlandshire,	Oakham.
Northamptonshire,	Northampton, Peterborough.
Huntingdonshire,	Huntingdon, St. Ives, St. Neot's.
Cambridgeshire,	Cambridge, Ely, Newmarket.
	Ten South Midland.
Gloucestershire,	Gloucester, Bristol, Cheltenham, Stroud.
Oxfordshire,	Oxford, Woodstock.
Buckinghamshire,	Buckingham, Aylesbury, Eton.
Bedfordshire,	Bedford, Dunstable.
Hertfordshire,	Hertford, St. Albans.
Middlesex,	London.

Counties.	*Principal Towns.*
Surrey,	Guildford, Southwark, Kingston.
Berkshire,	Reading, Windsor.
Wiltsnire,	Salisbury, Devizes.
Somersetshire,	Bath, Taunton, Bridgewater, Bridport.

The Counties of Wales are:

Six in North Wales.

Flintshire,	Mold, Holywell, St. Asaph.
Denbighshire,	Denbigh, Ruthin.
Carnarvonshire,	Carnarvon, Bangor.
Anglesey,	Beaumaris, Holyhead.
Merionethshire,	Dolgelly, Bala.
Montgomeryshire,	Montgomery, Welshpool, Newton.

Six in South Wales.

Radnorshire,	New Radnor, Presteign.
Cardiganshire,	Cardigan, Aberystwith.
Pembrokeshire,	Pembroke, Haverfordwest, Milford.
Carmarthenshire,	Carmarthen, Llanelly.
Brecknockshire,	Brecon.
Glamorganshire,	Cardiff, Swansea, Merthyr-Tydvil.

The **surface** of England is generally level or gently undulating, and the hills rise to no great height; while that of Wales is mountainous. The principal mountains are the *Pennine* range in the north, extending from the Cheviot hills to the *Peak*, in Derbyshire; the *Cumbrian* group, between the Pennine range and the Irish Sea, enclosing the beautiful lakes, *Windermere*, *Ullswater*, and *Derwentwater*, so celebrated for their picturesque scenery; the *Cambrian* mountains, occupying the greater part of Wales; and the *Devonian* range, extending from Somerset, through Devonshire and Cornwall. *Skawfell*, in the Cumbrian range, rises 3,300 feet, and *Snowdon*, in Wales, 3,590 feet; they are the highest summits in England and Wales. Besides these are a large number of smaller hills, as the *Malvern*, *Mendip*, and *Cotswold* hills, near the mouth of the Severn; the *Dorset* hills, and others.

The **rivers** are numerous, and although short, are valuable for navigation. The principal are: the *Medway*, *Thames*, *Trent*, *Ouse*, *Humber*, *Tees*, *Tyne*, and *Great Ouse*, flowing into the North Sea; the *Mersey* and *Severn*, with its tributaries the *Wye* and *Avon*, flowing into the Irish Sea and Atlantic Ocean.

The **coast-line** is much broken, the rivers widening at their mouths, and forming excellent harbors. Besides the mouths of the rivers, there are on the east—the *Wash*; the *Yarmouth Roads*, off the coast of Norfolk; and the *Downs*, off Kent, protected by sand-banks, and affording secure anchorage to shipping. On the south, the *Strait of Dover*, 21 miles across, separates England from France; and on the coast are *Southampton*, *Weymouth*, *Plymouth*, and *Falmouth* harbors. On the west are the *Bristol Channel*—with a number of excellent harbors—*Cardigan Bay*, *Milford Haven*, *Morecambe Bay*, and *Solway Firth*.

The principal **capes** are: on the east, *Flamborough Head*, *Spurn Head*, the *Naze*, *North* and *South Foreland*; on the south, *Beachy Head*, the *Needles*, off the Isle of Wight, *Portland Point*, *Lizard Point*, and *Land's End*; on the west, *St. David's Head* and *Holyhead*.

The **islands** are: *Man*, *Anglesea*, and *Holyhead*, on the west; the *Scilly Islands*, *Channel Islands* (including *Jersey*, *Guernesy*, *Alderney*, and *Sark*), and the *Isle of Wight* on the south; *Thanet* and *Sheppey* off the coast of Kent; and *Holy Island* on the north-east.

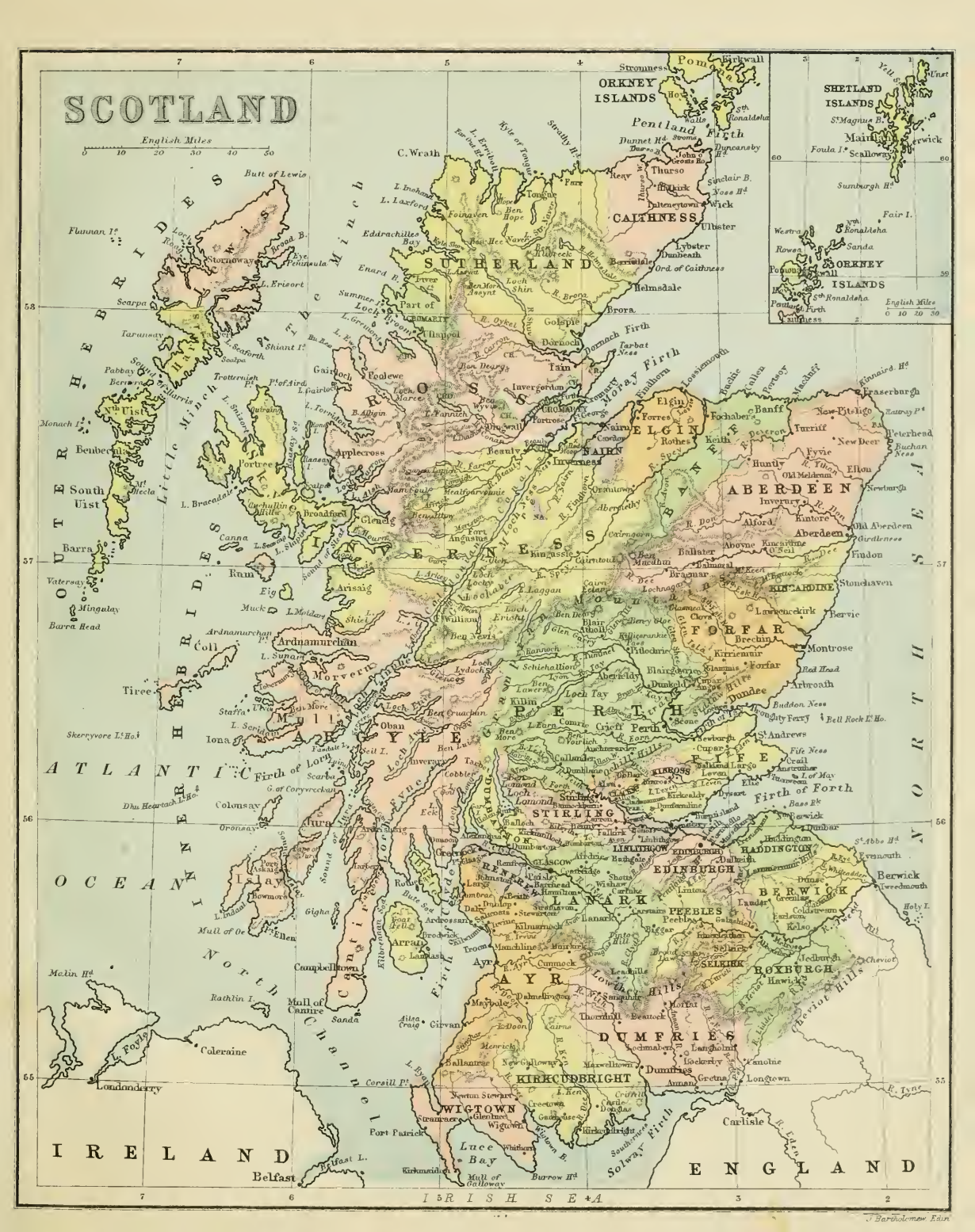
The Isle of Wight, the Channel Islands, and Isle of Man are important islands. Near Cowes, in the Isle of Wight, is Osborne House, a favorite residence of the Queen. St. Helier, in Jersey, contains 30,000 inhabitants. St. Pierre, in Guernsey, Ryde and Newport, in the Isle of Wight, and Douglas and Ramsay, in the Isle of Man, are large towns. Anglesey is joined to the mainland by the Menai Suspension Bridge, stretching across the Menai Strait.

The **climate** of England is damp and changeable, but healthy, and the soil fertile and well cultivated. The prevailing westerly winds bring a great deal of moisture from the Atlantic Ocean, causing an almost perennial verdure; and, owing to its insular position, the extremes of heat and cold are not nearly so great as in the same latitude on the continent.

The English are chiefly of the Anglo-Saxon race, with some proportion of Danish and Norman-French; the Welsh are Celts, descended from the ancient inhabitants of Britain.

No country in the world contains so many large cities within the same compass. The principal in England are: *London* (3,832,000), the capital of England, on the Thames, about 50 miles from its mouth. It is the largest, most wealthy, and most populous city in the world. It includes the City proper and Westminster in Middlesex, with Southwark and Lambeth in Surrey, on the opposite side of the Thames, which is spanned by a number of beautiful and massive bridges. It is nearly 10 miles long by 7 broad, and is gradually extending, and including large villages which a few years ago were surrounded by fields. London is nearly in the centre of the land portion of the globe, and is the great emporium of the world for wealth and commerce. Some of the principal buildings are Buckingham Palace, the Tower, St. Paul's Cathedral, Bank of England, Westminster Abbey, and Houses of Parliament. Near London are *Greenwich*, with its celebrated Observatory and Hospital for sailors; *Kew* and *Richmond*, with magnificent gardens; *Hampton Court* and *Windsor*, with royal palaces; and many other places of present or historic interest.

Liverpool (552,000), on the Mersey, next to London in commerce and wealth, is famous for the vast extent of its docks, covering nearly 19 miles of quay space. It is the great emporium for trade with America, the West Indies, and Ireland. The other principal ports are: *Hull*, on the Humber; *Southampton*; *Bristol* (206,500), on the Avon, near Bristol Channel; *Newcastle*, on the Tyne; *Sunderland*, on the Wear; *Stockton*, on the Tees; *Yarmouth*, *Plymouth*, *Falmouth*, and *Dover*. *Portsmouth*


SCOTLAND
English Miles
0 10 20 30 40 50
ORKNEY ISLANDS
SHETLAND ISLANDS
CAITHNESS
SUTHERLAND
ROSS
CROMARTY
INVERNESS
NAIRN
MORAY
ELGIN
BANFF
ABERDEEN
KINCARDINE
FORFAR
PERTH
ARGYLE
BUTE
KINROSS
FIFE
STIRLING
DUMBARTON
LINLITHGOW
EDINBURGH
HADDINGTON
BERWICK
LANARK
PEEBLES
SELKIRK
ROXBURGH
AYR
DUMFRIES
KIRKCUDBRIGHT
WIGTOWN
OUTER HEBRIDES
INNER HEBRIDES
NORTH SEA
ATLANTIC OCEAN
IRISH SEA
IRELAND
ENGLAND
Pentland Firth
Moray Firth
Firth of Forth
Firth of Clyde
North Channel
Solway Firth
Little Minch
Sound of Mull
Sound of Jura
Sound of Islay
Loch Ness
Loch Lomond
Loch Tay
Loch Awe
Loch Shiel
Loch Maree
Loch Katrine
Loch Leven
Loch Rannoch
Loch Fyne
Loch Etive
Loch Linnhe
Loch Broom
Loch Eriboll
Loch Inchard
Loch Laxford
Loch Erisort
Loch Seaforth
Loch Roag
Loch Carron
Loch Torridon
Loch Shin
Loch Assynt
Loch Morar
Loch Arkaig
Loch Lochy
Loch Eil
Loch Leven
Loch Etive
Loch Creran
Loch Sunart
Loch Moidart
Loch Shiel
Loch Eynort
Loch Snizort
Loch Fleet
Loch Ryan
Loch Doon
Loch Ken
Loch Skerrow
Loch Urr
Loch Dee
Loch Trool
Loch Valley
Loch Dochfour
Loch Oich
Loch Lochy
Loch Arkaig
Loch Garry
Loch Quoich
Loch Hourn
Loch Duich
Loch Alsh
Loch Carron
Loch Gairloch
Loch Ewe
Loch Inver
Loch Assynt
Loch Shin
Loch Naver
Loch Hope
Loch Eriboll
Loch Inchard
Loch Laxford
Loch Erisort
Loch Seaforth
Loch Roag
Loch Snizort
Loch Eynort
Loch Boisdale
Loch Skiport
Loch Druidibeg
Loch Bee
Loch Aline
Loch Sunart
Loch Moidart
Loch Shiel
Loch Eil
Loch Arkaig
Loch Lochy
Loch Oich
Loch Dochfour
Loch Ness
Loch Tarff
Loch Garth
Loch Mhor
Loch Duntelchaig
Loch Ruthven
Loch Insh
Loch Vaich
Loch Glass
Loch Morie
Loch Fleet
Loch Brora
Loch Naver
Loch Shin
Loch Assynt
Loch Inver
Loch Broom
Loch Ewe
Loch Gairloch
Loch Maree
Loch Torridon
Loch Carron
Loch Alsh
Loch Duich
Loch Hourn
Loch Quoich
Loch Garry
Loch Arkaig
Loch Lochy
Loch Oich
Loch Ness
Loch Dochfour
Loch Tay
Loch Rannoch
Loch Lyon
Loch Earn
Loch Voil
Loch Lubnaig
Loch Katrine
Loch Achray
Loch Venachar
Loch Lomond
Loch Long
Loch Goil
Loch Striven
Loch Riddon
Loch Fyne
Loch Gilp
Loch Crinan
Loch Awe
Loch Etive
Loch Creran
Loch Linnhe
Loch Leven

EXERCISES ON THE LESSON.

What is the area of Scotland? Population? Size? Capital? How is it bounded? How is it divided? Name the counties and their chief towns. How is each bounded? Where are the towns situated? Describe the surface of Scotland. What are the principal mountains? Where are they situated? Point them out on the map. How do the mountains divide the country? In what direction does the land slope? Name the principal rivers. Trace them on the map. What towns do they flow past. For what are the Scottish lakes celebrated? Name the principal. Where are they situated? Point them out on the map. Describe the coast-line of Scotland. Name the principal firths or bays. Where are they situated? Point them out on the map. Name the principal capes. Where are they situated? Point them out on the map. What is said of the islands of Scotland? Name the principal. Point them out on the map. Where are they situated? Describe the climate of Scotland. Soil. Products. Minerals and where they are found. What is said of the manufactures and fisheries? When were Scotland and England united? What is the religion of the country? Describe the chief towns? Where are they situated?

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.

How is Scotland separated from England? From Ireland? From what countries does the North Sea separate Scotland?—(Europe.) What groups of islands lie to the north? Which counties border on the Atlantic? Which on the North Sea? Which adjoin England? Which large cities are on the west coast? Which on the east coast? In what direction from Edinburgh is Glasgow? Aberdeen? Inverness? Dumfries? Paisley? Berwick? Stirling? Ayr? What is the nearest English town?

is strongly fortified, and is the principal dockyard and station for the British navy. *Plymouth* and *Devonport*, on the south coast, and *Chatham*, *Sheerness*, *Woolwich*, and *Deptford*, on the Thames, have also extensive dockyards. Woolwich has the largest arsenal and manufactories of war materials in Great Britain.

Manchester, with *Salford* (569,900), is the centre of the cotton-manufacturing trade, and the second city in population; *Oldham*, *Preston*, *Bolton*, *Stockport*, *Rochdale*, and other cities, have large cotton manufactures.

Birmingham (400,750) is celebrated for the extent, variety, and excellence of its metallic manufactures; *Sheffield* (284,000) for cutlery, hardware, and plated goods. *Dudley*, *Walsall*, and *Wolverhampton* are the chief seats of the iron trade; and *Newcastle*, *Sunderland*, and *Shields* of the coal trade.

Leeds (309,000) is the chief centre for the woollen manufactures, which are also largely carried on in *Bradford* (180,000), *Halifax*, and *Huddersfield*; *Nottingham* is celebrated for its lace manufactures; *Macclesfield*, *Derby*, and *Coventry* for silks; *Kidderminster* for carpets; *Worcester* for porcelain; *Stoke*, *Hanley*, and *Newcastle-under-Lyne* for pottery; *Canterbury* and *York* are distinguished for their magnificent cathedrals, and as the seats of the archbishoprics; *Oxford* and *Cambridge* for their celebrated universities and magnificent buildings.

Lancashire is the chief county for cotton manufactures; *Yorkshire* for woollens; *Staffordshire* for pottery; *Durham* and *Northumberland* for coal mines; *Cornwall* and *Devon* for tin and copper; the counties of *Wales* for iron and coal.

Merthyr-Tydvil is one of the largest cities in Wales, and is distinguished for its extensive coal mines and iron works. *Cardiff* (85,378) is the great shipping port for coal, and *Swansea* is famous for its smelting works. *Pembroke* has a Government dockyard, and *Milford Haven* a magnificent harbor.

SCOTLAND.

Area, 30,465 square miles; rather larger than New Brunswick and Prince Edward Island; population, 3,735,000; persons to square mile, 122.

Scotland forms the northern part of the island of Great Britain, and is bounded on the north by the Atlantic Ocean; on the west by the Atlantic Ocean and North Channel; on the south by England; and on the east by the North Sea.

It is divided into 33 counties or shires.

Eleven Northern.

Counties.	*Principal Towns.*
Orkney and Shetland,	Kirkwall, Stromness, Lerwick.
Caithness,	Wick, Thurso.
Sutherland,	Dornoch.
Ross,	Dingwall, Tain, Fortrose, Stornoway (Island of Lewis).
Cromarty,	Cromarty.
Inverness,	Inverness, Portree (Isle of Skye).
Nairn,	Nairn.
Elgin,	Elgin, Forres.
Banff,	Banff, Cullen, Portsoy, Keith.
Aberdeen,	Aberdeen, Peterhead.
Kincardine,	Stonehaven, Bervie.

Nine Middle.

Forfar,	Forfar, Dundee, Montrose, Arbroath, Brechin.
Perth,	Perth, Crieff, Dunkeld, Dunblane.
Fife,	Cupar, St. Andrews, Dunfermline, Kirkcaldy, Dysart.
Kinross,	Kinross.
Clackmannan,	Clackmannan, Alloa.
Stirling,	Stirling, Falkirk, Bannockburn.
Dumbarton,	Dumbarton, Kirkintilloch, Helensburgh.
Argyle,	Inverary, Campbelton, Oban.
Bute,	Rothesay, Lamlash (Isle of Arran).

Thirteen Southern.

Haddington or East-Lothian,	Haddington, Dunbar.
Edinburgh or Mid-Lothian,	Edinburgh, Leith, Musselburgh, Portobello, Dalkeith.
Linlithgow or West-Lothian,	Linlithgow, Borrowstounness (or Boness), Bathgate.
Berwick,	Greenlaw, Dunse, Coldstream.
Roxburgh,	Jedburgh, Kelso, Hawick, Melrose.
Selkirk,	Selkirk, Galashiels.
Peebles,	Peebles, Inverleithen.
Lanark,	Glasgow, Lanark, Airdrie, Hamilton.
Renfrew,	Renfrew, Paisley, Greenock, Port-Glasgow.
Ayrshire,	Ayr, Kilmarnock, Irvine, Ardrossan.
Dumfries,	Dumfries, Annan.
Kirkcudbright,	Kirkcudbright, New Galloway.
Wigton,	Wigton, Portpatrick.

Scotland is very mountainous, especially in the north and west. The *Grampian Mountains* form the principal chain, and extend from Argyleshire in a north-easterly direction to Aberdeenshire; *Ben Nevis*, the highest summit, rises 4,406 feet above the sea. The north-west is entirely occupied by rugged masses of mountains, and is called the Northern Highlands; the highest summit is *Ben Attow*, 4,000 feet high. The south and east consist chiefly of gently undulating plains, crossed by smaller ranges of hills, as the *Lowther* and *Cheviot Hills* in the south, the *Lammermuir* and *Ochil Hills* in the east, besides other small ranges.

The mountainous country in the north and north-west of Scotland is called the Highlands; the more level country, in the east and south, the Lowlands. The inhabitants of the Highlands are Celts, and still speak the Gaelic language, while those of the Lowlands are chiefly of Saxon origin, like the English.

The general **slope** of the country is easterly from the Highlands, the Clyde being the only river of importance flowing westwards. The principal rivers are: the *Tweed*, *Forth*, *Tay*, *Dee*, and *Spey*, flowing east; the *Clyde*, flowing west; and several small rivers, flowing into the Solway Firth.

Scotland abounds with **lakes** celebrated for their picturesque beauty, being generally surrounded by lofty rugged mountains. Among the Grampians are *Loch Lomond*, *Loch Katrine*, *Loch Earn*, *Loch Tay*, *Loch Rannoch*,

in Perth; and *Loch Awe*, in Argyle. In the Northern Highlands are *Loch Ness* and *Loch Lochy*, in the great Caledonian valley connecting the Moray Firth with the Atlantic Ocean; and farther north, *Loch Maree*, *Loch Shin*, and *Loch Assynt; Loch Ericht* and others in Inverness, and *Loch Leven* in Kinross.

Scotland is remarkable for its irregular **coast-line**, numerous firths and lochs extending deep into the land. The *Firth of Forth* and *Firth of Clyde* almost intersect the southern part, and are connected by a canal 38 miles long; while the Moray Firth and Loch Linnhe, almost connected by Lochs Ness and Lochy, intersect the northern part. Besides these, on the east are the *Firth of Tay*, *Cromarty Firth* running into *Moray Firth*, and *Dornoch Firth;* on the west are *Loch Broom*, *Loch Fyne*, and *Loch Long;* and on the south *Luce* and *Wigton Bays*, and *Solway Firth*. The sea between the Hebrides and mainland is called the *Minch;* the other channels are the *Little Minch* and sounds of *Sleat*, *Mull*, and *Jura;* and the *Pentland Firth*, between the Orkney Islands and the mainland.

The principal **capes** are: *Duncansby Head*, *Dunnet Head*, and *Cape Wrath*, on the north; *Mull of Cantyre* and *Mull of Galloway*, on the south-west; *Kinnaird's Head*, *Fife Ness*, and *St. Abb's Head*, on the east.

The **islands** on the coast of Scotland are very numerous, but are for the most part rocky and barren, and important chiefly for their fisheries. The principal are the *Shetland* and *Orkney Islands*, on the north; and the *Hebrides*, divided into the Inner and Outer, and comprising most of the islands on the west coast. The principal in the Outer or Western Hebrides are *Lewis* and *North* and *South Uist;* in the Inner are *Skye*, *Mull*, and *Islay; Arran* and *Bute* are in the Firth of Clyde. *Staffa*, a small island in the Inner Hebrides, is celebrated for its basaltic columns and caverns, the most noted of which is Fingal's Cave.

The climate in the north and west, or mountainous part of Scotland, is generally moist and mild, but the soil is barren, although admirably adapted for grazing; and vast herds of sheep and cattle are reared. In the south and east, *i.e.*, the Lowlands, it resembles England, and is warmer, more fertile, and in a high state of cultivation.

The principal minerals are coal, iron, lead, stone, and slate. The coal region extends across the country from Fifeshire to Ayrshire. Iron is chiefly found in the neighborhood of Glasgow, lead in the Lowther Hills, and slate in Argyleshire.

Cotton, linen, woollen, and iron manufactures are extensively carried on, and the Clyde is celebrated for its iron ship-building trade. The fisheries on the coast and on the islands are important, especially those of the herring and salmon.

Scotland and England were united under one king in 1603, when James VI. of Scotland ascended the throne as James I. of England; the parliaments of the two countries, however, were not united till 1707. The established religion is the Presbyterian, of which there are several branches.

Edinburgh (228,000), the capital, is situated near the Firth of Forth. It is divided into the Old and New Towns. The former is very ancient, and is built on hills, giving it a picturesque appearance; the latter is celebrated for its beauty, and for its numerous fine monuments and public buildings. Edinburgh has long been distinguished as a seat of learning and literature, and it possesses a fine university. It has few manufactures, but carries on an extensive trade through its seaport, *Leith* (61,000). *Glasgow* (555,289), on the river Clyde, is the largest and most important city in Scotland, and the third in Great Britain in population. It carries on large manufactures, and is noted for its iron steamship-building. It possesses a fine cathedral, and is the seat of a university. *Greenock* (69,000), on the Clyde, is an important seaport. *Paisley* (55,600) has extensive cotton and shawl manufactures. *Aberdeen* (105,000) is the principal city in the north, and is built chiefly of granite. It has a large shipping and ship-building trade, and is the seat of a university. Near it is *Balmoral*, the favorite Highland residence of the Queen. *Kilmarnock* and *Dumfries* are manufacturing towns. *Dundee* (142,000), *Arbroath*, and *Montrose* are important seaports, with linen manufactures. *Dunfermline* also has extensive linen manufactures. *Perth* and *Stirling* are beautiful towns. Near Perth is Scone, where the Scottish kings were crowned. *Inverness* is the capital of the North Highlands.

IRELAND.

Area, 32,531 square miles; one-fifth less than Newfoundland in size; population, 5,159,839; persons to a square mile, 159.

Ireland is an island in the Atlantic Ocean to the west of Great Britain, from which it is separated by the North Channel, the Irish Sea, and St. George's Channel.

It is divided into four provinces—*Ulster*, *Connaught*, *Leinster*, and *Munster*, which are subdivided into 32 counties.

Ulster, Nine Counties.

Counties.	*Principal Towns.*
Londonderry,	Londonderry, Coleraine.
Donegal,	Lifford, Ballyshannon.
Antrim,	Belfast, Lisburn, Ballymena, Carrickfergus.
Down,	Newry, Downpatrick, Donaghadee.
Armagh,	Armagh, Portadown.
Monaghan,	Monaghan.
Tyrone,	Omagh, Dungannon.
Fermanagh,	Enniskillen.
Cavan,	Cavan.

Connaught, Five Counties.

Roscommon,	Roscommon.
Leitrim,	Carrick-on-Shannon.
Sligo,	Sligo.
Mayo,	Castlebar, Westport.
Galway,	Galway, Tuam, Ballinasloe.

IRELAND
English Miles
0 10 20 30 40 50
ATLANTIC OCEAN
NORTH CHANNEL
IRISH SEA
ST GEORGE'S CHANNEL
SCOTLAND
WALES
ULSTER
LEINSTER
MUNSTER
CONNAUGHT
DONEGAL
LONDONDERRY
ANTRIM
TYRONE
FERMANAGH
DOWN
ARMAGH
MONAGHAN
CAVAN
LOUTH
SLIGO
MAYO
ROSCOMMON
LONGFORD
MEATH
WEST MEATH
DUBLIN
GALWAY
KINGS COUNTY
KILDARE
QUEENS COUNTY
WICKLOW
CLARE
CARLOW
KILKENNY
TIPPERARY
WEXFORD
LIMERICK
WATERFORD
KERRY
CORK
Malin Hd
Inishtrahull
Tory I.
Bloody Foreland
Inishowen Hd
Lough Swilly
Lough Foyle
Malin Bay
Sheep Haven
Mulroy Bay
Lough Swilly
Rathlin I.
Fair Hd
Red B.
Garron Pt
Belfast Lough
Belfast
Donaghadee
Portpatrick
Arran I.
Ailsa Craig
Donegal Bay
Donegal
Ballyshannon
Killybegs
Slieve League
Rossan Pt
Broad Haven
Erris Hd
Belmullet
The Mullet
Achil Hd
Achil I.
Clew Bay
Westport
Newport
Castlebar
Killala Bay
Ballina
Sligo
Sligo Bay
Blacksod Bay
Inishkea I.
Inishturk
Inishbofin
Inishark
Achill Sd
Clare I.
Croagh Patrick
Galway Bay
Galway
Athenry
Tuam
Loughrea
Ballinasloe
Aran Is
Kinvarra
Gort
Burren
Ennistimon
Liscannor B.
Mal B.
Malbay
Kilbaha B.
Loop Hd
Kilkee
Kilrush
River Shannon
Limerick
Askeaton
Foynes
Tarbert
Rathkeale
Listowel
Kerry Hd
Brandon B.
Tralee B.
Tralee
Smerwick Harb.
Dingle
Dingle Bay
Valentia I.
Cahirciveen
Kenmare
Kenmare R.
Bantry
Bantry Bay
Dunmanway
Clonakilty
Skibbereen
Crow Hd
Dursey I.
Sheep Hd
Dunmanus Bay
Mizen Head
Cape Clear
Sherkin I.
C. Clear I.
Roaringwater B.
Baltimore
Glandore Harb.
Castle Haven
Rosscarbery B.
Courtmacsherry B.
Old Hd of Kinsale
Kinsale Har.
Kinsale
Cork Harbour
Cork
Queenstown
Youghal
Youghal Harb.
Ardmore Hd
Dungarvan B.
Dungarvan
Tallow
Lismore
Fermoy
Mallow
Cappoquin
Waterford
Dunmore
Tramore B.
Hook Hd
Saltee Is
Carnsore Pt
Greenore Pt
Wexford Har.
Wexford
New Ross
Enniscorthy
Ferns
Gorey
Arklow
Wicklow
Wicklow Hd
Wicklow Mts
Bray
Kingstown
Dublin
Dublin Bay
Howth Hd
Howth
Ireland's Eye
Malahide
Skerries
Balbriggan
Drogheda
Dundalk
Dundalk Bay
Carlingford L.
Carlingford B.
St John's Pt
Dunchurch B.
Strangford
Strangford L.
Donaghadee
Portaferry
Kilkeel
Newcastle
Newry
Armagh
Monaghan
Clones
Cavan
Carrickmacross
Kells
Navan
Trim
Tara
Athlone
Mullingar
Longford
Edgeworthstown
Roscommon
Castlerea
Boyle
Elphin
Castlebar
Westport
Ballinrobe
Tuam
Loughrea
Ballinasloe
Portumna
Birr
Parsonstown
Roscrea
Nenagh
Killaloe
Templemore
Thurles
Cashel
Tipperary
Clonmel
Carrick on Suir
Callan
Kilkenny
Castlecomer
Leighlin Br
Bagenalstown
Carlow
Tullow
Athy
Maryborough
Mountmellick
Portarlington
Edenderry
Tullamore
Philipstown
Kilbeggan
Moate
Athlone
Ballymahon
Granard
Cootehill
Castleblayney
Carrickmacross
Dundalk
Drogheda
Kells
Navan
Trim
Dunboyne
Maynooth
Naas
Kildare
Monasterevin
Portlaoise
Abbeyleix
Mountrath
Roscrea
Nenagh
Limerick
Rathkeale
Newcastle West
Abbeyfeale
Listowel
Tarbert
Kilrush
Ennis
Clare
Corofin
Ennistimon
Lahinch
Miltown Malbay
Kilkee
Carrigaholt
Kilbaha
Loop Hd
Kerry Hd
Brandon Hd
Tralee
Dingle
Dingle Bay
Valentia I.
Cahirciveen
Kenmare
Kenmare R.
Bantry
Bantry Bay
Dunmanway
Clonakilty
Skibbereen
Crow Hd
Dursey I.
Sheep Hd
Dunmanus Bay
Mizen Head
Cape Clear
Sherkin I.
C. Clear I.
Roaringwater B.
Baltimore
Glandore Harb.
Castle Haven
Rosscarbery B.
Courtmacsherry B.
Old Hd of Kinsale
Kinsale Har.
Kinsale
Cork Harbour
Cork
Queenstown
Youghal
Youghal Harb.
Ardmore Hd
Dungarvan B.
Dungarvan
Tallow
Lismore
Fermoy
Mallow
Cappoquin
Waterford
Dunmore
Tramore B.
Hook Hd
Saltee Is
Carnsore Pt
Greenore Pt
Wexford Har.
Wexford
New Ross
Enniscorthy
Ferns
Gorey
Arklow
Wicklow
Wicklow Hd
Wicklow Mts
Bray
Kingstown
Dublin
Dublin Bay
Howth Hd
Howth
Ireland's Eye
Malahide
Skerries
Balbriggan
Drogheda
Dundalk
Dundalk Bay
Carlingford L.
Carlingford B.
St John's Pt
Dunchurch B.
Strangford
Strangford L.
Donaghadee
Portaferry
Kilkeel
Newcastle
Newry
Armagh
Monaghan
Clones
Cavan
Carrickmacross
Kells
Navan
Trim
Tara
Athlone
Mullingar
Longford
Edgeworthstown
Roscommon
Castlerea
Boyle
Elphin
Castlebar
Westport
Ballinrobe
Tuam
Loughrea
Ballinasloe
Portumna
Birr
Parsonstown

EXERCISES ON THE LESSON.

What is the area of Ireland? Population? Size? Capital? How is it bounded? How is it divided? Name the counties and their chief towns. How are the counties bounded? Where are the towns situated? Describe the surface of Ireland. Name the principal mountains. Point them out on the map. Where are they situated? What is said of the rivers? Name the principal. Trace their courses on the map. What towns do they flow past? What are the principal lakes, and where are they situated? Describe the coast-line of Ireland. Name the principal bays, &c. Point them out on the map. Where are they situated? Name the principal capes. Point them out on the map. Where are they situated? Describe the climate of Ireland. For what is it remarkable? Describe the soil, products, minerals, manufactures. What government has Ireland? Describe the principal towns. Where are they situated? What great natural curiosity exists in Ireland?

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.

What is the most northern point of Ireland called? What is the most southern point of Ireland called? How is Ireland separated from England? From Scotland? What is the nearest town in Scotland? Which counties are on the west coast? On the north? On the east? On the south? What cities are on the Shannon? Which are the chief towns on the east coast? On the north? On the west? On the south? In what direction from Dublin is Londonderry? Cork? Belfast? Galway? Sligo? Limerick?

Leinster, Twelve Counties.

Counties.	*Principal Towns.*
Dublin,	Dublin, Kingstown.
Wicklow,	Wicklow, Arklow.
Wexford,	Wexford, New Ross.
Kilkenny,	Kilkenny.
Carlow,	Carlow.
Kildare,	Athy, Naas, Maynooth, Kildare.
Queen's County,	Maryborough.
King's County,	Tullamore, Birr or Parsonstown.
Westmeath,	Mullingar, Athlone.
Longford,	Longford.
Meath,	Trim, Navan.
Louth,	Dundalk, Drogheda.

Munster, Six Counties.

Waterford,	Waterford, Dungarvan, Lismore.
Tipperary,	Clonmel, Cashel, Nenagh, Thurles, Tipperary, Carrick-on-Suir.
Clare,	Ennis.
Limerick,	Limerick.
Cork,	Cork, Queenstown, Bandon, Youghal, Kinsale, Fermoy.
Kerry,	Tralee, Killarney, Dingle.

The **surface** of Ireland is generally low: about one-sixth of it is covered with peat bogs. Mountains occur in detached masses, generally near the coast, and most frequently in the north and west. There are numerous beautiful lakes, and the scenery in the mountainous districts is exceedingly varied and picturesque. The principal **mountains** are: *Magillicuddy's Reeks*, with *Carn Tual*, the highest summit, in Kerry County, 3,400 feet; *Mount Nephin* in Mayo, and *Lugnaquilla Mount* in Wicklow. Besides these are the *Donegal*, *Antrim*, and *Connemara Mountains*.

Owing to the level country through which they flow, the rivers of Ireland are slow, and navigable for the greater part of their courses. The principal **rivers** are: the *Shannon*, with its lake expansions, *Loughs Allen*, *Ree*, and *Derg*, flowing west, 224 miles long, and navigable for 213; the *Blackwater*, *Suir*, and *Barrow*, flowing south; the *Liffey* and the *Boyne*, flowing east; the *Bann*, draining *Lough Neagh*, the largest lake in Britain or Ireland; the *Erne*, draining several beautiful lakes; and the *Foyle*, flowing north. The Lakes of Killarney, celebrated for their beautiful scenery, are situated among the mountains of Kerry.

Ireland, like Scotland, is deeply indented with bays and loughs, especially on the west. The principal are: *Loughs Foyle* and *Swilly*, on the north coast; *Donegal*, *Clew*, and *Galway Bays*, mouth of the *Shannon*, *Dingle*, *Kenmare*, and *Bantry Bays*, on the west coast; *Cork*, *Waterford*, and other harbors on the south; and *Wexford Harbor*, *Dublin*, *Dundalk*, and *Carlingford Bays*, and *Belfast Lough*, on the east coast.

The principal **capes** are: *Howth Head*, near Dublin, on the east; *Fair Head*, *Malin Head*, and *Bloody Foreland*, on the north; *Rossan Point*, *Slyne*, and *Dunmore Heads*, on the west; and *Cape Clear*, and *Carnsore Point*, on the south.

The **climate** of Ireland is mild and healthy, but very moist, owing to the prevailing westerly winds. To its moist climate it owes the beautiful verdure with which the fields are always clothed, and which has caused it to be named the "Emerald Isle." The soil is fertile, but is not so highly cultivated as in Britain. Cereals, flax, potatoes, turnips, and hay are the staple agricultural productions. Cattle are extensively reared, and exported to Britain, as well as all kinds of dairy and farm produce.

Ireland possesses valuable minerals, but these are little wrought. The peat bogs supply valuable fuel, peat being used instead of coal.

The linen manufacture is the chief branch of industry, and is carried on principally in the north.

The native Irish are Celts, but a large part of the population, especially in the north, came originally from England and Scotland. No religion is now established by law, but nearly four-fifths of the population are Roman Catholic. Since the year 1800 the Parliament of Ireland has been united with that of Great Britain. The Queen is represented in Ireland by the Lord-Lieutenant, who resides at Dublin.

Owing to the failure of the potato crop, and other causes, which led to extensive emigration to America, the population of Ireland has decreased 3,000,000 in forty years, or more than one-third of the entire population.

Dublin (249,486), the capital, is a large and beautiful city, and is celebrated for the number of its fine buildings, its beautiful bay and surrounding scenery. It is the see of an archbishop, the residence of the Lord-Lieutenant, and the seat of three universities. Its trade is carried on chiefly with Liverpool. Near it is *Maynooth*, with a Roman Catholic college.

Belfast (207,671) is one of the most thriving cities in the British Islands. It has risen into importance chiefly within the present century, and is now the second city in Ireland. It is the centre of the linen and sewed muslin trade. *Cork* (78,361), the third city in Ireland, has a magnificent harbor, and is the centre of a large trade. *Galway* is the largest town in Connaught, and possesses an excellent harbor. *Limerick* and *Waterford* are important towns, with large manufactures. *Londonderry*, *Newry*, *Dundalk*, *Drogheda*, *Wexford*, and *Sligo* are seaports engaged in the export of provisions. *Kilkenny* and *Clonmel* are the most important inland towns. Near *Coleraine* is the celebrated Giant's Causeway, a mass of basaltic columns extending into the sea.

SWEDEN AND NORWAY.

Sweden and **Norway** form the peninsula of Scandinavia, situated between the Atlantic Ocean, Baltic Sea, and Gulf of Bothnia, and form one power under the same crown, but with separate governments. They are separated from Denmark by the Skager Rack, Cattegat, and the Sound.

NORWAY.

Area, 125,640 square miles; two-thirds the size of Ontario; population, 1,913,000; persons to a square mile, 15.

Norway occupies the western part of the peninsula, and extends from the Arctic Ocean to the Skager Rack. It is divided into twenty provinces.

The **surface** is very mountainous, being composed of high mountains or table-lands, extending the whole length of the peninsula, about 1,100 miles, and called the *Kiolen Mountains* in the north, the *Dovrefield Mountains* in the middle, and the *Hardangerfield Mountains* in the south. These mountains rise chiefly from high plateaus, and are most abrupt and precipitous on the west, where they sometimes form the sea-coast, and in Sweden decline more gradually towards the Baltic Sea. The principal plateaus are *Langfield*, *Sognefield*, *Dovrefield*, and *Hardangerfield*.

The **rivers**, owing to the formation of the country, are comparatively short rapid torrents; the principal is the *Glommen*, flowing into the Skager Rack after a course of 340 miles.

The **coast-line** of Norway is remarkable for its deep indentations called fiords, narrow arms of the sea, extending sometimes 50 miles into the land between precipitous mountains, and abounding in picturesque but wild scenery. The principal **capes** are the *North Cape*, the northern extremity of the country, and the *Naze*, the southern extremity.

Numerous small **islands** extend along the coast, the principal of which are the *Lofoden Isles*, with important fisheries. Near them is the dangerous whirlpool, the Maelstrom, caused by the meeting of opposing tidal currents.

The **climate** of Norway is very severe but healthy, and owing to the influence of the Atlantic Ocean is much more moist than that of Sweden. The soil is in general rocky and barren, although some tracts are fertile and well cultivated. In the northern part, within the Arctic circle, the sun does not set for weeks together at midsummer, and is not seen for the same length of time at midwinter.

The chief wealth of Norway is derived from its mines, forests, and fisheries. Timber, iron, and eider-down are largely exported. It possesses also silver and copper mines.

Norway was an independent kingdom previous to 1397, when it was united with Denmark. It was joined to Sweden in 1814, but is governed by a separate ministry and legislature or Storthing. The religion is the Lutheran. It is the most thinly peopled country in Europe.

Christiania (119,400), the capital, is situated at the head of a fiord of the same name. It is largely engaged in commerce, and has a university. *Bergen* (40,000) is the second city in size, and an important seaport, with large exports of timber and dried fish. *Drontheim* is also an important town, and the former capital of Norway. *Roraas* has extensive copper mines. At *Frederickshald*, Charles XII. of Sweden was killed while besieging it. *Hammerfest* is the most northerly town in Europe. *Stavanger* is an important seaport on the southwest.

SWEDEN.

Area, 170,980 square miles; nearly the size of Ontario; population, 4,572,000; persons to a square mile, 26.

Sweden occupies the eastern portion of the Scandinavian peninsula, including part of Lapland in the north, and extending along the western shores of the Gulf of Bothnia and the Baltic Sea.

It is divided into three great divisions, *Gothland*, *Svealand*, and *Norland*, and these are subdivided into 25 läns or governments.

Sweden resembles Norway in most of its characteristics, but the slope of the mountains is more gradual towards the sea. It has many rivers, but they are rapid and impetuous, and of little value for commerce. More than one-half of the surface is covered with vast forests.

Numerous **lakes** form the most striking feature of the country. The principal are *Lakes Wener*, *Wetter*, *Mälar*, and *Hielmar*.

The **islands** of *Gottland* and *Oland* in the Baltic belong to Sweden.

The **climate**, like that of Norway, is severe, and agriculture is only carried on in the south.

The **mines** of Sweden are very valuable. They are celebrated for their iron, which is considered the best in the world; the copper mines of Dalecarlia are also famous. The principal mining districts are in the valley of the Dal.

The **form of government** is a limited monarchy, and the religion Lutheran.

Stockholm (176,000), the capital, is situated partly on the mainland and partly on some small islands at the junction of Lake Mälar with the Baltic. It possesses a safe and commodious harbor, and carries on an extensive trade. *Gothenburg* (74,000) is the second city, and an important seaport, with large exports of iron and timber. *Upsala* is famous for its university. *Carlscrona*, in the south, situated on five small islands, is the principal station of the navy. *Dannemora* has celebrated iron mines, and *Fahlun*, *Norkœping*, *Malmo*, and *Calmar* are the only other towns of importance.

LAPLAND.

Lapland lies to the north-east of Sweden, and is the most northerly part of Europe. It belongs nominally to Sweden and Russia, but the country is so poor, and the inhabitants are so wandering, that the latter are practically independent. They are small in stature, and subsist

(SCANDINAVIA)
SWEDEN, NORWAY & DENMARK.
English Miles
0 50 100 150 200
REFERENCE.
SWEDEN.
Læns or Districts.
1 Norrbotten
2 Westerbotten
3 Jemtland
4 Wester Norrbotten
5 Gefleborg
6 Kopparberg
7 Wermland
8 Orebro
9 Westmanland
10 Upsala
11 Stockholm
Stockholm (town)
12 Sodermanland
13 Oster Gothland
14 Skaraborg
15 Elsborg
16 Gothenborg & Bohus
17 Halland
18 Jonkoping
19 Calmar
20 Kronoborg
21 Blekinge
22 Christianstad
23 Malmohus
24 Gothland
NORWAY.
Amts or Bailliewicks.
1 Finmarken
2 Nordland
3 North Drontheim
4 Romsdal
5 South Drontheim
6 Hedemarken
7 Christians
8 North Bergenhuus
9 South Bergenhuus
10 Stavanger
11 Lister & Mandal
12 Nedenaes & Robygdel
13 Bratsberg
14 Buskerud
15 Jarlsberg
16 Agershuus
Christiania town
17 Smaalenen
ARCTIC OCEAN
ATLANTIC OCEAN
NORTH SEA
SKAGER RACK
CATTEGAT
BALTIC SEA
GULF OF BOTHNIA
GULF OF FINLAND
Mageroe
North Cape
Hammerfest
Sorö
Altengaard
Kvænanger Fiord
Lopphavet
Tromsöe
Senjen
Loffoden Isles
Nyk Kvalö
Syd Kvalö
Alten Elv
Torne Elv
Lake Enara
Varanger Fiord
Vardö
Nord Vadsö
Syd Vadsö
Tana Fiord
Dönnes
Lapland
Alte Vand
Muonio
Torneå Fræsk
Lapland
Malstrom
West Fiord
Bodö
Sulkulma
Stora Lulim Jaur
Kalix Elf
Rodö
Torneå Elf
Arctic Circle
Horn Afvan
Vuellerim
Lulå Elf
Donnaes
Alstahoug
Vegen Ø
Skor Afvan
Pitea
Lulea
Piteaborg
Thosen Fd
Vigten Fd
Folden Fjord
Skellefteå
Umeå
Nanisos
Drontheim Fjord
Frøyen
Hitteren
Sinolen
Christiansund
Molde Fjord
Romsdal Fd
Aalesund
Stadt Prom
Dovre Field
Bergen
Hardanger Fd
Sogne Fd
Fiord Fd
Stavanger
Bukke Fjord
Christiansand
Arendal
Lister Fd
The Naze
Mandal
The Skaw
Hangesund
Skien
Laurvig
Christiania
Drammen
Kongsvinger
Philipstad
Carlstad
Frederickshald
Fahlun
Gefle
Upsala
Stockholm
Orebro
Marstad
Norrköping
Linköping
Wenersborg
Gothenborg
Wexio
Calmar
Aarhuus
Veile
Odense
Zealand
Elsinore
Copenhagen
Christianstad
Carlscrona
Lund
Ystad
Malmö
Bornholm
Rönne
Moen
Falster
Laaland
Rügen
Kiel
Rendsburg
Schleswig
North Frisian
Holstein
Hernösand
Sundsvall
Gudiksvall
Ostersund
Nikolaistadt
Wasa
Aland Is
Abo
Helsingfors
St PETERSBURG
Revel
Dago
Osel
Dorpat
Peipus L.
Riga
Libau
Memel
Nieuwen
Königsberg
Danzig
Gothland
Wisby
Visby
Borgholm
Oland
Westervik
Norrköping
Braviken Bay
Gotska Sando
Nyköping
Hamnö
Mariestad
Lidköping
Venersborg
Trollhatta Fall
Lister Fd
Vendsyssel
Aalborg
Aarhuus
Ringkjöbing Fjord
Blavands Huk
Ribe
Tonder
Flensburg
Apenrade
Hadersleben
Sonderburg
Alsen
Fehmarn
Lübeck
Travemunde
Wismar
Rostock
Stralsund
Greifswald
Stettin
Swinemunde
Usedom
Wollin
Pomerania
Prussia
Courland
Livonia
Esthonia
Arensburg
Pernau
Reval
Narva
Finland
Lapland
Norway
Sweden
Russia
Denmark
Germany
Poland
Prussia
J. Bartholomew, Edinr.

EXERCISES ON THE LESSON.

What is the area of Denmark? Population? Size? Capital? Which are the principal islands? What channels are between the islands and mainland? Describe the surface of Denmark. Describe the climate and soil. What is said of the maritime enterprise of the Danes? Of their manufactures, &c.? What islands belong to Denmark? Describe Iceland, its volcanoes, geysers, &c. What is its chief town? What other possessions has Denmark? What is said of the government? Describe the chief towns. What countries compose Scandinavia? How is the peninsula situated? What is the area of Norway? Population? Size? Capital? Describe the surface. Name the principal plateaux. What is said of the rivers? Describe the coast-line of Norway. What famous whirlpool is near Norway, and where is it? Describe the climate. Soil. What minerals are principally found? What is said of Norway? Describe the chief towns. How is Denmark separated from Sweden and Norway? How is Zealand separated from Sweden? How is Copenhagen situated? In what direction from Copenhagen is St Petersburg? London?—(see Europe.) Christiania? Stockholm? Where is Iceland?—(see Europe.) What is the area of Sweden? Population? Size? Capital? How is it bounded? How is it divided? What islands belong to Sweden? Describe the climate, &c. For what is Sweden celebrated? What is the form of government and religion? Describe the chief towns. Where is Lapland situated? To whom does it belong? Describe the people.

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.

How is Sweden separated from Russia? From Prussia? From Denmark? How is Norway separated from Denmark? What islands are on the west coast of Norway? What islands are in the Baltic? How is Christiania situated? Bergen? Drontheim? Hammerfest? In what direction from London is Christiania? In what direction from Christiania is Stockholm? In what direction from Stockholm is St Petersburg? Copenhagen? Warsaw?

chiefly upon the flesh and milk of the reindeer. They profess Christianity, but mingle with it many Pagan superstitions.

DENMARK.

Area, 14,840 square miles; more than two-thirds the size of Nova Scotia; population, 1,969,000; persons to a square mile, 133.

Denmark comprises the peninsula of Jutland and a group of islands lying at the entrance of the Baltic Sea. It is bounded on the north by the Skager Rack; on the west by the North Sea; on the south by Germany; and on the east by the Baltic, the Sound, and the Cattegat.

The principal **islands** are *Zealand*, *Fünen*, and *Laaland*; and besides these are numerous smaller islands, both on the east and west coasts.

The straits between the islands and the mainland are called the *Sound*, the *Great Belt*, and *Little Belt*. The most northerly point of the peninsula is called the *Skaw*.

The **surface** of Denmark is flat, scarcely interrupted even by a hill, and the rivers are small. The only navigable river is the *Eider*, flowing into the North Sea; it is connected with the Baltic by the Canal of Kiel.

The **climate** is damp; the soil in the south is fertile and well cultivated, but in the north it consists of barren and dreary wastes. The Danes have always been celebrated for their maritime enterprise. Their manufactures are unimportant, the inhabitants being chiefly engaged in agriculture or the fisheries.

Denmark possesses also the island of *Iceland* and the *Faroe Islands*. Iceland is situated in the Atlantic, about 200 miles east of Greenland. The climate is cold and the country barren. The island is famed for its numerous volcanoes, the largest of which is *Mount Hecla*, and for the geysers, or boiling springs, which throw up columns of boiling water at intervals, sometimes to the height of 80 feet. Iceland was peopled by the Norwegians in 874, and contains about 72,400 inhabitants. The chief town is *Reikiavik*.

The *Faroe Islands* are situated between Iceland and the Shetland Isles, and export large quantities of eider-down.

The **foreign possessions** of Denmark are the islands of *St. Thomas*, *St. John*, and *Santa Cruz*, in the West Indies, and *Greenland*, in the Arctic Ocean.

The **government** is a limited monarchy, and the established religion the Lutheran. Education is carefully provided for.

Copenhagen (235,000), the capital, is situated on the east coast of the Island of Zealand, and possesses a fine harbor. It contains a university, and some fine palaces and buildings. It was bombarded by Lord Nelson in 1801, and by Admiral Gambier in 1807, when the Danish fleet was taken to England. *Elsinore* is situated on the east coast of the Island of Zealand, at the narrowest part of the Sound, the passage of which is commanded by the Castle of Kronborg. All vessels entering the Baltic formerly had to pay dues to Denmark at Elsinore. *Aalborg* and *Aarhuus* are seaports.

RUSSIA IN EUROPE.

Area, 2,074,686 square miles; rather larger than the Canadian Northwest Territories and Manitoba; population, 85,000,000; persons to a square mile, 39.

Russia in Europe is bounded on the north by the Arctic Ocean; on the west by Sweden, the Gulf of Bothnia, the Baltic Sea, Germany, and Austria; on the south by Roumania, the Black Sea, and Mount Caucasus; and on the east by the Caspian Sea, the Ural River, and Ural Mountains, which also separate it from Siberia or Asiatic Russia.

The empire of Russia, of which by far the greater portion is in Asia, comprises more than one-half of Europe and more than one-third of Asia; the whole extent being a little less than that of the empire of Great Britain, and about one-sixth of the whole land surface of the globe. In population, it is far inferior to the British Empire, containing altogether only about 100,000,000 inhabitants, of which Russia in Europe has the greater part.

Russia in Europe is divided into 71 governments. It consists of one vast level plain, with few hills, and without a single mountain, except on the boundaries. South and east of St. Petersburg are the *Valdai Hills*, a raised table-land, in which most of the large rivers of Russia rise. In the south-east are vast *steppes* or desert sandy plains. The *Ural Mountains*, forming the eastern boundary, extend about 1,200 miles from the Arctic Ocean southward, nearly to the Caspian Sea, rising in some parts upwards of 5,000 feet in height. The *Mounts Caucasus* extend from the Sea of Azov along the north-eastern shore of the Black Sea and eastward to the Caspian Sea; *Mount Elburz*, the highest peak, being 18,526 feet high.

The **rivers** of Russia are large but sluggish, owing to the level nature of the country which they traverse. The principal are the *Petchora*, flowing into the Arctic Ocean; the *Dvina*, flowing into the White Sea; the *Neva*, *Duna*, *Niemen*, and *Vistula* (the latter rising in Russian Poland, and flowing through Prussia), into the Baltic; and the *Dnieper*, *Don*, and *Volga*, flowing south into the Black Sea, the Sea of Azov, and the Caspian Sea respectively. The Volga is the largest river in Europe; it is about 2,200 miles long, and is navigable for the greater part of its course.

A number of large **lakes** extend from near St. Petersburg to the White Sea, and by means of these, and a series of canals, the White Sea is connected with the Baltic. St. Petersburg is also connected with the Caspian Sea by the Volga River and canals. The principal lakes are *Ladoga*, *Onega*, *Saima*, *Ilmen*, and *Peipus*.

Russia possesses but little **sea-coast** compared with the extent of its territory; the *White Sea* and *Arctic Ocean* are on the north; the eastern portion of the *Baltic*, with the *Gulfs of Bothnia*, *Finland*, and *Riga*, on the west; the *Black Sea* and the *Sea of Azov* on the south; and the *Caspian Sea* on the south-east.

The **islands** belonging to Russia are *Waigatz*, *Nova Zembla*, and *Spitzbergen* in the Arctic Ocean; the *Aland Isles*, and *Dago* and *Oesel* in the Baltic. Between the Black Sea and Sea of Azov is the peninsula of the *Crimea*, joined to the mainland by the *Isthmus of Perekop*.

The **climate** is cold and severe at the north, but not so extreme as in North America in the same latitude. At the south it is warmer. The soil is barren in the north, and in the south-east, where the vast steppes cover the country; but fertile in the south and west, where barley, oats, and wheat are extensively cultivated and exported. Hemp is grown in the west to a great extent.

The Ural Mountains contain valuable mines of gold, silver, copper, and iron. Manufactures are greatly neglected. The chief exports are timber, hemp, grain, flax, tallow, pitch, wool, and furs.

The **government** is an absolute monarchy, and the religion that of the Greek Church. The Czar is the absolute head both of the Church and of the State. Until March, 1861, the peasants were serfs or vassals of the proprietors of the land upon which they were born. They are now free; and education, which was formerly altogether neglected, is now becoming diffused, and the condition of the people improved. The nobles are wealthy, and live in a style of rough magnificence.

St. Petersburg (670,000), the capital, is situated on the left bank of the Neva, and on two small islands adjoining. It was founded by Peter the Great, and is one of the most imposing and important capitals of Europe. *Kronstadt* is its port, and the chief station of the Russian navy. It is strongly fortified. *Riga*, *Revel*, and *Helsingfors* on the Baltic, are important commercial towns, strongly fortified, with large exports of flax, hemp, timber, and grain. *Archangel*, on the northern Dvina, near its entrance into the White Sea, is an important commercial town. *Vilna*, the former capital of Lithuania, has a large trade. The greater part of the inhabitants are Jews. *Moscow* (602,000), the former capital, in the centre of the country, is the great emporium of trade in the interior. It is noted for having been destroyed by its Russian defenders in 1812, causing Napoleon Bonaparte to commence his disastrous retreat. *Odessa* (184,000) is the chief port on the Black Sea. It is strongly fortified, and makes large exports of grain. *Taganrog*, on the Sea of Azov, has a large trade in grain. *Sebastopol*, in the Crimea, is celebrated for its siege by the English and French armies in 1854-55; since the destruction of Sebastopol, *Nikolaiev* is the chief naval station of the Russians in the Black Sea. *Kiev*, on the right bank of the Dnieper, is one of the oldest cities in the empire. It was here that Christianity was first introduced, and it is regarded as a sacred city. *Tula*, about 100 miles south of Moscow, has large manufactures, chiefly of iron and steel. *Astrakhan*, on an island at the mouth of the Volga, is the emporium of the trade on the Caspian Sea with Persia and other eastern countries. *Nijni Novgorod*, at the junction of the Oka with the Volga, is famed for its annual fairs, lasting from July to September, and attracting upwards of 200,000 persons from all parts of Europe and Asia. *Kasan*, 430 miles east of Moscow, near the Volga, has a large trade with Siberia and Tartary.

Caucasia is situated between the Black and Caspian Seas, both north and south of the Caucasian range. The men were celebrated for their bravery, and long defied the power of Russia; the women are remarkable for their beauty. Large numbers emigrated to Turkey, rather than submit to Russian rule.

Finland, in the north-west, between the Gulfs of Finland and Bothnia, formerly belonged to Sweden, but was in 1809 annexed to Russia.

Poland lies to the south-west of Russia, between Prussia and Austria. It was once a powerful independent kingdom, but towards the end of last century was seized and divided between Russia, Prussia, and Austria. It was at one time rather larger than France, and contained 12,000,000 inhabitants; the greater part is now subject to Russia.

Its surface is level, and well adapted for the production of grain, which is largely exported.

The Poles are a brave and patriotic people. In 1830, and again in 1863, they made determined but unsuccessful attempts to throw off the foreign yoke.

Warsaw (308,000), on the Vistula, was the ancient capital. It suffered greatly in the sieges of 1794 and 1831: it is now the principal station for the Russian army in Poland. Its university was suppressed in 1834. About 35,000 of the inhabitants are Jews.

HOLLAND, OR THE NETHERLANDS.

Area (including Luxemburg), 13,740 square miles; nearly two-thirds the size of Nova Scotia; population, 4,270,000; persons to a square mile, 311.

Holland is bounded on the north and west by the North Sea; on the south by Belgium; and on the east by Germany.

It is divided into twelve provinces, including those portions of the old Duchies of Limburg and Luxemburg (the latter lying to the south-east of Belgium) which belong to it. Until 1866, Dutch Luxemburg formed part of the German Confederation.

Holland is the lowest and most level country in Europe, a great part of the surface being below the sea-level at

HOLLAND & BELGIUM
English Miles
0 10 20 30 40 50
Railways
Canals
Friesian Islands
Ameland
Schiermonnikoog
Terschelling
Vlieland
Texel
Helder
Nieuwediep
Harlingen
Leeuwarden
GRONINGEN
Groningen
FRIESLAND
Sneek
Drachten
Assen
Emden
Delfzyl
The Dollart
Winschoten
Bourtange
Meppen
Coevorden
DRENTHE
Meppel
Hoogeveen
Zwartsluis
Hasselt
Ommen
Hardenberg
Zwolle
Kampen
OVERYSSEL
Almelo
Oldenzaal
Deventer
Dolden
Hengelo
Enschede
Oosterhout
Wageningen
Arnhem
Doesborgh
Zevenaar
Bredevoort
Bocholt
Emmerich
Nymegen
Cleve
Grave
Goch
Wesel
Gelderen
Venlo
Crefeld
Elberfeld
Barmen
Essen
Düsseldorf
Viersen
Roermonde
LIMBURG
Maastricht
Aix la Chapelle
Düren
Bonn
Cologne
Hasselt
Tongres
Liege
Verviers
Eupen
Herve
Spa
Stavelot
Durbuy
Huy
Namur
Dinant
Philippeville
Marche
la Roche
Bastogne
Clerf
Wilz
Sauer
Diekirch
LUXEMBURG
Neufchateau
Bouillon
Sedan
Arlon
Virton
Longwy
Luxemburg
Treves
Moselle
Mezieres
Charleville
Rocroy
Hirson
Oise
Aisne
Chimay
Maubeuge
Avesnes
Beaumont
Cambrai
Arras
Douai
Valenciennes
Lille
Roubaix
Tourcoing
Courtrai
Ypres
Tournai
Ath
Mons
Charleroi
Nivelles
Soignies
Waterloo
Wavre
Louvain
BRUSSELS
BRABANT
Tirlemont
St Trond
Renaix
Oudenarde
Alost
Termonde
Mechlin
Antwerp
ANTWERP
Turnhout
Lierre
Ghent
St Nicolas
Bruges
Ostend
Blankenberghe
Zeebrugge
Sluys
Eccloo
Dixmude
Thielt
Roulers
Thourout
Gand
EAST FLANDERS
WEST FLANDERS
Audenarde
Lessines
Enghien
Leuze
Peruwelz
St Amand
Valenciennes
Bergen op Zoom
Tholen
Beverland
Walcheren
Middelburg
Flushing
ZEELAND
S. Beveland
Western Scheldt
Eastern Scheldt
Tholen
Steenbergen
Rozendaal
Tilburg
Eindhoven
Helmond
NORTH BRABANT
Bois-le-Duc
Moerdyke
Oosterhout
Gorcum
Dordrecht
Over Flakkee
Schouwen
Zierikzee
Goedereede
Goerce
Voorne
Brielle
Hellevoet Sluis
Rotterdam
Schiedam
Vlaardingen
Delft
Gouda
Oudewater
STE HOLLAND
The Hague
Scheveningen
Leyden
Braakel
Woerden
UTRECHT
Utrecht
Amersfoort
Zutfen
Lochem
Barchel Veld
GELDERLAND
Harderwyk
Apeldoorn
Yssel
Yselmonde
Culemborg
Vianen
Schoonhoven
Gouda
Oudewater
Woerden
Utrecht
Amersfoort
Zutfen
Arnhem
Nimeguen
Amsterdam
Haarlem
Zaandam
Edam
Purmerend
Beverwyk
Alkmaar
Hoorn
Enkhuysen
Medemblik
Schagen
Helder
Nieuwediep
Wieringen
Stavoren
Sloten
Lemmer
Workum
Warkum
Heerenveen
Sneek
Drachten
Franeker
Leeuwarden
Harlingen
Terschelling
Vlieland
Texel
Den Burg
Ameland
Schiermonnikoog
Delfzyl
Emden
The Dollart
Winschoten
Bourtange
Assen
Meppel
Hoogeveen
Coevorden
Meppen
Zwartsluis
Hasselt
Ommen
Hardenberg
Zwolle
Kampen
Almelo
Oldenzaal
Deventer
Dolden
Hengelo
Enschede
Oosterhout
Wageningen
Arnhem
Doesborgh
Zevenaar
Bredevoort
Bocholt
Emmerich
Nymegen
Cleve
Grave
Goch
Wesel
Gelderen
Venlo
Crefeld
Elberfeld
Barmen
Essen
Düsseldorf
Viersen
Roermonde
Maastricht
Aix la Chapelle
Düren
Bonn
Cologne
Hasselt
Tongres
Liege
Verviers
Eupen
Herve
Spa
Stavelot
Durbuy
Huy
Namur
Dinant
Philippeville
Marche
la Roche
Bastogne
Clerf
Wilz
Sauer
Diekirch
Neufchateau
Bouillon
Sedan
Arlon
Virton
Longwy
Luxemburg
Treves
Moselle
Mezieres
Charleville
Rocroy
Hirson
Oise
Aisne
Chimay
Maubeuge
Avesnes
Beaumont
Cambrai
Arras
Douai
Valenciennes
Lille
Roubaix
Tourcoing
Courtrai
Ypres
Tournai
Ath
Mons
Charleroi
Nivelles
Soignies
Waterloo
Wavre
Louvain
BRUSSELS
BRABANT
Tirlemont
St Trond
Renaix
Oudenarde
Alost
Termonde
Mechlin
Antwerp
ANTWERP
Turnhout
Lierre
Ghent
St Nicolas
Bruges
Ostend
Blankenberghe
Zeebrugge
Sluys
Eccloo
Dixmude
Thielt
Roulers
Thourout
Gand
EAST FLANDERS
WEST FLANDERS
Audenarde
Lessines
Enghien
Leuze
Peruwelz
St Amand
Valenciennes
Bergen op Zoom
Tholen
Beverland
Walcheren
Middelburg
Flushing
ZEELAND
S. Beveland
Western Scheldt
Eastern Scheldt
Tholen
Steenbergen
Rozendaal
Tilburg
Eindhoven
Helmond
NORTH BRABANT
Bois-le-Duc
Moerdyke
Oosterhout
Gorcum
Dordrecht
Over Flakkee
Schouwen
Zierikzee
Goedereede
Goerce
Voorne
Brielle
Hellevoet Sluis
Rotterdam
Schiedam
Vlaardingen
Delft
Gouda
Oudewater
STE HOLLAND
The Hague
Scheveningen
Leyden
Braakel
Woerden
UTRECHT
Utrecht
Amersfoort
Zutfen
Lochem
Barchel Veld
GELDERLAND
Harderwyk
Apeldoorn
Yssel
Yselmonde
Culemborg
Vianen
Schoonhoven
Amsterdam
Haarlem
Zaandam
Edam
Purmerend
Beverwyk
Alkmaar
Hoorn
Enkhuysen
Medemblik
Schagen
Helder
Nieuwediep
Wieringen
Stavoren
Sloten
Lemmer
Workum
Warkum
Heerenveen
Sneek
Drachten
Franeker
Leeuwarden
Harlingen
Terschelling
Vlieland
Texel
Den Burg
Ameland
Schiermonnikoog
Delfzyl
Emden
The Dollart
Winschoten
Bourtange
Assen
Meppel
Hoogeveen
Coevorden
Meppen
Zwartsluis
Hasselt
Ommen
Hardenberg
Zwolle
Kampen
Almelo
Oldenzaal
Deventer
Dolden
Hengelo
Enschede
NORTH HOLLAND
ZUIDER ZEE
DRENTHE
GRONINGEN
FRIESLAND
OVERYSSEL
HOLLAND
ZEELAND
NORTH BRABANT
ANTWERP
LIMBURG
LIEGE
NAMUR
HAINAUT
BRABANT
LUXEMBURG
WEST FLANDERS
EAST FLANDERS
NORTH SEA
The Rhine
Mouths of the Schelde, Maas & Rhine
Long. E. from Greenwich
J. Bartholomew, Edin.

EXERCISES ON THE LESSON.

What is the area of Holland? Population? Size? Capital? How is Holland bounded? How is it divided? Describe its surface. What is said of the canals? Describe the coast-line. What rivers flow through Holland? Trace the whole of their courses on the map. Describe the islands. What is said of the lakes? Of the Salt Lake near Dort? Describe the climate and soil. Industry and manufactures. What is said of Holland? What foreign possessions has it? Where are they situated? Describe the chief cities. Point them out on the map, and state where they are situated. What is the area of Belgium? Population? Size? Capital? How is Belgium bounded? Point out the boundaries on the map. How is it divided? Describe its surface. Its principal rivers. Trace their courses on the map. Describe the coast-line. The climate and soil. What is said of the population and trade of Belgium? Of its mines? What is said of the former position of Belgium? What historical account is given? Describe the chief cities. Where are they situated?

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.

In what direction from Brussels is Antwerp? Ostend? Liege? What is the length of Holland? Of Belgium? Their breadth? What countries adjoin Holland? What sea washes its shores? What countries adjoin Belgium? What large river flows through Holland? What other countries does it flow through or past? How is Amsterdam situated? How is Rotterdam situated? Antwerp? In what direction from Amsterdam is London Brussels?

high water. It is protected from the encroachment of the sea by enormous dykes, or banks faced with stone and wood. Canals, which are numerous, have long formed the chief highways for traffic, but railways now connect the principal points.

The **coast-line** is much broken by the estuaries of the *Rivers Rhine*, *Maas*, and *Scheldt*, which enter the sea by a number of mouths, and form numerous large islands. The principal additional inlets are the *Zuyder Zee*, and the *Dollart*. These were formerly inland lakes, but the sea has broken in upon them. From the mouth of the Zuyder Zee a chain of islands extends north-east along the coast, the principal of which is *Texel*. There are many lakes near the coast, which are gradually being drained. The Salt Lake, near Dort, at the mouth of the Maas, was, in 1440, formed by an inundation of the sea, which destroyed 72 villages, and more than 20,000 persons.

The **climate** is damp and cold, but the soil is rich and productive, and is industriously cultivated. Horticulture has been brought to great perfection; and cattle are reared in large numbers. The manufactures are large and valuable, consisting chiefly of linen and earthenware.

Holland, after throwing off the Spanish yoke, was the foremost commercial nation in the world; but successive wars, and the rivalry of Great Britian and other commercial powers. have greatly diminished its trade.

Its foreign possessions now comprise: *Java*, *Celebes*, the *Moluccas*, or *Spice Islands*, and parts of *Sumatra*, *Borneo*, and *New Guinea*, in the East Indies; *Curaçoa* and several other islands in the West Indies (see page 44); *Surinam*, or *Dutch Guiana*, in South America; and some forts on the coast of Guinea in Africa.

Amsterdam (338,000), the capital, is one of the first commercial cities of Europe. The site of the city is marshy, and the houses are built on piles. It is intersected by canals, crossed by about 300 bridges. *Rotterdam* (142,000) is next in importance and commerce. North of it is "*The Hague*" (123,000), the residence of the Court, and a beautiful city. *Leyden* is celebrated for its university, and for its heroic defense against the Spaniards, in 1573. *Utrecht* is famous for its treaties, and has large woollen manufactures. *Bois le Duc* has linen manufactures. *Haarlem*, *Maastricht*, and *Luxemburg* are important towns.

BELGIUM.

Area, 11,378 square miles; three-fifths the size of Nova Scotia; population, 5,536,000; persons to a square mile, 487.

Belgium is bounded on the north by Holland; on the west by the North Sea; on the south by France; and on the east by Germany and Luxemburg.

It is divided into nine provinces.

The **surface** is in general level. In the south and east the country presents a pleasing variety of gentle eminences and undulating plains.

The principal **rivers** are the *Scheldt*, draining the west, and the *Meuse*, with its tributary the *Sambre*, draining the east; both flow through Holland into the German Ocean. The coast is low, and the country is protected from the sea by sand-hills or dunes.

The **climate** is mild and pleasant: the soil is productive, and most industriously cultivated. Belgium is the most densely peopled country in the world, and has large and important manufactures, chiefly of lace, cambric, and woollens. It also possesses extensive iron and coal mines.

Belgium was at one time the foremost commercial country of Europe, but gave place to Holland, which in turn yielded its supremacy to Great Britain.

Belgium, formerly called Flanders, belonged successively to Burgundy, Austria, Spain, and France. In 1814 it was joined to Holland, forming the Kingdom of the Netherlands. In the Revolution of 1830 it achieved its independence, and in 1831 Leopold of Saxe-Coburg, uncle of Queen Victoria, was elected king.

Brussels (400,000), the capital, is one of the most beautiful cities of Europe, and has a large trade in the manufacture of lace and carpets. Ten miles to the south is the battle-field of Waterloo, where Napoleon was defeated by the British, in 1815. *Antwerp* (160,000) is the most important port, and carries on the largest trade. It was formerly the first city in Europe for commerce, and has a celebrated cathedral. *Ghent* (131,000) and *Bruges* have large cotton manufactures. *Ostend* is an important seaport. *Mons* and *Namur* are important fortified towns: the former has a considerable iron and coal trade; the latter manufactures cutlery and hardware. *Louvain* is the seat of the principal university. *Malines* or *Mechlin* is famous for its lace manufactures. *Liege* (120,000) is the most important iron manufacturing town on the continent.

FRANCE.

Area, 204,096 square miles; about the same size as the province of Quebec; population, 37,672,000; persons to a square mile, 185.

France is bounded on the north by Belgium and the English Channel; on the west by the Bay of Biscay; on the south by Spain and the Mediterranean; and on the east by Italy, Switzerland, and Germany.

Previous to the Revolution in 1789, France was divided into 34 provinces; after that event it was divided into 86 departments, named from the rivers or mountains within their boundaries. In 1860, the Duchy of Savoy and County of Nice were ceded to France by the King of Italy. At the close of the war of 1871, Alsace and part of Lorraine were ceded by France to Germany.

The **surface** of France consists chiefly of undulating

plains, except in the east, which is mountainous. The highest mountains in the south are the *Pyrenees*, forming the boundary between France and Spain, the highest summit being Maladetta or Pic de Nethou (11,168 feet). In the east are the *Alps*, forming the boundary between France and Italy, with Mont Blanc, 15,781 feet above the sea, the highest mountain in Europe; the *Jura Mountains* between France and Switzerland; and the *Vosges Mountains* between France and the lately ceded province of Alsace. To the west of the Jura Mountains is the plateau of Burgundy, from which the *Cevennes* extend south-west, forming the boundary between the basin of the Rhone and the rivers flowing west into the Bay of Biscay. To the west of the central Cevennes chain are the mountains of *Auvergne* and *Forez*.

France may be divided into four great river-basins, all sloping from the mountains in the eastern part of the country to the sea—that of the tributaries of the *Rhine*, the *Moselle*, and the *Meuse*, flowing north; the *Seine*, flowing into the English Channel; the *Loire* and *Garonne*, flowing west from the Cevennes to the Bay of Biscay; and the *Rhone*, flowing south into the Gulf of Lions. The extent of navigable rivers and canals is upwards of 8,000 miles.

France is very compact in territory, and is washed on three sides by the sea. The principal cape is *Cape de la Hogue*, in the north. The principal bays and gulfs are: *St. Michael's Bay*, on the north-west; the *Bay of Biscay*, on the west; and the *Gulf of Lions*, on the south. The only island of importance belonging to it is *Corsica*, which is mountainous, and noted as having been the birthplace of Napoleon Bonaparte. The *Hyères Islands*, near Toulon, in the Mediterranean, are celebrated for the salubrity of their climate. On the north-west is *Ushant;* and in the Bay of Biscay, *Belle Isle*, *Ré*, *Oleron*, etc.

The **climate** of France is one of the finest in Europe, as the country is situated about the middle of the temperate zone. The soil is fertile, and favorable for agriculture, which forms the occupation of three-fifths of the population. Its productions are various: in the north, wheat and grain; in the middle and south, the vine; and in the south, olives, figs, oranges, almonds, and other southern fruits. The wines and brandies of France are celebrated, and are considered to be among the best in the world. Beet-root is extensively cultivated for the manufacture of sugar.

In **manufactures and commerce**, France is one of the first countries in the world, but still much inferior to Great Britain. The principal manufactures are silks, woollens, porcelain, jewelry, articles of fashion, laces, gloves, and fancy wares. Its imports and exports amount to about 1,400,000,000 dollars. France is one of the five great powers of Europe, and maintains a standing army of from 500,000 to 600,000 men, which is kept up by conscription. The annual **revenue** is nearly one-third more than that of Great Britain, and the public debt is the largest in the world.

France has been the scene of many revolutions and changes, commencing with the memorable Revolution of 1789. The present government is republican; but its political affairs are still somewhat unsettled.

In literature and science, France has always held a high position in the world; but popular education was much neglected until Louis Philippe ascended the throne, since which time an extensive and well-organized system has been established under the control of Government. The established religion is the Roman Catholic, but all religions are tolerated, and Protestant clergymen are also paid by the State.

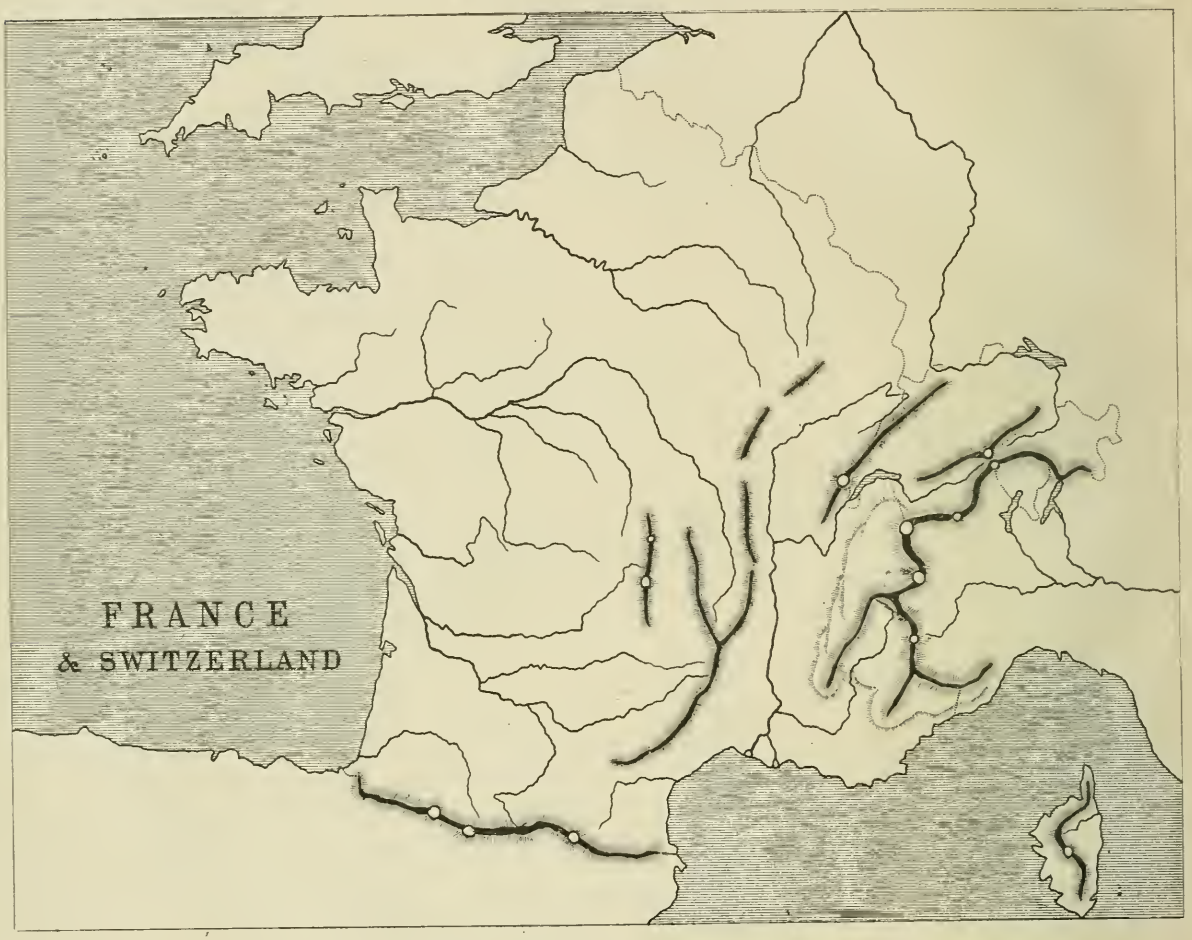
The **foreign possessions** of France are the colony of *Algeria* and the protectorate of *Tunis*, in the north of Africa; *Senegal*, and other settlements in the west; and portions of *Madagascar*, the island of *Réunion*, or *Bourbon*, with some smaller islands, in the Indian Ocean. In Asia, *Yanaon*, *Chandernagore*, *Karikal*, and *Pondicherry*, on the east coast of Hindostan, and *Mahé* on the west; and French Cochin China, and the protectorate of Cambodia. In North America, the islands of *St. Pierre*, *Langley*, and *Miquelon*, off the coast of Newfoundland; *Guadaloupe*, *Martinique*, and other islands, in the West Indies; and *French Guiana*, in South America. In Oceanica, *New Caledonia*, the *Marquesas Islands*, and other settlements.

Paris (2,269,000), the capital, situated on the Seine, is the second largest city in Europe; in architectural splendor and beauty, it ranks first. It was much improved during the reign of the Emperor Napoleon III. It is the great centre for the manufacture of articles of taste and fashion; and is distinguished for the number and high character of its literary, art, and scientific institutions, no less than for its numerous splendid palaces, churches, and places of amusement. Near Paris are *Versailles*, celebrated for its palace and gardens, and *Sèvres*, for porcelain manufactures. *Lyons* (373,000), on the Rhone, the second city in France, is celebrated for its silk manufactures. *Marseilles* (360,000), on the Mediterranean, is one of the oldest and most important cities in Europe. It is the great link of communication between France and the Levant, and is the largest seaport in France. A little to the east is *Toulon*, an important naval port and arsenal. The other seaports are *Bordeaux* (221,000), with a large wine trade, on the Garonne; *La Rochelle*, near the mouth of the Charente; and *Nantes* (122,000), on the Loire, on the west coast; and *St. Malo*, *Havre* (103,000), at the mouth of the Seine, and *Dieppe*, on the north coast. The fortified naval ports are *Cherbourg*, on the north, and *Brest*, *L'Orient*, and *Rochefort*, on the west.

FRANCE
& SWITZERLAND
English Miles
0 20 40 60 80 100
ENGLAND
ENGLISH CHANNEL
Str. of Dover
L. of Wight
Southampton
Dover
Dunkirk
Calais
Boulogne
St Omer
Lille
BELGIUM
Liege
Brussels
PRUSSIA
Coblentz
Frankfurt
GERMANY
Leeds
Lizard Hd.
C. de la Hague
Cherbourg
Alderney
Channel Islands
Guernsey
Sark
Jersey
(to England)
Havre
Rouen
Dieppe
Abbeville
Amiens
Arras
Valenciennes
Cambray
Quentin
Mezieres
Sedan
Luxemburg
Ushant L.
Pt St Matthieu
Brest
St Brieuc
Caen
Falaise
Evreux
Versailles
PARIS
Chartres
Dreux
Alencon
Laigle
Argentan
Avranches
Granville
Mont St Michel
Cancale
St Malo
Dinan
Dol
Fougeres
Mayenne
Laval
Le Mans
Vendome
Romorantin
Orleans
Montargis
Auxerre
Tonnerre
Troyes
Bar sur Aube
Chaumont
Epinal
Nancy
Toul
Verdun
Metz
Strasbourg
Stuttgart
Basle
Zurich
St Gall
Appenzell
Schaffhausen
Constance
Lucerne
Berne
Soleure
Besancon
Dijon
Beaune
Chalons sur Saone
Macon
Bourg
Geneva
Lausanne
Fribourg
Thun
Interlaken
Sion
Martigny
Aosta
Turin
Milan
Genoa
Gulf of Genoa
Nice
Antibes
Cannes
Grasse
Draguignan
Toulon
Marseilles
Aix
Arles
Avignon
Orange
Montelimart
Valence
Grenoble
Chambery
Lyons
Vienne
Roanne
Moulins
Nevers
Bourges
Clermont
Vichy
Limoges
Poitiers
Niort
La Rochelle
Rochefort
Saintes
Angouleme
Perigueux
Tulle
Brive
Cahors
Agen
Montauban
Auch
Toulouse
Carcassonne
Narbonne
Beziers
Montpellier
Nimes
Mende
Rodez
Villefranche
Aurillac
Le Puy
St Etienne
Thiers
Riom
Aubusson
Chateauroux
Issoudun
Tours
Blois
Amboise
Chinon
Saumur
Angers
Nantes
Quimper
Lorient
Vannes
Belle Isle
I. Noirmoutier
I. Dieu
I. d'Oleron
I. de Re
Sables d'Olonne
Les Roches sur Yonne
Fontenay
Bayonne
Biarritz
St Sebastian
Irun
Pau
Tarbes
Lourdes
Oleron
Mont de Marsan
Dax
Bordeaux
Libourne
Bergerac
Sarlat
Figeac
Millau
Milhau
Lodeve
Alais
Uzes
Orgon
Carpentras
Vaucluse
Vaucluse
Digne
Barcelonnette
Briancon
Mt Viso
Susa
Pinerolo
Saluzzo
Cuneo
Coni
Mondovi
Ceva
Savona
Albenga
Ventimiglia
Mentone
Monaco
Corsica
Bastia
Ajaccio
Bonifacio
Capraja
C. Corse
Gulf of Lions
Mouths of the Rhone
Mediterranean Sea
BAY OF BISCAY
SPAIN
Santander
Bilbao
R. Ebro
Mt Perdu
Mt Maladetta
Andorra
Perpignan
Collioure
Port Vendres
C. Creux
Foix
Lavelanet
Limoux
Lezignan
Beziers
Agde
Cette
Frontignan
Montpellier
Nismes
Arles
Tarascon
Aigues Mortes
Martigues
Hyeres
Toulon
Ile d'Hyeres
Draguignan
Frejus
Cannes
Antibes
Nice
Mentone
Monaco
Ventimiglia
Oneglia
Porto Maurizio
Albenga
Savona
Genoa
Gulf of Genoa
Spezia
Carrara
Massa
Lucca
Pisa
Leghorn
Florence
Pistoia
Bologna
Modena
Parma
Piacenza
Milan
Como
Lake Como
Lake Maggiore
Lugano
Bellinzona
Locarno
Domo d'Ossola
Simplon
Monte Rosa
Mont Blanc
Chamonix
Martigny
Aosta
Susa
Turin
Pinerolo
Saluzzo
Cuneo
Coni
Mondovi
Ceva
Savona
Albenga
Ventimiglia
Mentone
Monaco
Nice
Antibes
Cannes
Grasse
Draguignan
Frejus
Toulon
Marseilles
Aix
Arles
Tarascon
Avignon
Orange
Montelimart
Valence
Grenoble
Chambery
Lyons
Vienne
Roanne
Moulins
Nevers
Bourges
Clermont
Vichy
Limoges
Poitiers
Niort
La Rochelle
Rochefort
Saintes
Angouleme
Perigueux
Tulle
Brive
Cahors
Agen
Montauban
Auch
Toulouse
Carcassonne
Narbonne
Beziers
Montpellier
Nimes
Mende
Rodez
Villefranche
Aurillac
Le Puy
St Etienne
Thiers
Riom
Aubusson
Chateauroux
Issoudun
Tours
Blois
Amboise
Chinon
Saumur
Angers
Nantes
Quimper
Lorient
Vannes
Belle Isle
I. Noirmoutier
I. Dieu
I. d'Oleron
I. de Re
Sables d'Olonne
Les Roches sur Yonne
Fontenay
Bayonne
Biarritz
St Sebastian
Irun
Pau
Tarbes
Lourdes
Oleron
Mont de Marsan
Dax
Bordeaux
Libourne
Bergerac
Sarlat
Figeac
Millau
Milhau
Lodeve
Alais
Uzes
Orgon
Carpentras
Vaucluse
Vaucluse
Digne
Barcelonnette
Briancon
Mt Viso
Susa
Pinerolo
Saluzzo
Cuneo
Coni
Mondovi
Ceva
Savona
Albenga
Ventimiglia
Mentone
Monaco
Corsica
Bastia
Ajaccio
Bonifacio
Capraja
C. Corse
Gulf of Lions
Mouths of the Rhone
Mediterranean Sea
BAY OF BISCAY
SPAIN
Santander
Bilbao
R. Ebro
Mt Perdu
Mt Maladetta
Andorra
Perpignan
Collioure
Port Vendres
C. Creux
Foix
Lavelanet
Limoux
Lezignan
Beziers
Agde
Cette
Frontignan
Montpellier
Nismes
Arles
Tarascon
Aigues Mortes
Martigues
Hyeres
Toulon
Ile d'Hyeres
Draguignan
Frejus
Cannes
Antibes
Nice
Mentone
Monaco
Ventimiglia
Oneglia
Porto Maurizio
Albenga
Savona
Genoa
Gulf of Genoa
Spezia
Carrara
Massa
Lucca
Pisa
Leghorn
Florence
Pistoia
Bologna
Modena
Parma
Piacenza
Milan
Como
Lake Como
Lake Maggiore
Lugano
Bellinzona
Locarno
Domo d'Ossola
Simplon
Monte Rosa
Mont Blanc
Chamonix
Martigny
Aosta
Susa
Turin
Pinerolo
Saluzzo
Cuneo
Coni
Mondovi
Ceva
Savona
Albenga
Ventimiglia
Mentone
Monaco
Nice
Antibes
Cannes
Grasse
Draguignan
Frejus
Toulon
Marseilles
Aix
Arles
Tarascon
Avignon
Orange
Montelimart
Valence
Grenoble
Chambery
Lyons
Vienne
Roanne
Moulins
Nevers
Bourges
Clermont
Vichy
Limoges
Poitiers
Niort
La Rochelle
Rochefort
Saintes
Angouleme
Perigueux
Tulle
Brive
Cahors
Agen
Montauban
Auch
Toulouse
Carcassonne
Narbonne
Beziers
Montpellier
Nism

EXERCISES ON THE LESSON.

What is the area of France? Population? Size? Capital? How is France bounded? How is France divided? What parts of the country were ceded to France in 1860? Describe the surface of France. Name the principal mountains, and describe their positions. Into what natural divisions may France be divided? Name the principal rivers. What is said of the rivers and canals? What is said of the outline of France? Of the islands? Of the bays and gulfs? Of the capes? State where they are situated. Describe the climate of France. Its soil, &c. Its productions. For what is it celebrated? What is said of the manufactures and commerce of France? What is said of the army? What is said of the political history of France? What is said of literature and science in France? Name the foreign possessions of France? Where are they situated? Describe the chief cities of France. What is the area of Switzerland? Population? Size? Capital? How is Switzerland bounded? Of what is it composed? Describe the surface. The principal mountain chains. Name the highest mountains. For what are the Alps remarkable? Name the principal rivers. Name the principal lakes. Where are they situated? Describe the scenery of Switzerland. The soil and products. The people—their language and religion. Describe the chief towns.



EXERCISES ON THE MAP.

What large rivers flow into the Bay of Biscay? Into the Mediterranean? Into the English Channel? What is the most westerly island of France called? On what river is Paris situated? What other large cities are situated on its banks? Oh the Rhine? On the Rhone? On the Loire? On the Garonne? What large cities are on the Mediterranean shore? In what direction from Paris is Strasburg? Marseilles? Lyons? Bordeaux? Brest? Rheims? How is Spain separated from France? What is the latitude and longitude of France? How long is it? How is France separated from Germany? From Switzerland? From Italy? From Spain? From England? What large bay is on the west coast? What islands belonging to Britain are off the north-west coast? What large island in the Mediterranean belongs to France?

In the Rhone basin are: *Montpelier*, near the Mediterranean, noted for its salubrious climate; *Nimes*, noted for its old Roman antiquities; *Avignon*, on the Rhone, the ancient residence of some of the Popes; *Dijon*, the centre of the Burgundy wine trade; *Chambery*, the chief town of Savoy, and *Nice*, a favorite health resort.

In the north: *Rouen* (105,000), *Amiens*, *Abbeville*, *Lille* (178,000), and *Rheims* have large woollen and cotton manufactures. Amiens has a fine cathedral, and is memorable for the treaty made there in 1802 between France and England; in the cathedral of Rheims the French kings were usually crowned; near Abbeville is the ancient battle-field of *Crecy*, and farther north that of *Agincourt;* Lille is strongly fortified. *Valenciennes* is celebrated for its lace.

In the basin of the Loire are: *Tours* and *Orléans*, noted for their manufactures of cloth; Orleans is celebrated as the scene of the exploits of Joan of Arc; *St. Etienne* (126,000) is the chief seat of the iron manufactures of France.

Farther south are: *Limoges*, on the Vienne, and *Angoulême*, on the Charente; the latter has some porcelain manufactures. *Toulouse* (137,000), on the Garonne, is where Wellington defeated Soult in 1814; *Pau*, near the Pyrenees, is a favorite resort for invalids; *Bayonne* is where the bayonet was invented; and *Biarritz* is a fashionable watering-place.

SPAIN.

Area, 193,380 square miles; about the same size as Ontario; population, 16,346,000; persons to a square mile, 84.

Spain is bounded on the north by France and the Bay of Biscay; on the west by Portugal and the Atlantic Ocean; on the south and east by the Mediterranean.

It was formerly divided into 14 provinces; but since 1833 it has been subdivided into 48 smaller provinces or governments. Spain is the most mountainous country in Europe, with the exception of Switzerland. The central region is an elevated table-land, occupying about one-half of the whole area of the country, and nearly surrounded by mountains. The principal mountains are the *Pyrenees*, forming the boundary between Spain and France, extending westward under the name of the *Cantabrian* chain, or mountains of Asturias, and terminating in Cape Finisterre on the Atlantic. Farther south, and extending from east to west, are the mountains of *Castile*, the *Sierra Toledo* and the *Sierra Morena;* and on the south coast the *Sierra Nevada*, the highest summit of which is *Mulahacem* (11,680 feet), the most elevated point in the peninsula. Between these chains are large and fertile plains, through which the principal rivers flow, the elevated central plateau forming the boundary between those flowing west and those flowing east; the *Minho*, *Douro*, *Tagus*, *Guadiana*, and *Guadalquivir*, flow west into the Atlantic: and the *Ebro*, *Guadalaviar*, *Xucar*, and *Segura* flow east into the Mediterranean.

The **coast** is bold and mountainous; the principal capes are *Ortegal*, *Finisterre*, and *Trafalgar* (where Nelson fell victorious in 1805) on the west coast; *Cape Tarifa* and *Europa Point* on the south; and Capes *Gata*, *Palos*, *Nao*, and *Creux*, on the east. The islands belonging to Spain are the *Balearic Isles* (including *Majorca*, *Minorca*, *Iviça*, and *Formentera*, and two smaller islands), in the Mediterranean.

The **climate** of Spain varies. In the valleys the heat is excessive; and the high table-lands are alternately subject to scorching hot winds and freezing winter blasts, both destructive to vegetation. The soil is in general rich, but it is poorly cultivated. Olives, figs, vines, oranges, and lemons grow in great abundance. Vast flocks of merino sheep, the wool of which is particularly valuable, are reared on the high lands; and the horses of Andalusia, in the south, are famous. The mines of Spain are also valuable, especially those of iron, lead, and quicksilver; but they are little wrought. The chief exports are fruit, wool, wine, cork, lead, iron pyrites, and grain.

Spain was formerly one of the first powers of Europe, and ruled over a large part of it, besides possessing the greater part of America, from Mexico southwards; but it now ranks as a second-rate power. Of all its vast foreign possessions there now remain only the islands of *Cuba* and *Puerto Rico* in the West Indies, the *Philippine* and *Ladrone* Islands in the Pacific, and the *Canaries* and other small islands off the coast of Africa. It also possesses *Ceuta* and some minor settlements on the north coast of Africa.

The **government**, after the revolution of 1820, was a limited monarchy, but in 1868 Queen Isabella was driven from the throne. After various changes of government, Alfonso, son of the ex-Queen Isabella, became king in 1874, and the government is now a constitutional monarchy. The established religion is the Roman Catholic.

Spain once possessed many universities, but now they are neither numerous nor well attended. Popular education is in a very low state, and the people are very ignorant. Bull-fighting was formerly a favorite amusement, but has now somewhat declined.

Madrid (367,000), the capital, is situated on an elevated plain about 2,000 feet above the sea, near the centre of the country. About 30 miles north-west is the celebrated palace, the Escurial. *Barcelona* (216,000), on the Mediterranean, is the second city in size, but the chief in importance for commerce, wealth, and manufactures. *Seville* (119,000), the former Moorish capital of Spain, on the Guadalquivir, is a large and handsome city. *Cadiz*, on the Island of Leon, is an important naval and commercial port, strongly fortified. *Murcia*, on the Segura, and *Valencia* (153,000), on the Guadalaviar, near the

Mediterranean, have large manufactures of silk. *Malaga*, *Almeria*, and *Alicante*, on the southern coast, largely export fruit. *Xeres*, near the mouth of the Guadalquivir, is celebrated for its sherry wine. *Ferrol*, on the north-west, and *Cartagena*, on the south-east, possess very fine harbors, and are naval stations. Near Ferrol is *Corunna*, with a fine harbor, where Sir John Moore was killed. In the valley of the Douro are *Valladolid*, in former times the capital of the Spanish monarchy; and *Salamanca*, celebrated for its university. On the Tagus is *Toledo*, an ancient city, celebrated for its sword manufactures. On the Guadalquivir is *Cordova*, famous in ancient and mediæval history, under the Romans and the Moors. *Granada*, in the south-east, a former capital of the Moorish kings, contains the celebrated palace of the Alhambra. *Saragossa*, on the Ebro, is noted for its defence against the French in 1808–9. Many of the cities of Spain are celebrated as the scenes of great battles and sieges during the Peninsular War, between Great Britain and France, at the commencement of this century; as Badajoz, Talavera, Ciudad Rodrigo, Salamanca, Vittoria, and others.

Gibraltar, at the extreme south of Spain, is the strongest fortress in the world, and has belonged to Britain since 1704. It is built on a precipitous rock, 1,500 feet high, and has stood three sieges, the last and most memorable of which continued for more than three years (1779–83), against the French and Spanish forces.

PORTUGAL.

Area, 34,606 square miles; about the size of Newfoundland; population, 4,350,000; persons to a square mile, 126.

Portugal occupies the south-western portion of the Iberian Peninsula, and lies between Spain and the Atlantic Ocean. It is divided into six provinces.

Portugal resembles Spain in most of its physical features and productions.

It is traversed by several of the mountain ranges and rivers of Spain. The *Serra d'Estrella*, a continuation of the mountains of Castile, terminate in *Cape de Roca*, the most westerly point of Europe. The *Serra d'Ossa* and *Serra Monchique*, continuations of the Sierra Nevada, terminate in *Cape St. Vincent*, off which Admiral Jervis defeated the Spanish fleet in 1797. The *Douro* and *Tagus* enter the Atlantic in Portugal, and the *Minho* and *Guadiana* form respectively the northern and south-eastern boundaries between Portugal and Spain. The *Mondego* is the only river of importance wholly Portuguese.

The **climate** is delightful, although excessively warm in the valleys; and the soil, like that of Spain, is rich, though poorly cultivated. Vines, oranges, lemons, olives, and figs grow abundantly. The principal exports are port wine, cork, oil, and fruit.

In the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries Portugal was the most enterprising maritime power in Europe. The Portuguese were the first discoverers of the route to India by the Cape of Good Hope, and the first voyage round the world was made by a fleet under Magellan, a Portuguese navigator; but they have now greatly declined, and commerce, manufactures, and agriculture are muchneglected.

The **foreign possessions** remaining to Portugal are *Madeira*, the *Cape Verde Islands*, *Angola*, *Benguela*, *Mozambique*, and other settlements in Africa; *Goa*, and several other settlements in Hindostan; *Macao* and other settlements in China; and *Solor*, *Flores*, and settlements at *Timor*, in the Indian Archipelago. The *Azores Islands* also belong to Portugal. *Brazil*, in South America, formerly in its possession, became independent in 1822.

The **government** is now a limited monarchy, and the established religion the Roman Catholic.

Lisbon (265,000), the capital, is situated on the Tagus, which here widens, forming a magnificent harbor. It is finely situated, but poorly built. It was nearly destroyed by an earthquake in 1755, when 60,000 persons are said to have perished. *Oporto* (108,000), at the mouth of the Douro, is the second city in size and importance, and exports port wine, principally to England. These two cities divide the commerce of the country. *Setubal*, south-east of Lisbon, at the head of the bay of the same name, has large manufactures of salt, and *Coimbra*, on the Mondego, has the only university in the kingdom.

GERMANY.

Area, 208,700 square miles; nearly as large as Quebec; population, 45,234,000; persons to a square mile, 217.

Germany is bounded on the north by the Baltic Sea, Denmark, and the North Sea; on the west by Holland, Belgium, and France; on the south by Switzerland; on the south and south-east by Austria-Hungary; and on the east by Russia.

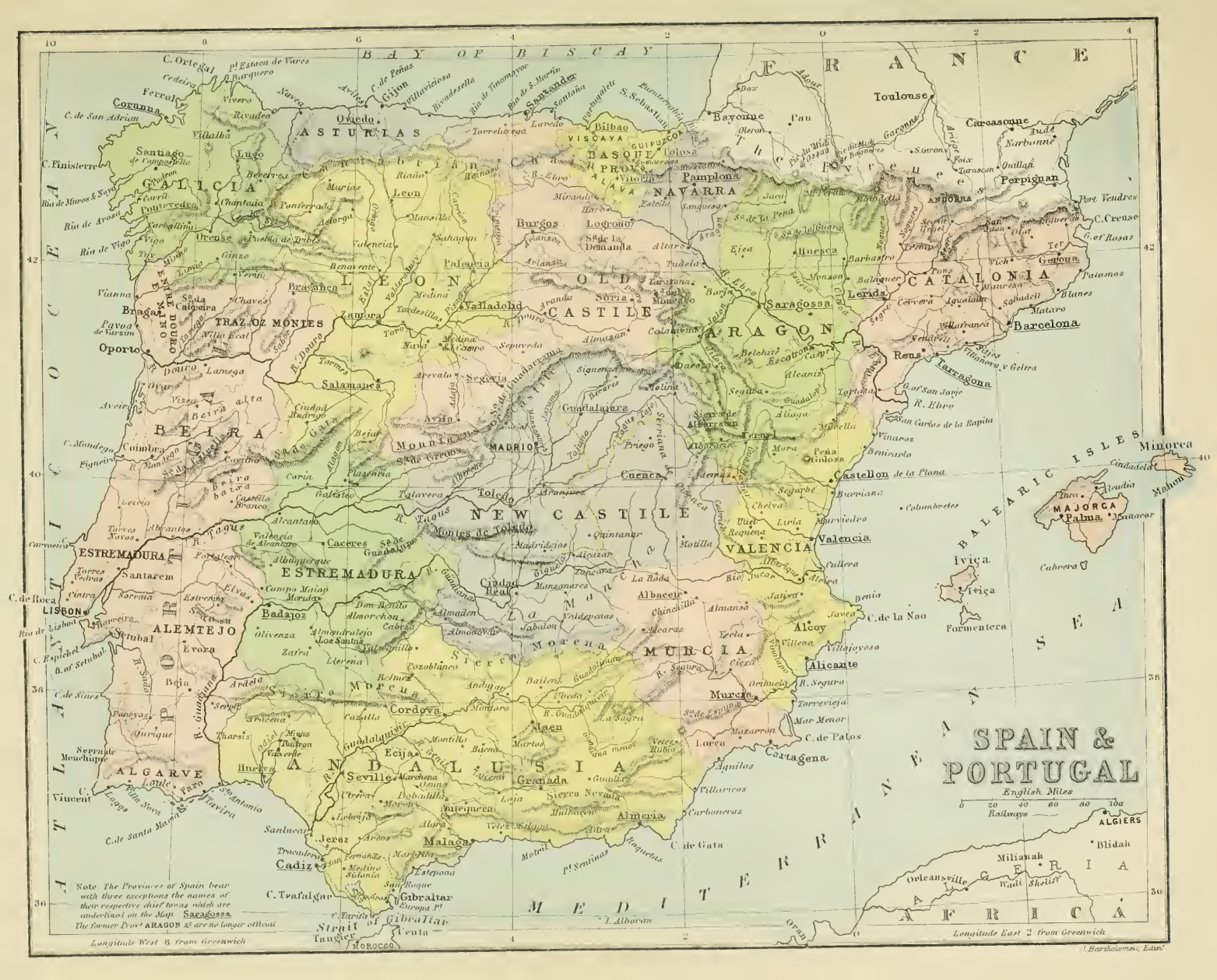
The territory of Germany comprises a large part of Central Europe, and is composed of a number of formerly independent States, which had their own rulers and separate constitutions.

Before the Prusso-Austrian war of 1866, Austria was included in the German Confederation; but after the war she renounced the Confederation, and it came to an end. After the successful termination of the war with France (1871), the remaining States, which are 26 in number, were united under one general government, with William King of Prussia as the first emperor.

These States are:

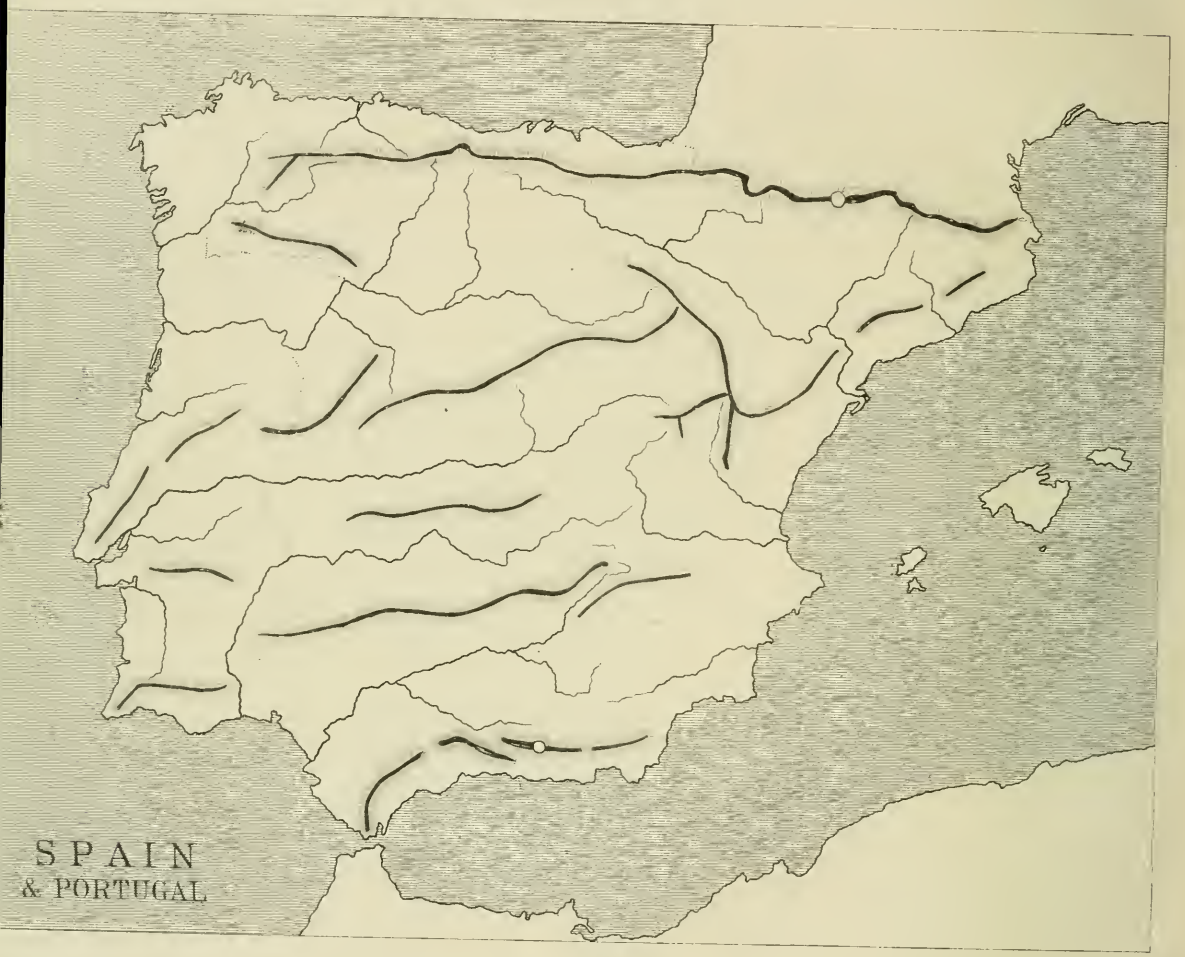
In North Germany—

The Kingdoms of Prussia and Saxony.
The Grand Duchies of Oldenburg, Mecklenburg-Schwerin, Mecklenburg-Strelitz, Saxe-Weimar.
The Principalities of Lippe, Schaumburg-Lippe, Schwartzburg-Rudolstadt, Schwartz-Sonderhausen, Reuss-Schleiz, Waldeck.
The Duchies of Brunswick, Saxe-Coburg-Gotha, Saxe-Meiningen, Saxe-Altenburg, Anhalt.
The Free Cities of Hamburg, Lübeck, and Bremen.


SPAIN & PORTUGAL
English Miles
0 20 40 60 80 100
Railways
BAY OF BISCAY
FRANCE
ATLANTIC OCEAN
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
BALEARIC ISLES
Minorca
Majorca
Palma
Iviça
Formentera
ALGIERS
Blidah
Milianah
Orleansville
Wadi Shellif
ALGERIA
AFRICA
Gibraltar
Tangier
Ceuta
MOROCCO
Strait of Gibraltar
C. Trafalgar
C. de Palos
C. de la Nao
C. de Gata
C. de Roca
C. Finisterre
C. Ortegal
C. de San Adrian
C. Mondego
C. Espichel
C. de Sines
C. de Santa Maria
C. St. Vincent
Cabrera
Toulouse
Carcasonne
Narbonne
Perpinan
Port Vendres
C. Creuse
Bayonne
Pau
Dax
Oleron
Biarritz
Bilbao
Santander
Gijon
Oviedo
Ferrol
Coruna
Santiago
Lugo
Vivero
Rivadeo
Villalba
Navia
Avilés
Cedeira
Pt. Estaca de Vares
Burguero
Villaviciosa
Rivadesella
Ria de Tinamayor
Ria de S. Martin
Laredo
Torrelavega
Santona
Portugalete
S. Sebastian
Fuenterabia
Irun
Tolosa
Vitoria
Pamplona
Tudela
Sanguesa
Jaca
Sos
Ayerbe
Huesca
Barbastro
Monzon
Balaguer
Lerida
Saragossa
Tarazona
Borja
Alagon
Caspe
Reus
Tarragona
Barcelona
Villafranca
Vendrell
Villanova y Geltru
Sabadell
Tarrasa
Manresa
Cervera
Igualada
Vich
Gerona
Palamos
Blanes
Mataro
Olot
Ripoll
Prats
Puycerda
Seo de Urgel
Tremp
Balaguer
Monzon
Barbastro
Fraga
Mequinenza
Flix
Ascó
Miravet
Amposta
Tortosa
Morella
Vinaroz
Benicarlo
Peñiscola
Castellon de la Plana
Burriana
Segorbe
Chiva
Liria
Murviedro
Valencia
Cullera
Alcira
Játiva
Denia
Javea
Alcoy
Villena
Villajoyosa
Alicante
Elche
Orihuela
Murcia
Mazarron
Lorca
Aguilas
Cartagena
Mar Menor
Torrevieja
Cieza
Yecla
Hellin
Chinchilla
Almansa
Albacete
Alcaraz
Tobarra
Tabarca
Requena
Utiel
Cuenca
Huete
Priego
Alcazar
Motilla
Tarancon
Aranjuez
Toledo
Talavera
Trujillo
Caceres
Alcantara
Valencia de Alcantara
Badajoz
Olivenza
Elvas
Campo Maior
Merida
Almendralejo
Zafra
Llerena
Fuente Ovejuna
Pozoblanco
Belmez
Peñarroya
Bujalance
Andujar
Baylen
Guadalquivir
Cordova
Montoro
Lucena
Jaen
Martos
Alcaudete
Priego
Loja
Granada
Sierra Nevada
Guadix
Baza
Huescar
Almeria
Velez Rubio
Velez Malaga
Malaga
Antequera
Archidona
Osuna
Marchena
Ecija
Carmona
Seville
Alcala
Utrera
Dos Hermanas
Lebrija
Jerez
Arcos
Medina Sidonia
Cadiz
Puerto Real
Chiclana
Tarifa
Algeciras
Gibraltar
Europa Pt.
San Roque
Estepona
Marbella
Ronda
Gaucin
Casares
Tarifa
Tangier
Ceuta
Tetuan
Arzila
Larache
Alcazar
Tangier
Morocco
Fez
Mequinez
Rabat
Salé
Mazagan
Azamor
Mogador
Safi
Saffi
Santa Cruz
Agadir
Tarudant
Mogador
Mazagan
Azamor
Rabat
Salé
Mequinez
Fez
Tetuan
Arzila
Larache
Alcazar
Tangier
Ceuta
Gibraltar
Europa Pt.
San Roque
Estepona
Marbella
Ronda
Gaucin
Casares
Tarifa
Algeciras

EXERCISES ON THE LESSON.

What is the area of Spain? Population? Size? Capital? How is Spain bounded? How is it divided? Describe the surface. The principal mountains. Name the principal rivers. Describe the coast-line. Name the principal capes and islands. Where are they situated? Describe the climate of Spain. The soil. Productions. Animals. Minerals. Exports. What did Spain formerly possess? What foreign possessions has it now? Where are they situated? What is said of the government and religion? What is said of education, &c.? Describe the chief cities. Where are they situated? What is said of Gibraltar? Where is it situated? What is the area of Portugal? Population? Size? Capital? How is it situated, and how bounded? How is it divided? What is said of its physical features? What mountains traverse Portugal? What rivers flow through Portugal? Trace their courses on the map. Describe the climate of Portugal. Soil. Products. Exports. What is said of Portugal as a maritime power? Name the foreign possessions of Portugal. Where are they situated? What is said of the government and religion? Describe the chief cities? Where are they situated?



EXERCISES ON THE MAP.

How is Spain separated from Africa? What ocean and sea wash its shores? What other country occupies part of the same peninsula? What islands are off the east coast? What large rivers of Spain flow into the Atlantic? Into the Mediterranean? Where is Madrid situated? What large cities are on the Ebro? Douro? Tagus? Guadiana? Guadalquivir? On the southern coast? On the northern coast? How is Lisbon situated? In what direction from Lisbon is Madrid? Oporto? Cadiz? In what direction from Madrid is Badajoz? Seville? Barcelona? Valladolid? Paris? London? How far from the coast are the Balearic Islands?

In South Germany—

The Kingdoms of Bavaria and Würtemburg.
The Grand Duchies of Baden and Hesse.
The Principality of Reuss-Greiz.
The Empire Province of Alsace-Lorraine.

Saxony and the South German States still retain their own sovereigns, have their Representative Assemblies, though with limited powers, and are nominally independent; but Prussia controls the military forces of the Confederation, and virtually rules the whole. The Federal Parliament meets at Berlin. Many of the States are small, and of little importance.

The *Sudetic* chain of mountains, stretching from the borders of Westphalia to the Carpathian Mountains in Austria, separates Germany into two parts—Northern or Lower Germany, forming part of the great plain formerly mentioned (page 51), and Southern or Upper Germany, diversified by mountains and plains. This chain is called by various names—as the *Hartz Mountains* in Hanover, the *Erz Gebirge* between Saxony and Bohemia, and *Riesen Gebirge* between Prussia and Bohemia. From the junction of the Erz Mountains and the Bohemian Forest the chain extends to the Hartz Mountains, and another smaller chain traverses the table-lands of Bavaria, terminating in the *Black Forest* on the east bank of the Rhine. The highest summits are about 5,300 feet high.

The principal **rivers** are: the *Danube*, rising in the Black Forest, and flowing east into the Black Sea; the *Rhine*, *Weser*, and *Elbe*, flowing north into the North Sea; and the *Oder* and *Vistula*, flowing into the Baltic Sea.

Germany possesses but few seaports; and it is probably owing to this that its commerce has been comparatively little developed.

The **climate** of Germany is temperate; but being chiefly inland, it is more subject to extremes of heat and cold than other countries in the same latitude.

The **soil** in the north and north-east is sandy and marshy, with numerous small lakes; but in the south and west it is very fertile, yielding large quantities of grain for export. The Rhine wines are celebrated; the vineyards on its hilly banks are very picturesque, and the scenery attracts large numbers of tourists. Vast forests still cover large tracts of the country, as the Black Forest, Bohemian Forest, and others.

Germany is rich in minerals. In the Hartz and Erz Mountains are found lead, iron, copper, tin, and other metals. Bavaria is celebrated for its mines of rock-salt, and coal is found in various localities.

The Germans are industrious, and carry on large manufactures; but labor is very poorly paid. Education, especially in Prussia, is carefully provided for, and attendance at school is made compulsory, non-attendance being punished by a fine against the parents. In the north the religion is chiefly Protestant; in the south it is Roman Catholic.

The Federal Government consists of the Emperor, a Federal Council or Bundesrath of 59 members, and an Assembly or Reichstag of 397 members, or about one for each 100,000 inhabitants. All questions of war, peace, diplomacy, and commerce are in the hands of the Emperor, but each State controls its own local affairs.

PRUSSIA.

Area, 134,180 square miles; one-third smaller than the province of Quebec; population, 27,202,000; persons to a square mile, 203.

Prussia is the first country in Germany for size, population, and importance, and is bounded on the north by the Baltic Sea, Mecklenburg, Denmark, and the North Sea; on the west by Holland, Belgium, and France; on the south by some of the smaller German States and Austria; and on the east by Russia.

Its **thirteen provinces** are:

East Prussia.	Schleswig-Holstein.
West Prussia.	Hanover.
Brandenburg.	Westphalia.
Pomerania.	Hessen Nassau.
Posen.	Rhenish Provinces—13.
Silesia.	Hohenzollern.
Saxony.	

The **surface** is in general flat, sloping towards the north. In the south are the *Hartz*, *Riesen Gebirge*, and *Sudetic* chains of mountains; in the north-east it is covered to a great extent with vast sandy and marshy tracts, and numerous small shallow lakes. The rivers are slow and favorable for navigation. The principal are: the *Rhine* and *Elbe*, flowing into the North Sea, and the *Oder*, *Vistula*, and *Niemen*, flowing into the Baltic Sea. None of these rise in Prussia.

The **sea-coast** of Prussia is on the Baltic, with a small portion on the North Sea; opposite the mouths of the rivers, long sand-banks or islands nearly enclose the gulfs called the *Stettiner Haff*, *Frische Haff*, and *Curische Haff*.

The **climate** in the east and north is subject to extremes, but in the western provinces it is milder and more favorable to agriculture. The soil in the west and south is fertile, and all the ordinary grains are raised in sufficient quantities for exportation. The vineyards of the Rhine are celebrated, and tobacco is grown in the south.

Prussia is not rich in minerals; but iron, copper, lead, and coal are found in the mountain ranges. Amber is found on the shores of the Baltic.

The **commerce** of Prussia is large. The principal exports are grain, wool, linen, flax, and Rhenish wines. It has also important linen, woollen, cotton, and iron manufactures.

The **form of government** is an hereditary constitutional monarchy, with Upper and Lower Houses of Representatives; but the King, who is also Emperor of Germany, still possesses great power. The constitution was granted by Frederick William IV. in 1850.

The royal family, and the greater part of the inhabitants, are Protestants, but all religions are equally tolerated. The system of education is very complete, and every child is required by law to attend school.

Berlin (1,118,000), on the Spree, a tributary of the Elbe, is the capital; it is the largest city in Germany, and one of the first in Europe; it is noted for its university. *Potsdam*, near Berlin, is celebrated for its royal palace of Sans Souci, and is the headquarters of the Prussian army. *Wiesbaden*, in the former Duchy of Nassau, is famous for its hot springs. On the Oder are: *Breslau* (239,000), the second city in size and importance, with large woollen and linen manufactures; and *Frankfort*, with large manufactures of cloth and an extensive trade.

On the Elbe are: *Magdeburg*, one of the strongest fortresses in Europe, sacked by Tilly in 1631; *Wittenberg*, where the Reformation began; and *Altona*, the capital of Holstein. *Halle*, on the Saale, a tributary of the Elbe, has a notable university.

On the Rhine are: *Cologne* (154,500), celebrated for its magnificent cathedral, and the principal seat of commerce on the Rhine; *Bonn*, with a university; *Düsseldorf*, an important town and river-port for the cotton and silk manufactures of *Elberfield*, *Barmen*, etc.; *Coblentz*, at the junction of the Moselle with the Rhine, with *Ehrenbreitstein*, on the opposite side of the river, one of the strongest fortresses in Europe; *Bingen*, with a large wine trade; and *Mayence*, a strongly fortified town.

Aix-la-Chapelle, or Aachen, 30 miles west of Cologne, has famous baths, and is noted for the treaties which have been negotiated there. *Treves*, on the Moselle, is the most ancient town of Germany, with many old Roman remains. *Frankfort-on-the-Main* (135,000) does a large banking business.

The principal seaports are: *Stettin*, at the mouth of the Oder, noted for its grain trade; *Dantzic* (103,000), at the mouth of the Vistula, noted for its foreign commerce; *Königsberg*) 123,000), on the Pregel; *Memel*, at the entrance of the Curische Haff, with exports of grain and timber; *Kiel*, on the Baltic, and *Flensborg*, in Schleswig.

In the former kingdom of Hanover are: *Hanover* (128,000), the capital; *Gottingen*, with a university; and *Emden*, the chief seaport.

MINOR GERMAN STATES.

Saxony is situated between Prussia, Austria, and Bavaria. *Dresden* (221,000), its capital, is a handsome city, the centre of the arts and literary institutions of Northern Germany. It has a notable museum, library, and gallery of pictures. At *Meissen*, 15 miles from Dresden, the celebrated Dresden china is manufactured. *Leipsic* (127,000) is distinguished for its book-fairs, its university, and for the defeat of Napoleon in 1813.

In **Brunswick** and **Saxe-Coburg-Gotha**, between Saxony and the former kingdom of Hanover, are situated respectively the cities of *Brunswick* and *Coburg*.

In **Mecklenburg-Schwerin**, between Holstein and Pomerania, is *Rostock*. It has a large library and university, once belonged to the Hanseatic League, and is still an important seaport.

Oldenburg, with its capital Oldenburg, is in the west of Hanover.

In **Saxe-Weimar**, west of Saxony, is *Weimar*, celebrated as having once been the residence of Goethe, Schiller, and other eminent literary men at the court of the Grand Duke.

Hamburg (348,000), on the Elbe, is the principal seaport and most important commercial city of Germany. *Bremen* (111,000), on the Weser, is the principal port for foreign commerce. *Lübeck* (45,000) is an important seaport on the Trave, near the Baltic. These free cities belonged to the old Hanseatic League.

In **Bavaria**, which lies west of Austro-Hungary, is *Munich* (200,000), the capital, on the Isar, a tributary of the Danube. It is a large and beautiful city, with attractive galleries of painting and sculpture, besides literary institutions of note. *Augsburg*, where the Protestant Confession of Faith was presented to Charles V., and *Ratisbon*, are important towns. *Nuremberg* and *Bamberg* are manufacturing towns.

In **Würtemburg**, which is west of Bavaria, *Stuttgart* (107,000), the capital, is near the Neckar.

In **Baden**, west of Würtemberg to the Rhine, is *Karlsruhe*, the capital, a beautiful city. *Heidelberg* is renowned for its university. *Baden* is a fashionable watering-place. *Mannheim*, at the confluence of the Neckar and Rhine, has a large trade.

Hesse lies north of Baden. *Darmstadt* is the capital. At *Worms*, Luther appeared before the Diet.

Alsace, chief city *Strasburg*, and **Lorraine**, chief city *Metz*, were wrested from France in the war of 1871.

AUSTRO-HUNGARY.

Area, 240,400 square miles; larger than Quebec: population, 37,800,000 persons to a square mile, 157. The population of Hungary alone is 13,700,000.

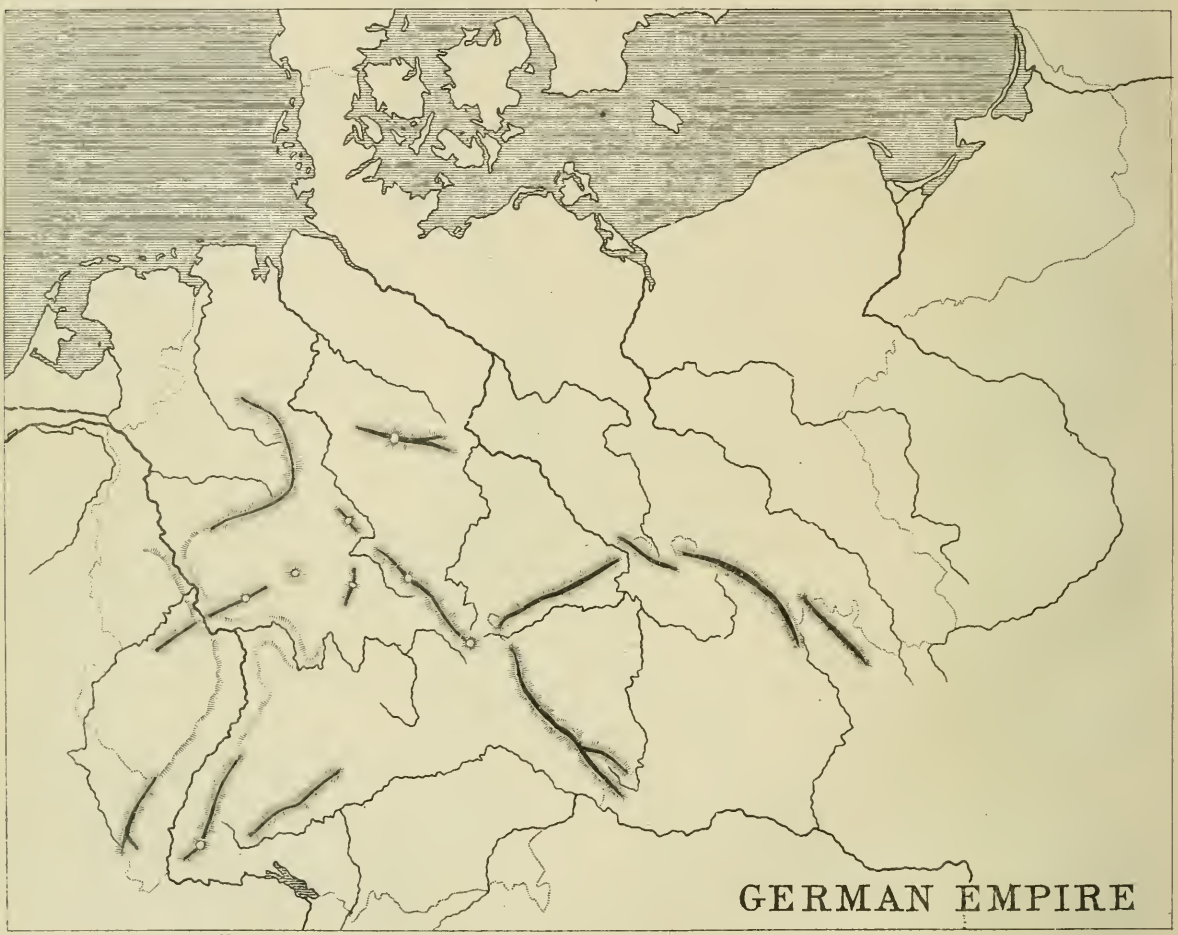
The **Austro-Hungarian Monarchy** is bounded on the north by Russia, Prussia, and Saxony; on the west by Bavaria, Switzerland, and Italy; on the south by Italy, the Adriatic Sea, Turkey, Servia, and Roumania; and on the east by Roumania and Russia.

It is one of the five great powers, but has, during the last few years, lost considerable territory, and much of its former prestige in contests with France, Italy, and Prussia.

GERMAN EMPIRE
DENMARK
SWEDEN
RUSSIA
NORTH SEA
BALTIC SEA
COPENHAGEN
Zealand
Funen
SCHLESWIG-HOLSTEIN
HANOVER
Westphalia
Rhine Province
Hesse-Nassau
Thuringia
KINGDOM OF SAXONY
Brandenburg
BERLIN
Pomerania
Western Prussia
Eastern Prussia
Posen
Silesia
BRESLAU
DRESDEN
Leipzig
Hamburg
Bremen
Lübeck
Rostock
Stettin
Danzig
KÖNIGSBERG
Memel
Gulf of Danzig
Gulf of Pillau
Frisian Islands
Heligoland
Bornholm
Rügen
Moen
Falster
Malmö
Elsinore
Kiel
Kiel Bay
Eckernförde
Flensburg
Tondern
Husum
Tönning
Cuxhaven
Emden
Leer
Groningen
Leeuwarden
Texel
Zuyder Zee
AMSTERDAM
Zwolle
Arnhem
Utrecht
Rhine R.
Oldenburg
Osnabrück
Minden
Hanover
Brunswick
Magdeburg
Celle
Lüneburg
Stendal
Potsdam
Brandenburg
Frankfurt
Bromberg
Thorn
Graudenz
Marienwerder
Elbing
Pillau
Tilsit
Memel R.
Niemen R.
Pregel R.
Vistula R.
Bug R.
Warthe R.
Netze R.
Oder R.
Elbe R.
Weser R.
Ems R.
Rhine R.
Moselle R.
Main R.
Danube R.
Inn R.
Lech R.
Isar R.
Neckar R.
Saale R.
Havel R.
Spree R.
Warsaw
POLAND
Galicia
Cracow
Lemberg
Posen
Gnesen
Kalisz
Lissa
Glogau
Liegnitz
Görlitz
Breslau
Oppeln
Ratibor
Königshütte
Beuthen
Gleiwitz
Rybnik
Tarnowitz
Neisse
Glatz
Schweidnitz
Waldenburg
Hirschberg
Rosenberg
Lublinitz
Kempen
Rawicz
Wreschen
Gnesen
Inowrazlaw
Wongrowitz
Wreschen
Samter
Meseritz
Bomst
Schwiebus
Crossen
Züllichau
Sorau
Guben
Cottbus
Luckenwalde
Jüterbog
Wittenberg
Torgau
Zerbst
Dessau
Bernburg
Aschersleben
Halberstadt
Quedlinburg
Wernigerode
Nordhausen
Eisleben
Sangerhausen
Merseburg
Weissenfels
Naumburg
Zeitz
Altenburg
Gera
Plauen
Zwickau
Chemnitz
Freiberg
Annaberg
Meiningen
Coburg
Hildburghausen
Suhl
Ilmenau
Gotha
Erfurt
Weimar
Jena
Eisenach
Fulda
Hersfeld
Marburg
Siegen
Wetzlar
Limburg
Wiesbaden
Frankfort
Hanau
Aschaffenburg
Würzburg
Bamberg
Bayreuth
Erlangen
Fürth
Nuremberg
Amberg
Weiden
Eger
PRAGUE
BOHEMIA
Moravia
Bohemian Forest
Böhmer Wald
Regensburg
Ratisbon
Straubing
Landshut
Passau
Ingolstadt
Donauwörth
Augsburg
Ulm
Günzburg
Memmingen
Kempten
Lindau
Constance
Lake of Constance
Rosenheim
Salzburg
Salzach R.
Inn R.
Danube R.
Iller R.
Lech R.
Isar R.
Neckar R.
Main R.
Moselle R.
Rhine R.
Ems R.
Elbe R.
Oder R.
Vistula R.
Warthe R.
Netze R.
Bug R.
Pregel R.
Niemen R.
Memel R.
Kurisches Haff
Frisches Haff
Stettiner Haff
Pomeranian Lakes
Mecklenburg Lakes
Plauer See
Müritz
Schwerin
Ludwigslust
Parchim
Neustrelitz
Prenzlau
Angermünde
Eberswalde
Potsdam
Spandau
Charlottenburg
Frankfurt
Königsberg
Landsberg
Soldin
Arnswalde
Pyritz
Stargard
Greifenberg
Cammin
Treptow
Stolp
Lauenburg
Rügenwalde
Köslin
Schlawe
Dramburg
Neustettin
Konitz
Schwetz
Strasburg
Mlawa
Neidenburg
Johannisburg
Lötzen
Angerburg
Insterburg
Tilsit
Labiau
Pillkallen
Gumbinnen
Darkehmen
Ragnit
Tapiau
Wehlau
Allenstein
Soldau
Lyck
Marienwerder
Marienburg
Dirschau
Elbing
Braunsberg
Frisches Haff
Frische Nehrung
Kurische Nehrung
Kurisches Haff
Memel
Libau
Windau
Mitau
Riga
Dünaburg
Wilna
Kowno
Grodno
Brest-Litowsk
Pinsk
Kalisch
Konin
Turek
Sieradz
Lask
Petrikau
Radom
Ivangorod
Warsaw
Vistula R.
Bug R.
Narew R.
Pilica R.
Bzura R.
Wartha R.
Prosna R.
Obra R.
Lausitzer Neisse R.
Bober R.
Queis R.
Katzbach R.
Weisse Elster R.
Pleisse R.
Saale R.
Unstrut R.
Werra R.
Fulda R.
Lahn R.
Sieg R.
Ruhr R.
Lippe R.
Ems R.
Weser R.
Aller R.
Leine R.
Oker R.
Fulda R.
Eder R.
Diemel R.
Main R.
Tauber R.
Jagst R.
Kocher R.
Neckar R.
Enz R.
Nagold R.
Kinzig R.
Murg R.
Alb R.
Wutach R.
Aare R.
Reuss R.
Limmat R.
Thur R.
Töss R.
Glatt R.
Aach R.
Salzach R.
Inn R.
Iller R.
Lech R.
Isar R.
Danube R.
Rhine R.
Moselle R.
Saar R.
Nahe

EXERCISES ON THE LESSON.

What is the area of Germany? Population? Size? How is it bounded? What does it comprise? How is it divided? Describe the mountains of Germany. Name the principal rivers. What states do they flow through? What is said of the sea-coast? Of the climate? Of the soil and products? Of the minerals? Of the people, education, and religion? Describe the positions of the principal states. Describe the principal cities. In what state is each? How are they situated? What is the area of Prussia? Population? Size? Capital? How bounded? What is said of its shape, &c.? Describe the surface. The mountains. Where are they situated? Name the principal rivers. Where do they rise? Describe the coast-line of Prussia. The gulfs. The climate. The soil and products. The minerals The commerce and exports. The manufactures. To what does Prussia owe its position? What is said of the government? Describe the chief towns.



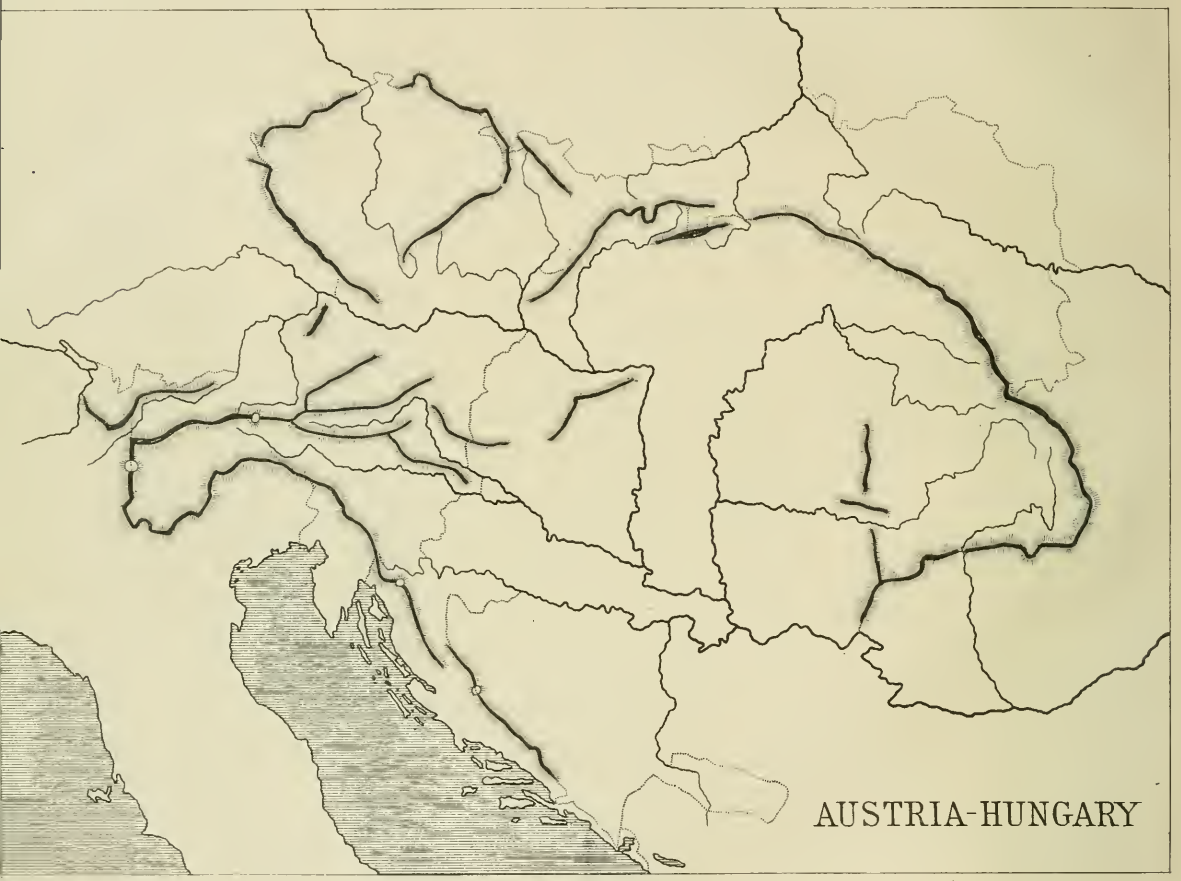
EXERCISES ON THE MAP.

Which countries of Germany are in the north? Which in the south? How is Germany separated from France? What large river flows through Germany into the Black Sea? Through what countries does it flow? What rivers flow northwards? Which is the largest country in Germany? Which next? How is Munich situated? What large cities are on the Rhine? How is Hamburg situated? What large cities are on the Elbe? How is Bremen situated? Lubeck? Schleswig-Holstein, and Lauenburg? What states are comprised in Prussia? What countries adjoin Prussia? What large cities belonging to Prussia are on the Baltic? On the Rhine? On the Oder? On the Elbe? What river and mountains separate Prussia from Southern Germany? How is Berlin situated? In what direction from Berlin is Breslau? Cologne? Danzig? Munich? Stuttgart? Dresden? Hamburg? Frankfort-on-Main? Brussels?—(see Europe.) Paris? London?

AUSTRIA-HUNGARY
HUNGARY
BOHEMIA
MORAVIA
SILESIA
GALICIA
BUKOWINA
TRANSYLVANIA
CROATIA & SLAVONIA
SLAVONIA
CROATIAN & SLAVONIAN FRONTIER DISTRICTS
DALMATIA
BOSNIA
HERZEGOVINA
SERVIA
ROUMANIA
MONTENEGRO
CARNIOLA
CARINTHIA
STYRIA
UPPER AUSTRIA
LOWER AUSTRIA
SALZBURG
TYROL
VENETIA
ISTRIA
GERMANY
POLAND
RUSSIA
ITALY
BAVARIA
SAXONY
VIENNA
PESTH
BUDA
MUNICH
GORITZ
TRIESTE
FIUME
AGRAM
ADRIATIC SEA
English Miles
0 50 100 150

EXERCISES ON THE LESSON.

What is the area of Austria? Population? Size? Capital? How is it bounded? What is said of the importance of Austria? What are its divisions? Describe the surface of Austria. Describe the principal mountain chains. Where are they situated? Describe the principal rivers. What countries do they flow through? Name the lakes of Austria, and state where they are situated. What is said of the coast-line of Austria? Of the climate? Of the soil and products? Of the mines? Of the manufactures? Of the inhabitants? Of Italy? Of the military power of Austria? Of the government? Religion and education? Describe the chief cities. Where are they situated?



EXERCISES ON THE MAP.

What countries adjoin Austria? How is it separated from Turkey on the east? On the south? How is it separated from Northern Germany and Poland? How is Vienna situated? What other large cities are on the Danube? How is Prague situated? What seaport belongs to Austria? On what sea is it? In what direction from Vienna is Pesth? Prague? Trieste? Innsbruck? Cracow? Berlin? Munich? Nuremberg? Paris? —(see Europe.) London? Where does the Danube leave Austria? Point out and give the boundaries of Bohemia. Of Moravia. Of Transylvania. Of the Tyrol. Of Vorarlberg. Of Galicia. Is there any other province of Galicia? What country adjoins Switzerland on the west? On the north? On the south? What large towns are on the Rhine? How is Zurich situated? Lucerne? Geneva?—(see France.) In what direction is Geneva from Paris?—(see Europe.) Berne from Strasburg? Berne from London?

Although it has, through the influence of its ascendant rival, Prussia, been excluded from all connection with the political division of Europe called Germany, still, as most of the inhabitants of the western portion of the Empire speak German and are of German descent, it is divided into German, or Cisleithan Austria, or Austria Proper, and Transleithan, or Hungarian Austria.

The German part is mountainous. The Sudetic chain extends along the northern frontier, and Bohemia and Moravia are almost enclosed by mountains. The Alps, in the south, extend from the Tyrol in two chains, in a north-easterly and south-easterly direction; the *Noric Alps*, towards Vienna; and, farther south, the *Carnic* and *Julian Alps* extend into Turkey. The *Carpathian Mountains* extend from near Vienna in a circular direction, enclosing Hungary and Transylvania, and separating them from the province of Galicia, and from the kingdom of Roumania on the east and south. A few of the summits rise to the height of 9,500 feet. On the north they are abrupt and precipitous, but on the south they slope more gradually into Hungary, which forms a vast plain, almost surrounded by mountains.

The principal **river** of Austria is the *Danube*, which flows in an easterly and south-easterly direction through the country, receiving the *Inn*, *Drave*, and *Save* from the Alps, and the *March*, *Waag*, and *Theiss* from the northern mountains. The *Elbe*, *Oder*, and *Vistula* rise in Austria and flow through Prussia into the Baltic Sea.

Austria possesses no **coast-line** except on the Adriatic Sea, and has fewer ports than any of the other great countries of Europe.

The **climate**, owing to the inland position of the country, is more subject to extremes than other countries of Europe in the same latitude. North of the Carpathians it is subject to the greatest extremes, and in Hungary it is warmest; while in the mountain regions it varies according to the elevation.

The **soil**, especially in the south and east, is fertile, producing corn and wine abundantly. Wheat is largely exported, and Hungary produces the celebrated wine, Tokay. Agriculture forms the chief occupation of the inhabitants, but is not in such an advanced state as in the west of Europe.

The **mines** of Austria are very valuable, producing almost every metal; iron, copper, and lead are found in great quantities, as well as gold, silver, and quicksilver; also coal. The salt mines near Cracow are of some note, and are probably the largest in the world.

Commerce, owing to the small extent of the sea-coast, is limited; and **manufactures**, considering the vast resources of the country, are small. Glass, woollens, and linens in Bohemia are the chief manufactures.

Austria comprises under its Government nations speaking various languages, and differing in laws, manners, and customs. They are generally Germans in the west, Hungarians in the east, and Sclavonians in the north and south. Jews are numerous. The Zingari, or Gipsies, are a wandering race, existing chiefly in the Hungarian and Polish provinces.

A large portion of Northern Italy was formerly under the domination of Austria; but in the war of 1859 Lombardy was transferred to Italy; and in 1866 Venetia was annexed to the same kingdom.

The **military force** of Austria is large, being computed, when on the peace footing, at 284,000 men. The revenue of the country is about three-fourths of that of Great Britain.

The **form of government** is an hereditary monarchy, with the Emperor as head. The monarchy is divided into the Austrian State and Hungarian State, each having its own legislature and ministry. The Roman Catholic is the prevailing religion, but all forms of religion are tolerated. Education is carefully provided for by Government.

Vienna (1,020,000), the capital of the Empire, is situated on the Danube, and is one of the first cities in Europe for science, literature, and refinement. It is an elegant city, possesses a famous university, and carries on the chief trade of the country. *Prague* (190,000), the capital of Bohemia, is the second city of Austria. It has a university, and is celebrated in European history.

In **Moravia** are the important fortresses *Olmütz* and *Troppau*; *Brünn*, with large woollen manufactures; and *Austerlitz*, famous as the scene of Napoleon's victory in 1805.

In **Styria**, *Grätz* (86,000) has a large iron trade. *Salzburg* is celebrated for its salt manufacture.

In the **Tyrol** are *Trent*, where the famous Catholic Council was held in 1545; *Innsbruck*, an important town with a university; *Klagenfurt* and *Laybach* are important manufacturing towns.

In **Hungary** are *Pesth* and *Buda*, on opposite sides of the Danube, forming one city, with a population of 270,000. It is now the capital of Hungary. *Presburg*, also on the Danube, was once the capital.

Lemburg (87,000) is the capital of **Galicia**. *Cracow* (50,000) was the former capital of Poland, and has a university and a splendid cathedral, where the Polish kings were crowned, and many of them buried. *Klausenburg*, *Hermannstadt*, and *Kronstadt* are large and important towns in Transylvania. *Trieste* (109,000), the chief Austrian seaport, and *Fiume*, the seaport for the Hungarian provinces, are both on the Adriatic Sea.

Under the treaty of Berlin (1878), the Turkish provinces of **Bosnia** and **Herzegovina** are occupied and administered by Austro-Hungary. Area, about 27,000 square miles; population, 1,158,000. The capital is Serajevo, or Bosna Serai (21,000).

SWITZERLAND.

Area, 15,990 square miles; about four-fifths the size of Nova Scotia; population, 2,846,000; persons to a square mile, 178.

Switzerland is bounded on the north by Germany; on the west by France; on the south by Italy; and on the east by Austria.

It is a Republic, consisting of twenty-two cantons united under one federal government.

It is the most mountainous country in Europe; two-thirds of the surface being covered with mountains, and the remainder consisting of an elevated plain. The Jura Mountains, on the west, separate it from France, and in the south and east are the celebrated Alps. These form several distinct chains, the most southerly being the *Pennine Alps*, extending south-west, and the *Rhætian* or *Tyrolese Alps*, east; a little farther north are the *Bernese Alps*, on the west, and the *Helvetian Alps*, extending north. In the Pennine Alps are the highest summits, Mont Blanc, 15,781 feet; Monte Rosa, 15,217 feet; and the Matterhorn or Mont Cervin, 14,630 feet. In the Bernese Alps the Jungfrau rises 13,720 feet, and Finsteraarhorn, 14,130 feet. Mont St. Bernard is celebrated for its convent, and its breed of sagacious dogs. The Alps are remarkable for their numerous glaciers, or vast fields of ice, filling the higher valleys between the mountains; they are estimated at more than 400 in number. These form the sources of many of the large rivers of Europe; as the *Rhone* and *Ticino* flowing south; the *Aar*, *Rhine*, and *Inn* flowing north.

Switzerland is also famed for its numerous and beautiful lakes, *Geneva*, *Neufchatel*, *Constance*, *Lucerne*, *Zurich*, etc.

The **scenery** of Switzerland is most varied and beautiful, rendering it the favorite resort of tourists. Enormous rugged snow-capped mountains, with huge precipices, glaciers, dashing waterfalls, and frequent avalanches, form a striking contrast to the peaceful scenes in the valleys, with their picturesque chalets, waving fields of grain, orchards ripening under a southern sun, and the deep clear lakes almost hidden by the mountains.

The **soil** of Switzerland varies greatly with the locality, and wherever it is possible, it is industriously cultivated. The valleys yield grain, wine, and various fruits, and the mountains give pasturage to herds of cattle and goats. The manufactures are chiefly cottons and woollens, with a large trade in watches.

The Swiss are a brave, industrious, and frugal people, and are famed for their love of liberty. They speak the French, Italian, or German language, according to the country they border upon. Three-fifths of the population are Protestants, and the remainder Roman Catholics

Berne (36,000), on the Aar, the chief town of the largest canton, is also the seat of the Federal Diet. *Geneva* (47,000) is beautifully situated on the lake of the same name, and has important manufactures of watches and jewelry. *Basle* (45,000) and *Schaffhausen* on the Rhine, and *Zurich* on the lake of the same name, carry on the principal commerce. *St. Gall* is a manufacturing town. *Neufchatel* has clock and watch manufactures. *Lucerne* is charmingly situated on the lake of that name.

ITALY.

Area, 114,420 square miles; more than half the size of the Province of Quebec; population, 28,459,000; persons to a square mile, 255.

Italy is bounded on the north by Austria and Switzerland; on the west by France and the Mediterranean; on the south by the Mediterranean; and on the east by the Adriatic Sea and Austria.

Prior to the year 1859, it comprised eight separate States, some independent, and others under the power of Austria, but is now united into a single independent State, the Kingdom of Italy.

The **Kingdom of Italy** comprises Piedmont and Lombardo-Venetia, the former Duchies of Tuscany, Lucca, Parma, and Modena, the Island of Sardinia, the Papal States, and the Kingdom of Naples, including the Island of Sicily. The kingdom has only been formed since the war and revolutions of 1859-61, when France and Sardinia defeated the Austrians and gained Lombardy; Garibaldi gained Naples and Sicily, and the other States voluntarily annexed themselves to Sardinia, Victor Emmanuel, King of Sardinia, becoming the first King of Italy. Savoy and Nice, formerly belonging to Sardinia, were at the same time ceded to France. In 1866, Austria was compelled, after a short war, to cede Venetia to the new kingdom.

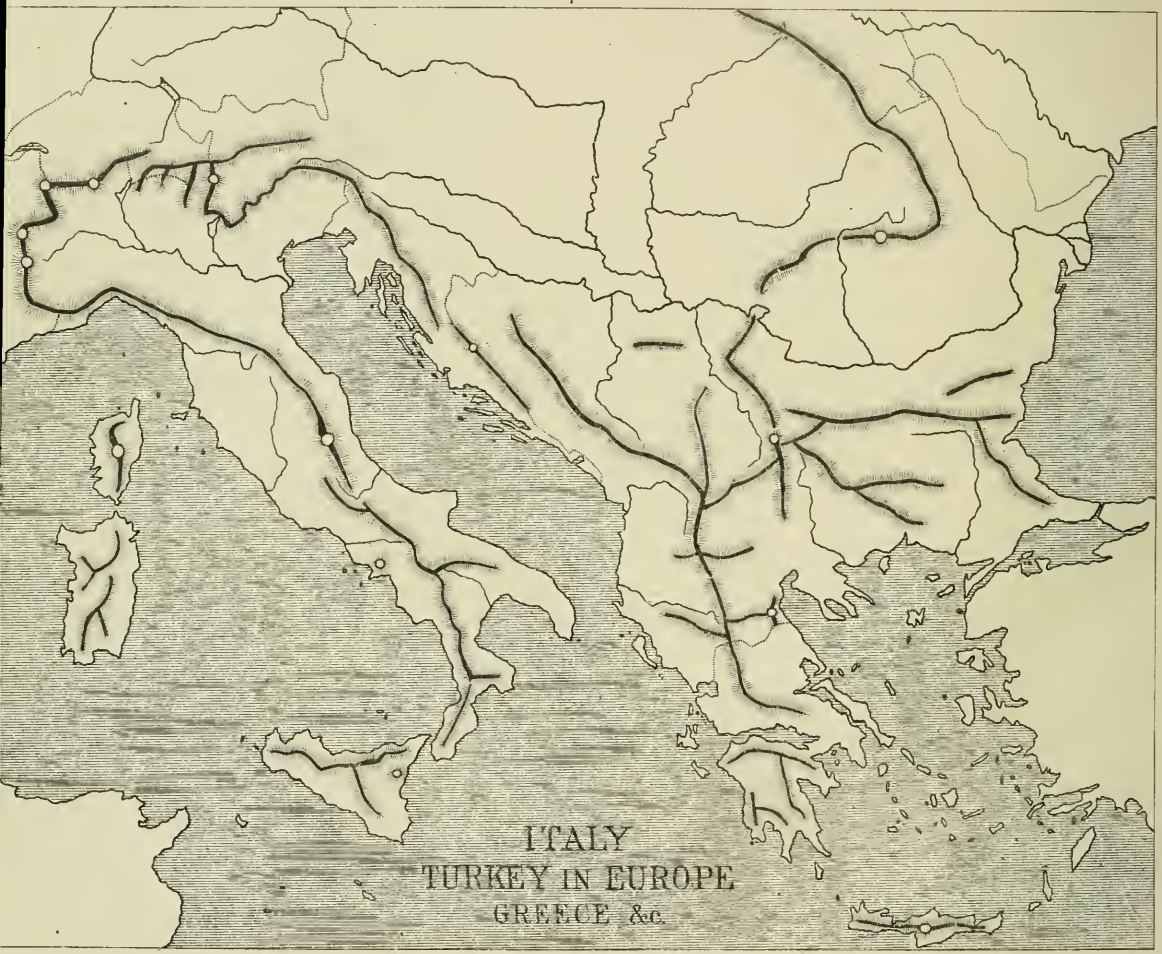
Italy is a long, narrow peninsula, much resembling a boot in shape. Its **surface** is much diversified, presenting every variety of rich and varied landscape. The Alps curve round it on the north and north-west, and the Apennines extend from the Maritime Alps, the southern extremity of the Pennine Alps, through the entire length of the peninsula, rising in the south to the height of about 9,500 feet. These mountain chains divide the country into three parts: the large fertile plains of Piedmont and Lombardy in the north, between the Alps and Apennines; and the eastern and western slopes from the Apennines to the sea.

Italy is well watered by **rivers**, and their basins are remarkably fertile. The principal are the *Po*, with its tributary the *Ticino*, and the *Adige*, flowing into the

ITALY,
TURKEY IN EUROPE
AND GREECE.
English Miles
0 50 100 150 200
Longitude East 20 from Greenwich
J. Bartholomew Edinr.
AUSTRIA
RUSSIA
SWITZERLAND
TURKEY
GREECE
ITALY
Tyrrhenian Sea
ADRIATIC SEA
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
AEGEAN SEA
AFRICA
ASIA MINOR
The Alps
Carpathians
Eastern Carpathians
Balkans
Mt. Blanc
Mt. Cenis
Mt. Viso
Mt. Rosa
Matterhorn
Simplon
St. Gothard
Splügen
Brenner
Ortler
Stelvio
Maloja
Berne
Innsbruck
Zurich
Coire
Lake of Constance
Lake Como
Lake Maggiore
Lake Garda
Lake Iseo
Lake Lugano
Lake Orta
Lake Varese
Lake Trasimeno
Lake Bolsena
Lake Bracciano
Lake Vico
Lake Fucino
Lake Celano
Lake Scutari
Lake Ochrida
Lake Prespa
Lake Janina
Lake Copais
Lake Trichonis
Lake Vistonis
Lake Bistonis
Lake Koronia
Lake Beyshehr
Lake Van
Lake Urmia
Lake Aral
Lake Balkash
Lake Baikal
Caspian Sea
Black Sea
Sea of Azof
Sea of Marmora
Archipelago
Ionian Islands
Cyclades
Sporades
Crete
Candia
Corfu
Cephalonia
Zante
Santa Maura
Ithaca
Lemnos
Mitylene
Khios
Smyrna
Rhodes
Karpathos
Cerigo
Malta
Sicily
Sardinia
Corsica
Elba
Balearic Islands
Minorca
Majorca
Ivica
Formentera
Tunis
Algiers
Bona
Constantine
Oran
Tlemcen
Fez
Tangier
Gibraltar
Ceuta
Tetuan
Melilla
Mascara
Tiaret
Laghouat
Biskra
Tuggurt
Ghadames
Mourzouk
Ghat
Ghadamis
Sahara
Atlas Mts.
Rif Mts.
Kabylia
Aures Mts.
Jebel Nefusa
Jebel Gharian
Jebel Akhdar
Gulf of Sidra
Gulf of Gabes
Gulf of Hammamet
Gulf of Tunis
Gulf of Bougie
Gulf of Stora
Gulf of Arzeu
Gulf of Oran
Gulf of Cadiz
Gulf of Cartagena
Gulf of Valencia
Gulf of Lyons
Gulf of Genoa
Gulf of Spezia
Gulf of Naples
Gulf of Salerno
Gulf of Manfredonia
Gulf of Venice
Gulf of Taranto
Gulf of Policastro
Gulf of Squillace
Gulf of Eufemia
Gulf of Gallipoli
Gulf of Otranto
Gulf of Arta
Gulf of Lepanto
Gulf of Corinth
Gulf of Athens
Gulf of Volo
Gulf of Salonika
Gulf of Contessa
Gulf of Saros
Gulf of Xeros
Gulf of Kisamos
Gulf of Candia
Gulf of Mirabello
Gulf of Sitia
Gulf of Kolpos
Gulf of Adalia
Gulf of Makri
Gulf of Scala Nova
Gulf of Kos
Gulf of Rhodes
Gulf of Macri
Gulf of Fethiye
Gulf of Satalia
Gulf of Iskanderun
Gulf of Ayas
Gulf of Smyrna
Gulf of Mitylene
Gulf of Enos
Gulf of Kavalla
Gulf of Orfano
Gulf of Monte Santo
Gulf of Cassandra
Gulf of Salonika
Gulf of Volo
Gulf of Zeitun
Gulf of Arta
Gulf of Patras
Gulf of Lepanto
Gulf of Corinth
Gulf of Athens
Gulf of Nauplia
Gulf of Kolokythia
Gulf of Koron
Gulf of Messenia

EXERCISES ON THE LESSON.

What is the area of Greece? Population? Size? Capital? How is eece bounded? Describe the surface. What celebrated mountains are in eece, and where are they situated? What islands belong to Greece? here are they situated? Name the principal gulfs and capes? Where are y situated? Describe the climate. The soil and products. Exports. dustry and manufactures. What is said of the political history of Greece? r what is Greece interesting? Describe the chief towns. Where are they nated? What is the area of Italy? Population? Size? Capital? How t bounded? Of what is it composed? Describe the surface. How do mountains divide the country? What is said of the rivers of Italy? me the principal. Describe the coast-line. Name the principal gulfs and ys. Name the principal capes and straits. Where are they situated? scribe the principal islands. Where are they situated? Describe the nate of Italy. Soil and products. Minerals. Manufactures. What is said of Italian associations? How has the kingdom of Italy been formed? What is the form of government? Describe the chief cities. Where are they situated? Where is Malta situated? To whom does it belong? Describe the chief town. What is the area of Turkey? Population? Size? Capital? What does Turkey comprise? How is it bounded? What provinces belong to Turkey? Where are they situated? Describe the surface of Turkey. The principal mountain chains. Describe the principal rivers. What are the principal lakes? Where are they situated? Describe the chief features of the coast. Where are they situated? What islands belong to Turkey? Where are they situated? Describe the climate. The soil and products. What is said of commerce? Of the government? Of the people? Of the religion? Describe the chief towns. Where are they situated?



EXERCISES ON THE MAP.

How is Italy separated from France? From Switzerland? From ustria? What sea washes the east coast of Italy? How is this sea conected with the Mediterranean? How is Sicily separated from Italy? How Rome situated? What famous city is on the Adriatic? Where is Turin uated? Milan? Florence? In what direction from Rome is Naples? alermo? Venice? Florence? Turin? Paris?—(see Europe.) London? Berin? Vienna? What country does the Strait of Otranto separate Italy from? hat is the northern part of the Adriatic called? Name the principal seaorts of Italy on the Mediterranean. What country adjoins Greece on the north? What large island lies to the south-east of Greece? From what country does the Archipelago separate Greece? How is Athens situated? Sparta? Corinth? Corfu? Draw as well as you can a map of Greece, showing its shape, principal capes, islands, &c. What countries adjoin Turkey on the north? On the south? How is Turkey in Europe separated from Turkey in Asia? How is Turkey separated from Austria? From Italy? How is Constantinople situated? In what direction from Constantinople is Athens? Rome?

Adriatic through the northern plains; the *Arno* and *Tiber*, flowing west into the Mediterranean. North of the Po, at the foot of the Alps, are the beautiful *Lakes Como*, *Lugano*, *Maggiore*, *Garda*, etc.

The **coast** is irregular, and indented with many fine gulfs and bays, of which the principal are the *Gulfs of Genoa* and *Gaeta*, *Bay of Naples*, and *Gulf of Salerno*, on the west coast; the *Gulf of Taranto* on the south; and the *Gulf of Venice* on the east, at the head of the Adriatic Sea. The principal capes are *Passaro*, on the south of Sicily, and *Spartivento* and *Leuca*, the southern points of the mainland. The *Strait of Messina* separates Sicily from Calabria, the *Strait of Bonifacio* is between the islands of Sardinia and Corsica, and the *Strait of Otranto* is between the south-eastern extremity of Italy and Turkey.

The **islands** belonging to Italy are: *Sardinia*, the inhabitants of which are chiefly agriculturalists, and have also important fisheries of anchovy and sardines. *Sicily*, the largest and most fertile island in the Mediterranean, separated from the mainland by the Strait of Messina. In the east is *Mount Etna*, the largest European volcano, nearly 11,000 feet high. *Elba*, on the west coast of Italy, between Corsica and the mainland, the first place of banishment of Napoleon. The *Lipari Islands*, north of Sicily, with *Stromboli*, called the Lighthouse of the Mediterranean, from its volcano, which is always burning.

The **climate** of Italy is delightful, but on the west coast, between the Island of Elba and the Gulf of Gaeta, the heat of summer causes malaria from the marshes, rendering large tracts of the country uninhabitable. These tracts are called the *Maremma*, *Pontine Marshes*, and the *Campagna*. The soil is very fertile. Rice, wheat, and maize are extensively cultivated, and vines, olives, oranges, and lemons are abundant. Italy possesses few minerals, but is celebrated for its fine marbles and alabaster. Silks are manufactured in the north, and are almost the only manufacture of consequence.

Although till 1859 disunited and unsettled, Italy is famous as having been the seat of the old Roman Empire, the mistress of the world in former ages, and it possesses many interesting classic remains of its former grandeur, forming an ample and interesting study to the traveller and scholar. It was also the seat of several of the most powerful commercial republics of the Middle Ages, Venice, Genoa, etc., and is still celebrated as being the great centre of fine arts, painting, sculpture, music, and architecture.

The **government** is a limited monarchy, and is formed upon the model of that of Britain. The Roman Catholic is the established religion, but all others are tolerated. There are a number of large cities, most of them celebrated in history, in various parts of the kingdom.

In the former **Papal States**: *Rome* (300,000), the capital, on the Tiber, formerly the mistress of the world, although sadly decayed, possesses magnificent remains of its former grandeur, and is still celebrated for its splendid buildings, and for the architectural beauty of its old ruins. The Pope, although no longer a temporal sovereign, still holds his court in Rome. *Civita Vecchia* is its seaport.

In **Piedmont**: *Turin* (213,000), formerly the capital of the kingdom of Sardinia, a fine city, with extensive trade, noted for its silk manufactures; *Genoa* (179,000), the chief seaport of Italy, with important manufactures of silks and velvets, formerly the capital of a powerful republic of the same name; *Spezia*, the chief naval station, with an excellent harbor.

In **Lombardy**: *Milan* (321,000), which does a large trade, is a beautiful city, with a magnificent cathedral of white marble; *Bergamo*, *Brescia*, and *Piacenza* are important towns; *Parma* and *Modena*, the former capitals of duchies, and *Bologna* (123,000), with the oldest university in Italy, are important inland towns.

In **Venetia**: *Venice* (130,000) was long the head of a powerful commercial republic. It is built on a number of islands, canals forming the streets and gondolas the carriages, and it contains many fine buildings. *Padua*, with a celebrated university, and *Vicenza* are large and important towns. *Verona*, *Peschiera*, *Mantua*, and *Legnago* form the famous "quadrilateral," or chain of fortresses to repel foreign invasion.

In **Tuscany**: *Florence* (168,000), surnamed "the beautiful," is a magnificent city, and has long been celebrated as a seat of science and art, and for its splendid galleries of painting and sculpture; it was formerly the head of a republic of the same name; *Pisa*, with its famous leaning tower; and *Leghorn* (97,000), an important seaport. *Ancona* is a fortified seaport on the Adriatic, and near it is *Loretto*, with its famous shrine.

In **Naples** is *Naples* (489,000), the largest city in Italy, surpassing every city in Europe for the beauty of its situation and appearance. About ten miles from the city is the volcano of Vesuvius, 4,000 feet high, near which are the remains of the ancient cities of Herculaneum and Pompeii, which have been buried in lava and ashes since A.D. 79, and are now being excavated.

In the **Island of Sicily** are: *Palermo* (225,000), a fine city, with a great commerce; *Messina* (120,000), the principal commercial city; *Catania* (101,000), with manufactures of silk; *Syracuse*, famous for its ancient greatness, and memorable in history; and *Marsala*, noted for its wines. *Cagliari* is the chief port of the Island of Sardinia.

The **Island of Malta**, to the south of Sicily, belongs to Great Britain. *Valetta* is the capital, and the chief station for the British fleet in the Mediterranean.

GREECE.

Area, 24,977 square miles; about the same size as Nova Scotia; population, 1,980,000; persons to a square mile, 79.

Greece, anciently termed Hellas, is bounded on the north by Turkey; on the west and south by the Mediterranean; and on the east by the Grecian Archipelago.

The surface consists of a succession of gentle hills and valleys, well adapted for cultivation. In the northern part are the celebrated mountains *Parnassus* and *Helicon*.

There are no rivers of importance in Greece. The country is almost intersected by the *Gulf of Lepanto* on the west, and the *Gulf of Ægina* on the east. The southern part is called the *Morea*, or ancient Peloponnesus, and is joined to the mainland by the *Isthmus of Corinth*. Greece also possesses numerous bays and islands. Of the latter, the principal are the *Ionian Islands* on the west coast, including *Corfu*, *Santa Maura*, *Ithaca*, *Cephalonia*, *Zante*, and *Cerigo*. They were formerly under the protection of Britain, but were given up to Greece in 1864. On the east coast are *Negropon* or *Eubœa*, and the *Cyclades*.

The principal gulfs are: *Lepanto*, *Nauplia*, and *Ægina*. The most southerly points of Greece are *Capes Matapan*, *Malio* (or *Malea*), and *Colonna*.

The climate is delightful, and the soil fertile, producing in abundance grapes, oranges, lemons, and all southern fruits. The Ionian Isles export large quantities of currants. Owing to the long unsettled state of the country, agriculture has made little progress. Manufactures are few, and the means of internal communication are indifferent.

Previous to 1829, Greece was subject to Turkey. It then achieved its independence, and in 1832 elected Otho of Bavaria to be king. He was deposed in 1862; and in 1863, William, the son of the present King of Denmark, was elected in his stead, under the title of George I.

At the Berlin Conference (1880) a strip of territory belonging to Turkey, lying along the then northern boundary of Greece, and containing an area of about 5,162 square miles, with a population of about 300,000, was awarded to Greece. After some resistance and delay on the part of Turkey, it was finally handed over to Greece in 1882.

Although small in territory, and now of little political importance, Greece possesses much interest on account of the magnificent remains of its ancient monuments, and the remembrance of its former greatness. Almost every spot is classic ground, as the scene of some remarkable event in its ancient history, when it held the first rank among the nations of the world.

Athens (68,000), the capital, owes its chief interest to its past greatness. It has only now the remains of its ancient magnificence. *Nauplia*, at the head of the gulf of the same name, possesses a fine harbor and fortress, and is a considerable seaport. *Navarino*, in the south-west, is memorable for the destruction of the Turkish navy in 1827 by the combined fleets of England, France, and Russia. *Corinth* and *Sparta*, both in the Morea, were once renowned cities. *Patras* (34,000), also in the Morea, is an important seaport near the entrance to the Gulf of Lepanto. *Corfu* (15,500), on the island of the same name, is the capital of the Ionian Islands.

TURKEY IN EUROPE.

Area, 125,980 square miles; about two-thirds the size of Ontario; population, 8,630,000; persons to a square mile, 68.

Turkey, or the Ottoman Empire, comprises possessions in Europe, Asia, and Africa. European Turkey is bounded on the north by Austria, Servia, and Roumania; on the west by Austria, Montenegro, and the Adriatic Sea; on the south by Greece, the Archipelago, and the Sea of Marmora; and on the east by the Black Sea. By the Treaty of Berlin (1878), considerable changes were made in European Turkey. Servia, Roumania, and Montenegro, which had been tributary provinces, were made independent. Bulgaria was erected into a tributary self-governing principality, and East Roumelia into a tributary self-governing province; and Bosnia and Herzegovina were put in the occupation and under the administration of Austro-Hungary. European Turkey now, therefore, consists of Turkey proper (area, 63,880 square miles; population, 4,490,000), Bulgaria, East Roumelia, and Bosnia and Herzegovina.

Turkey is a mountainous country, although diversified with rich and fertile valleys and extensive plains. The principal mountains are the *Balkan*, extending from east to west through the centre of the country. From the west end of that range the *Dinaric Alps* extend north-west, and the *Pindus Mountains* south; and from about the middle of the same range, the *Despoto* or *Rhodope Mountains* stretch south-east, and another chain north-west, to the Carpathians, meeting them at the Iron Gate on the Danube.

The principal lakes are *Scutari* and *Ochrida*.

The chief features of the coast are the *Gulfs of Saloniki*, *Contessa*, and *Saros*, in the south; and the *Sea of Marmora*, connected with the Archipelago by the *Dardanelles*, and with the Black Sea by the *Bosphorus*.

Most of the European islands in the Archipelago belong to Greece, but Turkey possesses *Crete* or *Candia* (the ancient Creta), *Lemnos*, etc., besides a number of others more generally considered as belonging to Asia.

The government is a despotism, the Sultan being the head of the State, with the Grand Vizier as prime minister, and Pachas as governors of the provinces. There is no aristocracy, all preferment depending on the will of

the Sultan. Only about 700,000 of the whole population are pure Turks, though about 3,500,000 are Mohammedans; the remainder consists of a mixture of the Greek, Bulgarian, and Sclavonic races, belonging mostly to the Greek Chuch. The Turks are very ignorant, education with them being little more than the reading of the Koran, which may be said to constitute their religion, laws, and literature. Reforms have, however, been introduced, and some progress is being made in educating the people.

Constantinople (600,000), the capital, one of the largest cities in Europe, is beautifully situated on the Bosphorus, or Strait of Constantinople, and possesses a magnificent harbor, called the "Golden Horn." The city presents a splendid appearance from the water, owing to its numerous mosques, glittering domes, and graceful minarets; but the interior is poorly built and dirty. The houses are in general built of wood, and the streets are narrow. Constantinople was formerly the capital of the eastern division of the Roman Empire, but was taken by the Turks in 1453. *Adrianople* (60,000), on the Maritza, is the second city in importance, and was formerly the capital of the Ottoman Empire. *Gallipoli*, on the Dardanelles, and *Saloniki* (75,000) (the ancient Thessalonica) are important seaports.

Bulgaria is bounded on the north by Roumania; on the south by Turkey proper and East Roumelia; on the east by the Black Sea; and on the west by Servia. Area, 24,660 square miles; population, 2,000,000 The capital is *Sophia* (20,000). Bulgaria contains the famous fortresses of *Widdin*, *Rustchuk*, *Silistria*, *Schumla*, and *Varna*.

East Roumelia lies south of Bulgaria, on the other side of the Balkans. Area, 13,860 square miles; population, 815,500. The capital is *Philippopolis* (24,000). The country along the south of the Balkans and the valley of the Maritza is famous for its rose gardens, and exports large quantities of the attar or oil of roses.

Bosnia and Herzegovina lie between Austro-Hungary on the north, Montenegro on the south, Servia on the east, and Dalmatia on the west. Area, 23,580 square miles; population, 1,326,000. The capital is *Serajevo* or *Bosna-Serai* (21,000).

ROUMANIA.

Area, 50,175 square miles; population, 5,376,000; persons to a square mile, 107.

Roumania is bounded on the north and west by Austro-Hungary and Servia; on the south by Bulgaria; and on the east by Russia and the Black Sea. It consists of Wallachia and Moldavia, formerly tributary provinces of Turkey, but by the Treaty of Berlin (1878) it was declared independent, and that portion of Bulgaria lying between the Danube and the Black Sea, called the Dobrudscha, was added to it. In 1881 it was erected into a kingdom.

The country consists of fertile plains, sloping from the Carpathian Mountains to the valley of the Danube. The **climate**, however, is subject to extremes, being intensely hot in summer and cold in winter. The principal wealth of the country consists in its cattle, sheep, and horses, of which immense numbers are raised on its extensive pasture lands.

The **rivers** are numerous, being all tributary to the *Danube*, which flows along the southern boundary and empties itself into the Black Sea by several mouths. The other principal rivers are the *Pruth*, forming in part of its course the boundary between Moldavia and Russia; the *Sereth*, running through Moldavia, and the *Aluta* through Wallachia.

The people are a mixed race, formed by the amalgamation of Trajan's Roman colony with the original Dacian population. The language, known as Wallachian, is mainly derived from the Latin. The Greek Church is the dominant religion, but Jews are very numerous, amounting to about 400,000.

The chief cities are *Bucharest* (177,600), the capital; *Jassy* (90,000), the chief city of Moldavia; and *Galatz* (80,000), at the confluence of the Danube, Sereth, and Pruth, the great centre of commerce and emporium of trade for the whole kingdom.

SERVIA.

Area, 18,758 square miles; population, 1,700,211; persons to a square mile, 91.

Servia is bounded on the north by Austro-Hungary; on the west by Bosnia; on the south by Turkey; and on the east by Roumania and Bulgaria. It is a principality governed by an hereditary prince. It was formerly tributary to Turkey, but was made independent, with added territory, in 1878, by the Treaty of Berlin.

The country is mountainous, with extensive heath and forest lands. The soil is fertile, but agriculture and commerce are backward. The principal exports are pigs, cattle, grain, and oak and other woods. The people are Sclavonians; and the dominant religion is the Greek Church. *Belgrade* (27,600) is the capital.

MONTENEGRO.

Area, 3,487 square miles; population, 236,000; persons to a square mile, 68.

Montenegro is a small mountainous country lying south of Herzegovina, on the Adriatic Sea. It was formerly tributary to Turkey, but was made independent, with additional territory, by the Treaty of Berlin (1878). The people are hardy mountaineers, distinguished for their bravery. They are governed by an hereditary prince, and a State Council, or legislature, one-half of whom are chosen by the prince, and the other half elected by the people. *Cettinge* (1,400) is the capital.

THE HIMALAYAS.

ASIA.

Area, including Malaysia, about 17,213,380 square miles, about one-third of the land surface of the globe; greatest extent from east to west, 5,200 miles, and from north to south, 5,300 miles; population, about 795,000,000.

Asia is bounded on the north by the Arctic Ocean; on the west by the Ural Mountains, Ural River, Caspian Sea, Mount Caucasus, Black Sea, Sea of Marmora, Mediterranean, and the Red Sea; on the south by the Indian Ocean; and on the east by the Pacific Ocean.

It is the largest and most populous of the great divisions of the globe, and is particularly interesting as having been the first abode of man, and the scene of most of the important events recorded in the Bible.

Its great **physical features** are as remarkable as its extent, the rivers being of great length, and only equalled by some of the largest in America; while its mountains are the highest in the world, and its high table-lands are nowhere equalled for their vast extent or height above the sea.

The two great chains of the *Himalaya* and *Altai Mountains*, extending across the broadest part of the continent from west to east, under various names, form the most striking feature of the continent, and divide it into three regions,—viz., a great northern plain, sloping towards the Arctic Ocean, through which the *Obi*, *Yenisei*, and *Lena* rivers flow; a central mountainous region, which is subdivided by other mountain chains; and a southern slope towards the Indian Ocean, divided into three great peninsulas. Between the two great ranges the slope is mainly eastward, and this vast valley contains the minor parallel chains of the *Thian Shan*, *Kuenlun*, and *Karakorum* or *Mustagh*, and the mountains of China, forming the basins of the great rivers *Amoor*, *Hoang-ho*, and *Yang-tse-kiang*; a smaller western slope is shown by the course of the *Amoo* and *Sir*, flowing into the Sea of Aral. From the Himalayas and their continuations east and west is a southern slope, as shown by the courses of the rivers *Mekong* or *Camboja*, *Saluen*, *Irrawady*, and others in Farther India; the *Ganges*, *Brahmaputra*, and *Indus*, in Hindostan; and the *Tigris* and *Euphrates* in Asiatic Turkey.

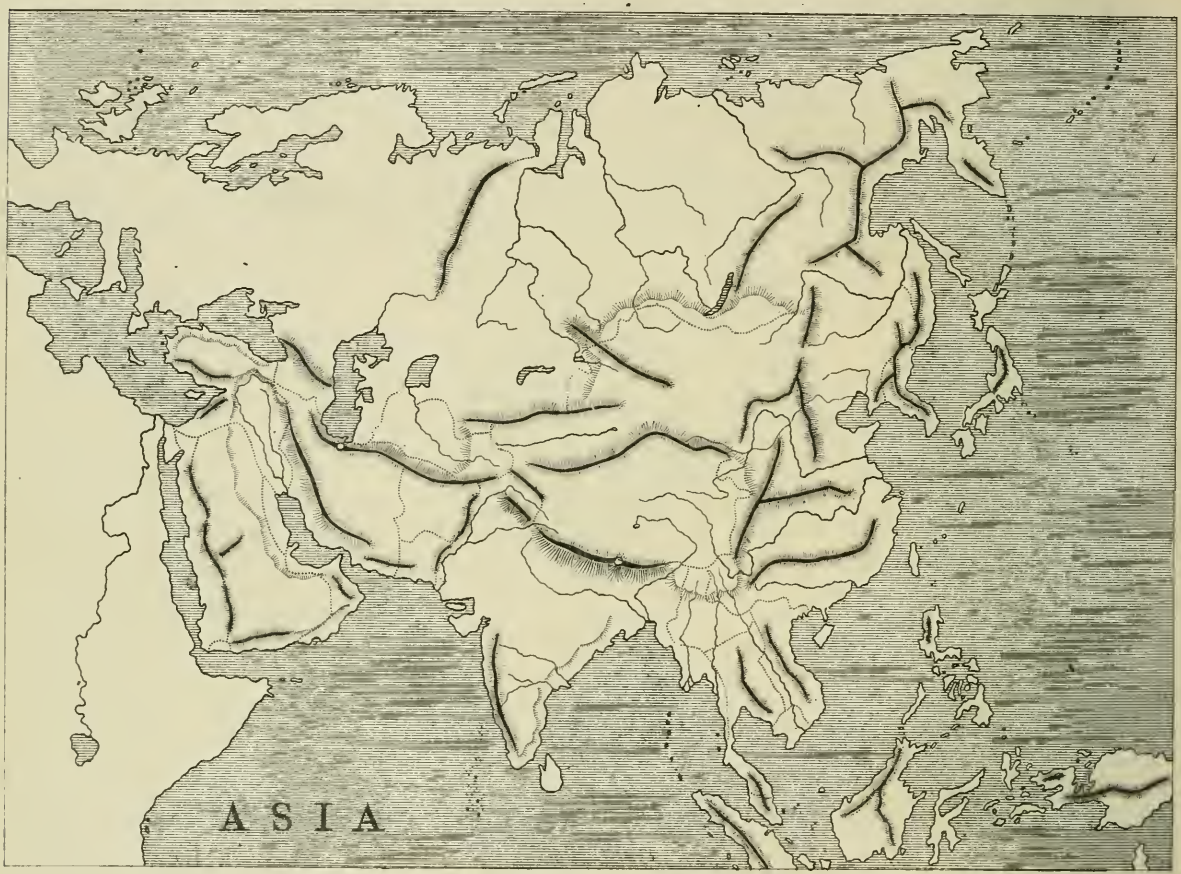
Besides the great chains already mentioned are the Yunling Mountains, between China and Thibet; the *Hindoo Koosh*, a prolongation of the Karakorum range, running along the north-westerly boundary of Kafiristan into Afghanistan; the *Elburz* range, extending from the Hindoo Koosh to the southern extremity of the Caspian Sea; the mountains of *Armenia*, among which is the celebrated Mount Ararat; the parallel chains of the *Taurus* and *Anti-Taurus Mountains*, in Asia Minor; and from the eastern extremity of the Taurus range, the mountains of *Lebanon* extend southward in two ranges along the coast of the Mediterranean, and are continued by smaller chains to the Sinaitic Mountains, at the head of the Red Sea.

The **Himalayas** are the highest mountains of Asia and of the world, about one hundred and twenty of their peaks rising over 20,000 feet in height. *Mount Everest* is 29,002 feet, and *Kanchinjinga* 28,156 feet high. The *Karakorum* or Mustagh range is another stupendous chain, scarcely inferior to the Himalayas in magnitude.

ARCTIC OCEAN
EUROPE
RUSSIA IN EUROPE
SIBERIA
RUSSIA
ASIA
CHINESE EMPIRE
MONGOLIA
TURKEY
TURKESTAN
PERSIA
AFGHANISTAN
ARABIA
INDIA
TIBET
CHINA
JAPAN
KOREA
BURMA
SIAM
PHILIPPINE ISLANDS
BORNEO
EAST INDIA ISLANDS
SUMATRA
JAVA
AUSTRALIA
PACIFIC OCEAN
INDIAN OCEAN
BAY OF BENGAL
ARABIAN SEA
RED SEA
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
BLACK SEA
CASPIAN SEA
Sea of Okhotsk
Japan Sea
Yellow Sea
China Sea
Celebes Sea
Arafura Sea
Behring Sea
Aleutian Is.
Kirghiz Country
Great Desert of Gobi or Shamo
Tropic of Cancer
Equator
English Miles

EXERCISES ON THE LESSON.

What is the area of Asia? The extent? Population? How is it bounded? For what is Asia interesting? What is said of its physical features? What great mountain chains intersect the country? How do they divide it? Describe the other mountain chains. What is said of the height of the mountains? What is said of the rivers? What is said of the table-lands? What is said of the coast-line of Asia? Name the principal peninsulas. Name the principal islands. Name the principal seas and gulfs. Name the principal capes. What is said of the climate of Asia? Of the seasons? Of the soil? Of the productions? Of the animals? Of the minerals? Of the manufactures? Of the inhabitants? Name the countries of Asia. What is the area of Russia in Asia? Population? Size? How is it bounded? How is it divided? What is said of its extent, &c.? Describe the surface of Siberia. Describe the principal mountains and rivers. Where are they situated? Name the principal lakes. What notable physical feature does Siberia possess on the east? Point it out on the map. Describe the principal islands belonging to Russia in Asia. What is said of the climate of Siberia? Of the soil? From what does Siberia derive its importance? What animals are found in the country? What is said of the inhabitants? Describe the chief towns. Describe the Trans-Caucasian provinces. What is said of the Circassians and Georgians? Describe the chief towns.



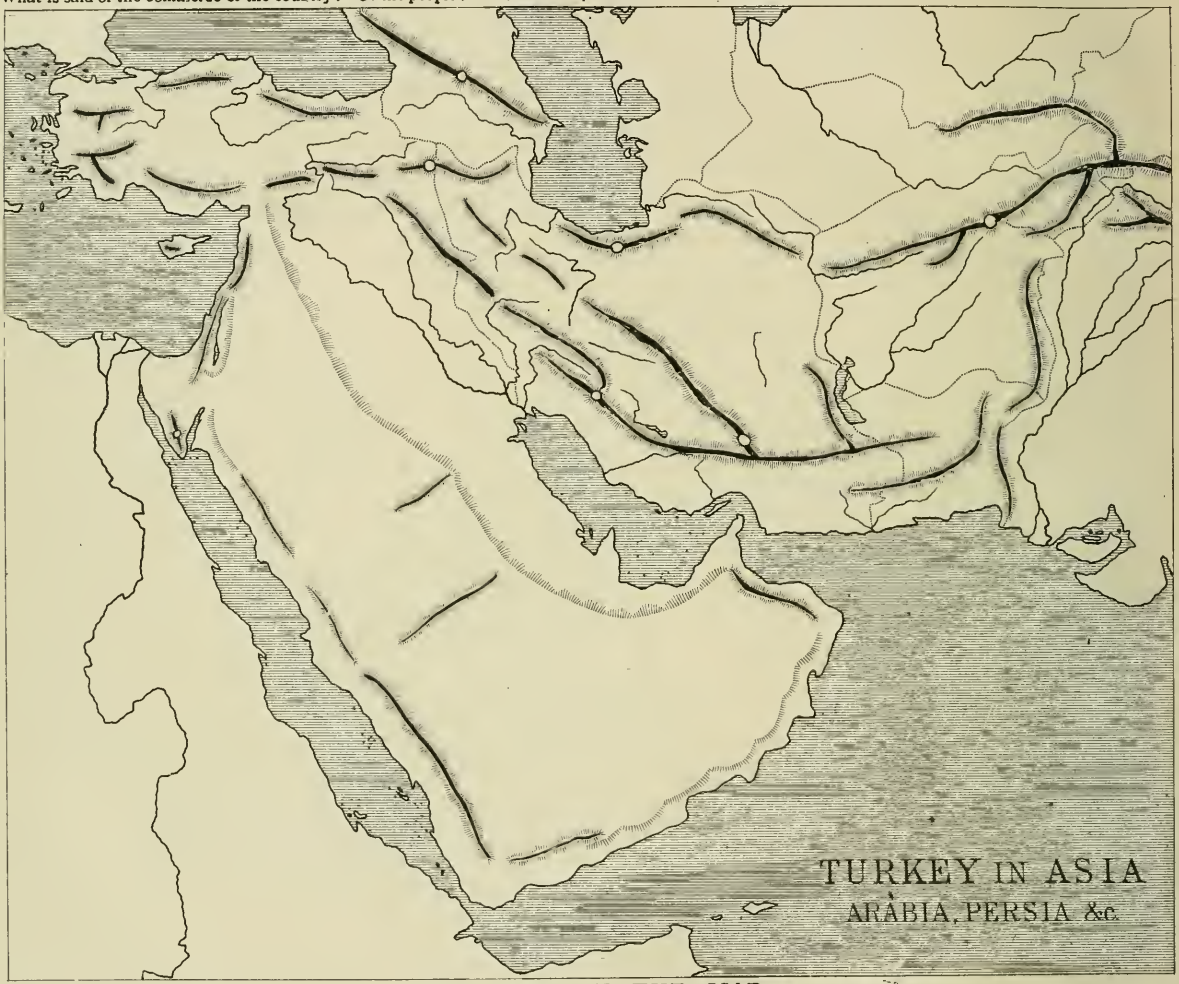
EXERCISES ON THE MAP.

What division of the world are the islands of the Malay Archipelago nearest to? What sea separates them from the mainland? How is Sumatra separated from the mainland? Which is the largest island? Which are the most northerly? What island lies to the south of Sumatra? To the east of Borneo? What islands lie between Java and Australia? What oceans wash the shores of Asia? How is Asia separated from Europe? From Africa? From America?—(see Hemisphere.) By what isthmus is Asia joined to Africa? What oceans wash the shores of Asia? What five seas are on the east? What seas and bays are on the south? What countries are in the south? In the east? In the north? In the west? In the interior? What large islands are off the east coast? Off the south-east? In what direction do the mountain chains principally extend? What ocean is on the north of Siberia? What seas on the east? How is it separated from Russia in Europe? From the Chinese Empire? What large rivers flow northwards through Siberia? What peninsula is in the east? What large island is on the eastern coast? What seas are in the south-west? How is Irkutsk situated? Petropaulovski? Tobolsk?—(see China, &c.) Which is the largest of the Japanese Islands? From what countries does the Sea of Japan separate them? On what island is Yeddo? Simoda? Hakodadi?

TURKEY in ASIA,
ARABIA, PERSIA,
AFGHANISTAN & BALUCHISTAN.
English Miles
0 100 200 300 400 500 600
Longitude East 60 from Greenwich
BLACK SEA
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
RED SEA
ARABIAN SEA
PERSIAN GULF
Gulf of Oman
Gulf of Aden
Gulf of Suez
RUSSIAN EMPIRE
TURKESTAN
TURKEY IN ASIA
ARMENIA
KURDISTAN
Mesopotamia
ASIA MINOR
PERSIA
AFGHANISTAN
BALUCHISTAN
INDIA
ARABIA
EGYPT
ABYSSYNIA
Sandy Desert or Roba el Khali
or Dehna
Tropic of Cancer
CONSTANTINOPLE
CAIRO
MECCA
Medina
Muscat
Bussora
Baghdad
Aleppo
Damascus
Jerusalem
Beyrout
Mosul
Tiflis
Tabriz
TEHERAN
Ispahan
Yezd
Kerman
Herat
KABUL
KELAT
Kandahar
Aden
Socotra
Suez
Alexandria
Port Said
Sinai
Cyprus
Rhodes
Cardia
Scarpanto
Trebizond
Erzerum
Sivas
Angora
Smyrna
Konieh
Diarbekir
Orfah
Antioch
Tripoli
Beyrout
Damascus
Palmyra
Jerusalem
Dead Sea
Hillah
Meshed Ali
Hermanshah
Kashan
Kum
Hamadan
Resht
Astrabad
Meshed
Khiva
Merv
Bokhara
Samarkand
Tashkent
Khojend
Andkhoi
Balkh
Khulm
Kunduz
Badakshan
Kabadian
Khuja Saleh
Maimene
Sabzawar
Nishepur
Askabad
Kizil Arvat
Krasnovodsk
Karaboghaz Gulf
Charjui
Khojend
Kokan
Margelan
Naryn
Kohat
Peshawur
Jelalabad
Ghuznee
Candahar
Girishk
Farrah
Kelati Ghilzai
Nehbendan
Birjand
Tun
Tubbus
Yezdikhast
Kumisheh
Julfa
Tiuzul
Shuster
Khanikan
Dara
Kazirabad
Lora
Quetta
Bolan Pass
Dadur
Sundawa
Sukkurur
Nushki
Saruwan
Kharan
Djalk
Bampur
Bender Abbas
Lingah
Bahrein I.
Katif
Hasa
Bushire
Shiraz
Fasa
Lar
Jerun I.
Ormus I.
Kishm I.
C. Mesandum
Dishk
Sharidjan
Bahr el Penah Is
Bahr el Khalij
Kuria Muria Is
Ras el Hadd
Ras Madrack
Mooseirah I.
Dj. Akhdar
Sohar
Matrah
Pishukan
Gwadur
Sonmiani
Karachi
Beyla
Djam
Miri
Meshkan
Kuhistan
Laristan
Khuzistan
Karsistan
Kherman
Seistan
Hamun
Marsh
Nushki
Kelat
Sarawan
Kharan
Djalk
Tusp
Bampur
Dizak
Gwadur
Pishukan
Tiwetur
Sonmiani
Karachi
Beyla
Djam
Miri
Meshkan
Ras el Hadd
Ras Madrack
Mooseirah I.
Dj. Akhdar
Sohar
Matrah
Muscat
Gulf of Oman
Persian Gulf
Bahrein I.
Katif
Hasa
Bushire
Shiraz
Fasa
Lar
Jerun I.
Ormus I.
Kishm I.
C. Mesandum
Dishk
Sharidjan
Bahr el Penah Is
Bahr el Khalij
Kuria Muria Is

EXERCISES ON THE LESSON.

What is the area of Arabia? Population? Size? Capital? How is Arabia bounded? Describe the surface of Arabia. Describe the principal physical features. Describe the climate. Soil and products. For what is Arabia famous? How is Arabia divided? Describe the chief towns. What is the area of Turkey in Asia? Population? Size? How is it bounded? What countries does it comprise? To what ancient countries do they correspond? For what are they celebrated? What islands belong to Turkey? What is comprised in Asia Minor? Describe the surface of the country. The principal mountains. Trace them on the map. What is said of the rivers? Describe the principal. Trace their courses on the map. What is said of the lakes? Describe the climate. The soil and products. What is said of the commerce of the country? Of the people? Describe the chief towns. What ancient countries do Kurdistan, Irak-Arabi, and Algeziras represent? Describe their situation. How are they bounded? Describe the country. What is said of vegetation? Of the soil and people? What lake is in the north? Describe the principal towns. What is the area of Persia? Population? Size? Capital? How is Persia bounded? For what was Persia formerly celebrated. Describe the mountains and rivers. Soil and products. What is said of the people? Of the sheep of Persia? Of the trade? Of the government and religion? Describe the chief towns. What is the area of Afghanistan? Population? Size? Capital? How is Afghanistan bounded? Describe the surface and principal physical features. Describe the climate and soil. What is said of the inhabitants? Of the British invasions? Describe the chief towns.



EXERCISES ON THE MAP.

What large river flows nearly parallel to the Euphrates? What cities are situated on it? Where is Hillah situated? How is Arabia separated from Africa? What isthmus is on the north-west? How is Arabia separated from Persia? From Baluchistan? What cape is on the south-east? What famous mountain is at the head of the Red Sea? Where is Mocha situated? What part of Arabia belongs to Britain? How is Asia Minor separated from Turkey in Europe? What sea is on the north? On the south? What island is off the southern shore? What mountains are in the south-east? What gulf is between Asia Minor and Syria? How is Smyrna situated? Scutari? What ports are on the Black Sea? On the Mediterranean? What countries adjoin Persia on the east? On the north? On the west? What mountain is in the north? What sea is on the north? What port is on the Persian Gulf? What ports are on the Caspian Sea? How is Ispahan situated? Teheran? What mountains separate Afghanistan from India? What country is to the south of Afghanistan? What sea is on the south of Baluchistan? What mountains are on the north-east of Afghanistan? How is Cabool situated?

It runs through Kashmir and Thibet, north of the valleys of the Indus and Tsanpu or Brahmaputra, parallel with the Himalayas. Its direction is south-easterly as far as Lake Namcho or Tengri Nor, where it turns southerly and joins the Himalayas at the east end of Bhotan. Several of the peaks are over 25,000 feet high, and it culminates in *Mount Dapsang* (28,278), the second highest mountain in the world.

The principal **rivers** of Asia already mentioned are of great length and volume, and many of them are navigable for great distances. Those of Siberia, moreover, are almost inaccessible, since they flow into the Arctic Ocean.

The **table-lands** of Asia are of great extent, and occupy a large portion of the continent, extending from the Mediterranean Sea to the Sea of Japan, a distance of upwards of 5,000 miles, and varying from 400 to 2,000 miles in breadth. The largest and most elevated is the great central plateau between the Altai and Himalaya Mountains, including the *Desert of Gobi* or Shamo, from 4,000 to 10,000 feet high, and the plateau of Thibet, from 10,000 to 15,000 feet high. West of it are the *Desert of Iran*, in Persia and Afghanistan, and the table-lands of *Armenia*, *Asia Minor*, and *Arabia*.

The Principal Lakes are:

Baikal and *Balkash*, in Siberia, and the *Dead Sea* in Syria; besides the inland salt lakes, the *Sea of Aral*, and the *Caspian Sea*.

Like Europe, the outline or **coast-line** of Asia is much broken, and has many islands, seas, gulfs, bays, and straits.

The Principal Peninsulas are:

Asia Minor, on the west; *Arabia*, *Hindostan*, *Malaya* or *Malacca*, and *Annam*, on the south; and *Corea* and *Kamschatka*, on the east.

The Principal Islands are:

Cyprus, in the eastern end of the Mediterranean; *Ceylon*, the *Laccadive*, *Maldive*, *Andaman*, and *Nicobar Islands*, in the Indian Ocean; *Sumatra*, *Java*, *Borneo*, *Celebes*, the *Moluccas* or *Spice Islands*, and *Philippines*, in the Eastern Archipelago; and *Hainan*, *Formosa*, *Loo Choo Islands*, the *Japan Islands*, *Saghalien*, *Kurile*, and *Aleutian Islands*, in the Pacific.

The Principal Seas and Gulfs are:

The *Levant*, *Red Sea*, *Arabian Sea*, *Persian Gulf*, *Gulfs of Cutch* and *Cambay*, *Bay of Bengal* and *Gulf of Martaban*, *China Sea* and *Gulfs of Siam* and *Tonquin*, *Yellow Sea*, *Gulf of Pechelee*, *Japan Sea*, and *Sea of Okotsk*.

The Principal Straits are:

Babelmandeb, *Ormuz*, *Gulf of Manaar* and *Palk Strait*, *Straits of Malacca* and *Corea*, *Gulf of Tartary*, and *Behring Strait*.

The Principal Capes are:

Baba, the most westerly point of Turkey in Asia, *Ras al Had*, *Comorin*, *Romania*, *Camboja*, *Lopatka*, *East Cape*, and *North-East Cape*.

The **climate** of Asia is, in general, warmer than that of North America in the same latitude; but the high table-lands are subject to violent extremes. In the north it is excessively cold; in the middle it is dry, and almost rainless; and in the south hot. In the east it is more moist than in the west; in the south, the seasons are divided into wet and dry, and their changes are accompanied by a change in the winds, called the monsoons, or season winds.

The tundras, as the lands lying along the Arctic Ocean are called, are barren polar wastes. The northern plain of the continent, lying south of the tundras, is forest land; the great central table-land is either agricultural and pastural land, or sandy desert; while Farther India and Malaysia abound with immense tropical forests. On the southern slope of the Himalayas vegetation becomes most luxuriant, producing the plants and grains of all the zones, according to the elevation. China is famous for its tea and rice. In the southern part of the continent, and in the islands, coffee, cotton, rice, ginger, pepper, and spices are produced in great abundance; while the forests furnish palm, teak, sandalwood, gamboge, and caoutchouc trees. Jungles cover a large part of the country in the south and south-east, affording refuge to the lion, tiger, leopard, elephant, and great numbers of large and venomous serpents and reptiles. In the north are found the bear, wolf, reindeer, ermine, marten, and many other fur-bearing animals; horses, camels, and dromedaries abound in the middle and south-westerly region. Iron, tin, copper, coal, and other minerals are found in various parts, but are little worked. Precious stones are found in India.

The most densely peopled parts of Asia are China and Hindostan. The inhabitants of Asia are generally of the Caucasian race in the south-west; Mongolians in the middle and east; and Malays in Malacca and the East India Islands. They are almost all either heathens professing the worship of Brahma or Buddha in the south, and the system of Confucius in China, or Mohammedans in the west, which is the centre and cradle of Mohammedanism. There are native Christians in Syria and Armenia, and the Russian colonists of Siberia belong to the Greek Church.

The Countries of Asia are:

Turkey in Asia.
Arabia.
Persia.
Afghanistan.
Beloochistan or Baluchistan.
India or Hindostan.
Eastern Peninsula, comprising Burmah, Siam, Annam, etc.
Chinese Empire, including Thibet, Mongolia, etc.
Independent Turkestan.
Russia in Asia.
Japan.

TURKEY IN ASIA.

Area, about 733,260 square miles; more than three times the size of Quebec; population, 16,357,000; persons to a square mile, 22.

Turkey in Asia is bounded on the north by the Black Sea and Russia; on the west by the Grecian Archipelago and the Mediterranean Sea; on the south by Arabia; and on the east by Persia.

It comprises *Asia Minor*, *Armenia*, *Syria* (including Palestine), *Kurdistan* (the ancient Assyria), *Irak-Arabi* (the ancient Chaldea), and *Algezirah* (the ancient Meso-

potamia). These countries are all celebrated in the records of the Holy Scriptures, both Old and New, and for that reason form a peculiarly interesting study. It also comprises all the western and part of the eastern divisions of Arabia.

The islands of *Cyprus* and *Rhodes*, in the Mediterranean, with *Mitylene*, *Scio*, *Samos*, and all the Asiatic islands of the Grecian Archipelago, belong to Turkey. Cyprus, however, is occupied and administered by Great Britain, under treaty with Turkey.

Asia Minor comprises the peninsula between the Black Sea and the Mediterranean. The greater part of the country consists of a high plateau, enclosed by the *Taurus Mountains* on the south, and the parallel range of the *Anti-Taurus* on the north, both extending close along the coast. The former are the highest, some of the peaks reaching to 13,000 feet in height.

The rivers, owing to the mountainous nature of the country, are naturally small and rapid, but are numerous, and many of them celebrated in ancient history. The principal are the *Kizil Irmak*, the ancient Halys, formerly the boundary between Lydia and Media; the *Sakaria*, flowing into the Black Sea; and the *Meander* and *Sarabat*, flowing into the Archipelago. There are several salt lakes in the interior.

The climate on the plains is hot and dry, but healthy, and in the mountain-lands cool and pleasant. The soil is fruitful, especially in the valleys, but much neglected. Grain, tobacco, cotton, and all southern fruits, such as figs, olives, grapes, and pomegranates, grow in abundance. The elevated parts of the country afford excellent pasturage to large flocks and herds of cattle. Along the shore of the Black Sea a dense forest covers the land.

The commerce of the country is chiefly in the hands of the Greeks, Armenians, and Jews. The people are chiefly Mohammedans, but a large number belong to the Greek and Armenian Churches. The population is about eleven millions.

Smyrna (150,000) is the chief commercial city of Asia Minor, and makes large exports of dried fruits. It is situated on a fine bay, and claims to have been the birthplace of Homer. *Scutari*, opposite Constantinople; *Brusa* (60,000), near the foot of Mount Olympus; *Kutaya* and *Angora*, on branches of the Sakaria, the latter celebrated for its silky-haired goats, are the most important towns; *Trebizond* (50,000) and *Sinope* are ports on the Black Sea; *Tokat* has copper mines and manufactures. *Tarsus*, celebrated as the birthplace of St. Paul, is on the southern coast, opposite the island of Cyprus.

Armenia lies to the east of Asia Minor, between it and the Russian Province of Transcaucasia, south of the Caucasus Mountains. It much resembles Asia Minor in physical features, climate, and productions, but is still more mountainous. The land of Eden is supposed to have been in Armenia; and *Mount Ararat*, upon which the ark rested after the flood, is on the borders of Armenia, Persia, and Trans-Caucasia. It rises in two peaks, the highest being 17,112 feet high. The rivers *Euphrates* and *Tigris* rise in the mountains of Armenia, and flow southwards into the Persian Gulf; and the *Kur*, with its tributary the *Aras*, flows into the Caspian Sea.

Erzeroum (60,000), the largest city, is situated on an elevated plain, 6,000 feet high, near the source of the Euphrates.

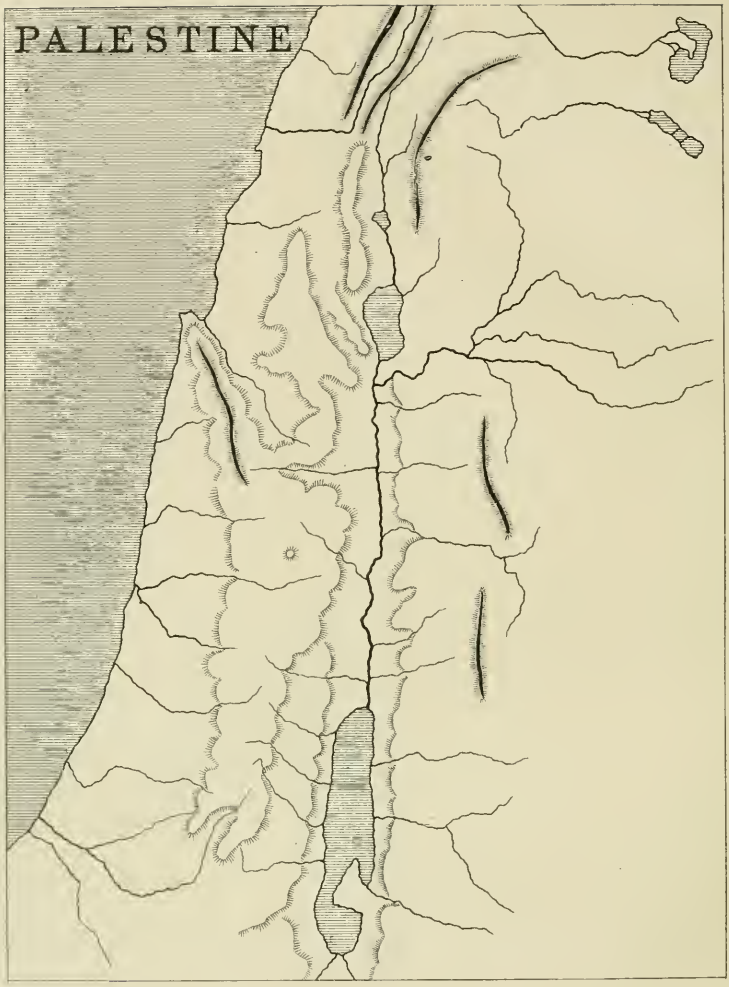
Syria and Palestine.

Syria extends southwards from the Taurus Mountains, along the eastern shore of the Mediterranean, and includes also Palestine, or the Holy Land.

From the Taurus range the mountains of Lebanon stretch southwards in two parallel chains, called the *Libanus* and *Anti-Libanus*—the latter terminating in *Mount Hermon*, 9,381 feet high, its peak covered with snow for the greater part of the year. Between these ranges lies Cœle-Syria, or Hollow Syria. Mount Carmel, on the coast, forms a bold and lofty promontory to the south of the Bay of Acre. In the north, the river *Orontes* rises, and flows past Antioch into the Mediterranean. Near Mount Hermon are the sources of the *Jordan*, which flows southwards through the *Sea of Galilee*, or *Tiberias*, so celebrated for the stirring scenes which occurred there during the life of Our Lord upon earth. From this lake the Jordan flows into the *Dead Sea*, after a course, including many windings, of about 200 miles. The Dead Sea is a lake nine times salter than the ocean, and is 1,300 feet below the level of the Mediterranean; and the Jordan, for the greater part of its course, is also below the level of the sea, being the only known instance of such an extraordinary depression. The mountains of Lebanon are continued southwards by the mountains of Palestine; and still farther by the mountains of *Seir*, terminated at the extremity of the peninsula at the head of the Red Sea by the Sinaitic group, on one of which Moses received the Ten Commandments. One of the same group is *Mount Horeb*, where Moses saw the burning bush. To the east of Jerusalem is the *Mount of Olives*, the favorite resort of our Saviour. To the east and south of Syria is a great sandy desert, extending into Arabia, and inhabited by wild and rapacious tribes of Arabs, who live by pasturing their flocks and by plunder.

The climate in the valleys is hot, and the soil is naturally rich, but it is poorly cultivated, and, owing to long neglect, has become sterile and barren. Grain, olives, figs, grapes, and pomegranates grow abundantly with but little labor, and the land would be literally a "land flowing with milk and honey," if its resources were developed.

PALESTINE
English Miles
0
20
40
GREAT SEA
(MEDITERRANEAN)
Beyrout
Sidon
Zarephath or Sarepta
Tyre
Ladder of Tyre
Achzib
Acho or Ptolemais
Acre
Bay of Acre
Cape Carmel
Mount Carmel
Dor
Caesarea
Joppa
Lydda
Arimathea
Ekron
Gaza
Ashdod
Askelon
Gath
Ashkelon
Lachish
Ziklag
Beersheba
Brook Besor
Desert of Paran
Kadesh Barnea
Wilderness of Judah
Valley of Salt
Zoar
Kin Moab
Rabbath Moab
Aroer
Arnon
Mountains of Abarim
Moabites
Wilderness of Jeshimon
Engedi
Hebron
Lebnah
Eltekon
Timnah
Emmaus
Zorah
Ashdod
Adullam
Makkedah
Libnah
Gath
Tekoa
Bethlehem
Jerusalem
Mizpeh
Gibeon
Anathoth
Mt of Olives
Bethany
Gilgal
Jericho
Ramah
Bethel
Shiloh
Timnath-serah
Gilgal?
Sharon
Plain of Sharon
Antipatris
Shechem
Mt Ebal
Mt Gerizim
Samaria
Tirzah
Engannim
Beth shan
Jezreel
Mt Gilboa
Megiddo
Shunem
Nain
Endor
Nazareth
Mt Tabor
Joknea m
Cana of Galilee
Magdala
Tiberias
Sea of Galilee
Chorazin
Capernaum
Bethsaida
Hazor
Safed
Kedesh Naphtali
Hamon
Achzib
Dan or Laish
Caesarea Philippi
To DAN
R. Leontes
R. Bostrenus
R. Tamyras
Mount Lebanon
Abila
Abilene
Damascus
R. Abana
Mount Hermon
R. Pharpar
Iturea
L. Phiala
Plain of Huleh
Geshur
Waters of Merom
Argob
Lejah
Trachonitis
Edrei
Golan
Ashtaroth
Saccaea
Kenath
Gaulonitis
Gamala
Hippos
Decapolis
R. Jarmuk
Abila
Gadara
Arbela
Pella
Jabesh Gilead
Succoth
Gerasa
Mahanaim
R. Jabbok
Mountains of Gilead
Beth Gamul
Bozrah
Kerioth
Philippopolis
Saleah
Mt Absalamus
Beyond Jordan
MANASSEH
NAPHTALI
ASHER
ZEBULON
ISSACHAR
MANASSEH
SAMARIA
EPHRAIM
DAN
BENJAMIN
JUDAH
SIMEON
GAD
REUBEN
Plain of Sharon
Mount of Ephraim
Brook Sorek
Brook Kedron
Valley of Jehoshaphat
Jordan river
DEAD SEA
Mount Gilead
Ramoth Gilead
Mahanaim
Bethnimrah
Betharam
Mt Nebo
Baalmeon
Pisgah Mts
Heshbon
Medeba
Jahaz
Machaerus
Bezer
ENVIRONS OF JERUSALEM
Isawiyeh
Scopus
Tombs of the Judges
Nephtoah
Mizpeh
Tombs of the Kings
JERUSALEM
Russian Mission
Mohammedan Camp
Tomb of Gihon
Mount of Olives
Ch. of the Ascension
Tombs of the Prophets
Bethphage
Mt of Offence
Bethany
Siloam
En Rogel
Valley of Hinnom
Valley of Jehoshaphat
Gihon
Gethsemane
Gross Gerach
Safafah
Sherafat
Hill Evil Council
Beit Sahur
Abu Dis
Plain of Rephaim
Well
Mar Elias
Rachel's Grave
Sur Bahil
Antubeh
Khurbet Luka
Brush Miles
BETHLEHEM
Bartholomew, Edin.



EXERCISES ON THE LESSON.

How is Syria situated? How is it bounded? Describe the mountains of Syria. Describe the course of the Jordan. The Dead Sea. The mountains in the south. What is east and south of Syria? How was Palestine formerly named? Describe the climate. Soil and productions. Inhabitants of the mountains of Lebanon. Describe the principal towns and places of interest. Point them out on the map, and state where they are situated and for what noted.

The mountains of Lebanon are inhabited by two independent tribes: the Maronites, a kind of Christians; and the Druses, a brave and warlike race, whose religion is a mixture of Christianity and Mohammedanism.

Damascus (150,000) is the largest and most important city of Syria, and one of the oldest in the world, having been in existence in the time of Abraham. It lies on the route of the caravans to Mecca, and carries on a large trade in silks, jewelry, etc. *Beyrout* is the seaport of Damascus, and has also a large trade in silks, oil, and wine. *Aleppo* (70,000) is the capital of Syria, and carries on an extensive trade in cotton and silk manufactures. In 1822 it was nearly destroyed by an earthquake, and 20,000 persons lost their lives. *Antioch*, on the Orontes, was formerly a city of great importance. *Baalbec*, in Cœle-Syria, and *Palmyra*, the Tadmor of the Old Testament, in the Syrian desert, 130 miles north-east of Damascus, are remarkable for the remains of their ancient temples and buildings.

By **Palestine** is generally understood the country extending south from the mountains of Lebanon to the southern end of the Dead Sea; and from the Mediterranean Sea across the River Jordan to the Syrian Desert. It was called the Land of Canaan in patriarchal times; the Land of Israel from the time of its conquest by the Israelites under Joshua; and after the division of the kingdom at the death of Solomon, the northern part, occupied by the Ten Tribes, was known as the Kingdom of Israel, with Samaria as its capital, and the southern part as the Kingdom of Judah, with Jerusalem as its capital. After the return of the Jews from the Babylonian captivity, they reoccupied mainly the southern part of the country, which has ever since been known as Judea; while the central part was called Samaria, and the northern part Galilee.

Jerusalem (28,000), the celebrated capital of ancient Judea, is now sadly fallen in importance. Only about one-fourth of its inhabitants are Christians, and the Mosque of Omar now occupies the site of the ancient Jewish temple. It is only half the size it was before its destruction by Titus. Most of the interesting spots memorable in the life of our Lord are still pointed out, and churches have been erected upon them. It is much visited by pilgrims and travellers. *Jaffa*, the port of Jerusalem, is the ancient Joppa. *Tyre* and *Sidon*, formerly important cities and seaports on the coast, are almost deserted; *Bethlehem*, the birthplace of our Lord, six miles south of Jerusalem, is now a straggling village. *Hebron* is ten miles farther south. *Nablous* is the ancient Shechem or Sychar, near which was Jacob's Well. *Acre*, on the coast, near Mount Carmel, is famous in later times for the sieges it has withstood. *Gaza*, to the south-west of Jerusalem, is still an important town, carrying on trade between Palestine and Egypt.

Kurdistan, Irak-Arabi, and Algezirah.

These countries, representing the ancient Assyria, Chaldea, and Mesopotamia, occupy the south-eastern part of Turkey. Kurdistan, on the borders of Armenia, is mountainous; but the greater part of the country is a level plain, through which the *Tigris* and *Euphrates* flow south-east into the Persian Gulf. These rivers overflow their banks when the snow melts on the mountains, and for a brief period the plains are covered with vegetation; but the hot sun soon scorches it all up. Along the course of the rivers, vines, rice, and date-palms flourish, but the rest of the country is desolate, and is infested by warlike tribes of plundering Kurds and Arabs.

Lake Van, in the north, is 5,500 feet above the sea, and about one-fifth the size of Lake Ontario.

Bassora or *Bussorah* (60,000), near the Persian Gulf, has a large trade with Persia and the East. *Bagdad* (65,000), on the Tigris, was long the capital of the Mohammedan Caliphs, and is an important starting-point for caravans. *Mosul* (40,000), on the Tigris, has fine cotton manufactures, and from it muslin derives its name. Opposite to it the interesting remains of ancient Nineveh were discovered by Layard. *Diarbekir* has copper mines. *Hillah* occupies the site of ancient Babylon. Near it is the mound called *Birs Nimrod*, supposed to be the ruins of the famous Tower of Babel.

ARABIA.

Area, 1,220,000 square miles; three times the size of Ontario and Quebec; population, about 5,000,000; persons to a square mile, about 4.

Arabia is a peninsula bounded on the north by Turkey in Asia; on the west by the Isthmus of Suez and the Red Sea; on the south by the Indian Ocean; and on the east by the Persian Gulf and Irak-Arabi.

It is a vast sandy desert, rising in the interior into a high table-land, from 5,000 to 8,000 feet high, and sloping principally towards the Persian Gulf. It is most abrupt on the west and south coasts. Little is known of the interior of the country, but recent travellers have found considerable towns and a numerous population in the northern central parts. The Syrian desert is in the possession of wandering tribes of Arabs called Bedouins, who live by plundering the caravans and by pasture.

The *Strait of Babelmandeb* is at the entrance of the Red Sea, and the *Strait of Ormuz* at the entrance of the Persian Gulf. *Cape Ras el Had* is the south-eastern extremity. The *Mountains of Sinai* are in the peninsula extending into the Red Sea at its northern extremity.

The **climate** is excessively hot, and the simoom, or burning wind of the desert, renders travelling very dangerous, as the sand sometimes moves like the waves of the sea, overwhelming everything. The soil on the coast is fertile, producing coffee, myrrh, frankincense, dates,

and various other fruits. In the Persian Gulf are valuable pearl fisheries. Arabia is celebrated for its horses. The camel is the only animal which can endure the fatigue of traversing the deserts.

Hedjaz and Yemen in the west and El Hasa in the east are tributary to Turkey; the south-east belongs to the Sultan of Muscat; in the interior is the kingdom of Nedjed.

Mecca (30,000), the birthplace of Mohammed, 60 miles from the Red Sea, and *Medina*, containing his tomb, farther north, are the holy cities of the Mohammedans, and are visited by vast numbers of pilgrims, as Mohammedans are enjoined to visit Mecca at least once in their lives. *Jeddah* is the seaport of Mecca.

Sana is the capital of Yemen, and *Mocha*, celebrated for its coffee, is the chief seaport. *Aden*, at the entrance of the Strait of Babelmandeb, has belonged to Britain since 1839.

Muscat (60,000), on the east coast, is the capital of Oman, the most enterprising and maritime country in Arabia, and even in Western Asia. It carries on an important trade in gums, myrrh, and frankincense, a large portion of which is brought from Africa.

Riad (30,000), in the centre of the country, is the capital of the kingdom of Nedjed and the chief town of the Wahabees, a particularly strict sect of Mohammedans.

The ruins of *Petra*, the ancient capital of Edom, in the north, about midway between the Dead and the Red Seas, consist of a long street or narrow valley, in which houses, temples, and all the buildings are hewn out of the solid rock; and are amongst the most interesting ancient remains in existence.

PERSIA.

Area, 636,000 square miles; about one-half larger than Ontario, Quebec, and Newfoundland; population, 7,653,000; persons to a square mile, 12.

Persia is bounded on the north by Asiatic Russia, the Caspian Sea, and Turkestan; on the west by Turkey; on the south by the Persian Gulf; and on the east by Afghanistan and Beloochistan. It was formerly a nation of great importance, forming one of the most powerful empires of ancient history, but is now sadly reduced, and seems to be decreasing in population.

The **surface** is mountainous, especially in the north and west, where the *Elburz Mountains* extend from Afghanistan to the mountains of Armenia. The highest summit is Mount Demavend, about 20,500 feet high. The interior is a high plateau about 3,000 feet above the sea, forming part of the great *Desert of Iran*, which extends into Afghanistan. The rivers are few and small, and either lose themselves in the sand, or flow into lakes so salt that fish cannot live in them. The largest of these lakes is Urumiah, in Kurdistan, a salt lake 4,000 feet above the sea, and about one-fourth the size of Lake Ontario. Along the shore of the Caspian Sea, and wherever there is water, vegetation is luxuriant, and cotton, the sugar-cane, and mulberry, fig, and pomegranate trees abound. In the south it is hot, dry, and arid, and the date-palm is the only tree that will grow.

The Persians are a gay, polite, and hospitable people, and carry on large manufactures in fine silks, carpets, and brocades. Two-thirds of the people are engaged in pastoral pursuits. The sheep of Persia are famous for their size. Trade is chiefly in the hands of the British and Russians, the latter having almost exclusive control of the navigation on the Caspian Sea. The government is a despotism, under a ruler called the Shah; and the religion is the Mohammedan.

Ispahan (60,000), the former capital, is situated on a high plain in a well-cultivated district. *Teheran* (85,000), the capital, is in the desert, where the climate is so hot and unhealthy, that in summer the city is almost deserted. *Shiraz*, near the Persian Gulf, is in the centre of a fertile and beautiful valley. North of it are the ruins of *Persepolis*, among which are supposed to be those of the palace of Darius, destroyed by Alexander the Great. *Bushire*, on the Persian Gulf, is the chief port. *Tabriz* (100,000), the largest city, near lake Urumiah, *Meshed* (60,000), *Yezd*, and *Hamadan*, the latter on the caravan route to Bagdad, are important towns. *Reshd* and *Astrabad* are ports on the Caspian.

AFGHANISTAN.

Area, 278,650 square miles; larger than Quebec, New Brunswick, and Nova Scotia, together; population, about 4,000,000; persons to a square mile, 14.

Afghanistan is situated between Persia and the northern part of India. It is mountainous in surface, and in the south-west the Persian desert extends into the country. In the north-east are the *Hindoo Koosh Mountains*, some of them rising 20,000 feet in height; and from these the *Suleiman Mountains* extend southwards into Beloochistan.

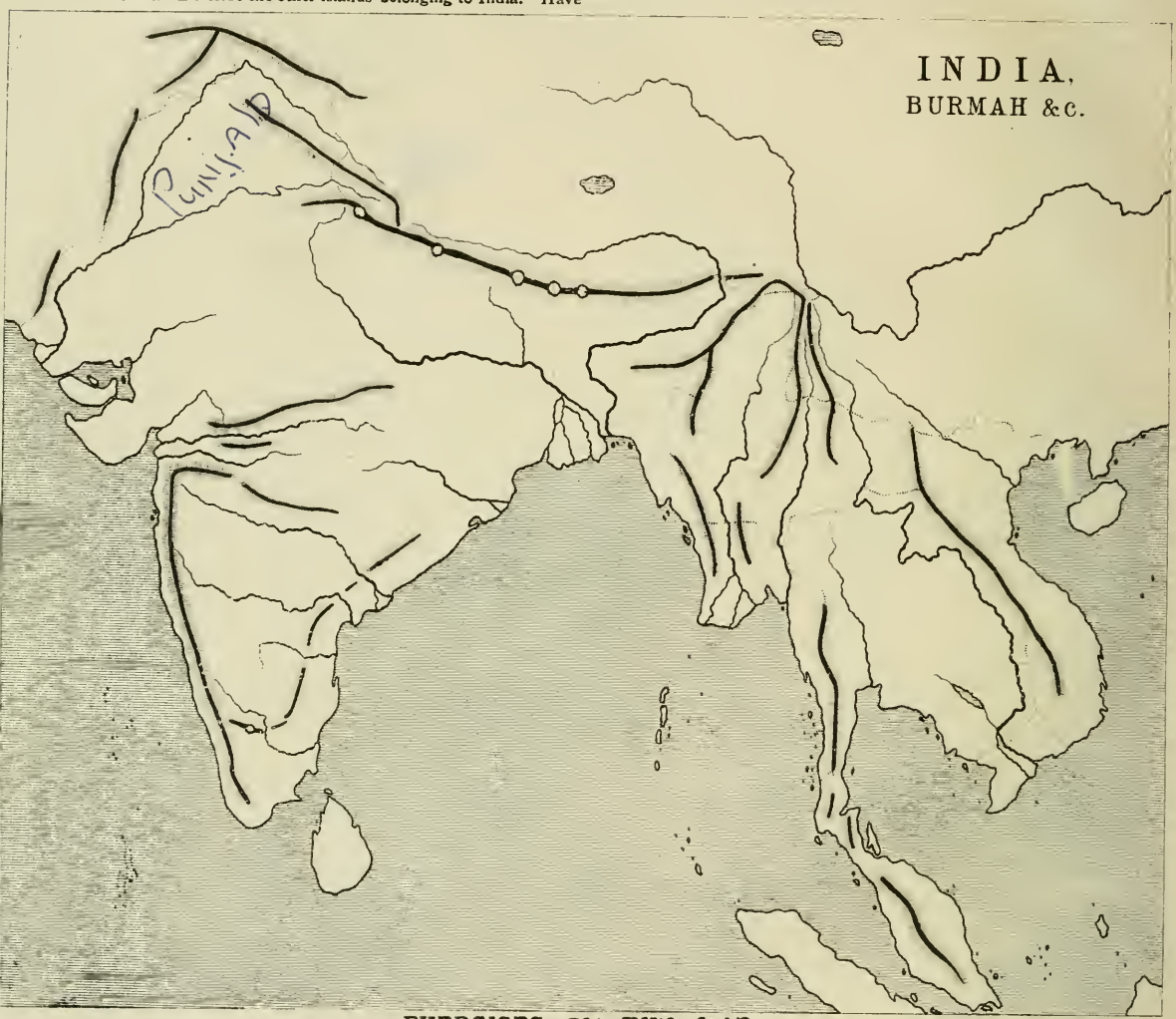
Owing to the elevated position of the country, it is subject to great extremes of heat and cold, but the mountains enclose many rich and fertile valleys. Two famous mountain passes lead from the high plateaus of Afghanistan to the valley of the Indus. They are the Khyber Pass and the Bolan Pass, and are on the two great roads between India and the West.

The towns are chiefly inhabited by Persians and Hindoos, who carry on the trade; while the Afghans are principally priests or soldiers, holding trade in contempt. They are divided into a number of semi-independent tribes, but unite for the common defence of the country.

INDIA,
BURMA, SIAM &c.
English Miles
0 100 200 300 400 500
INDIA
BURMA
SIAM
TIBET
CHINA
CEYLON
AFGHANISTAN
BALUCHISTAN
SINDH
RAJPUTANA
PANJAB
KASHMIR
NEPAL
BHOTAN
ASSAM
BENGAL
CENTRAL INDIA
BERAR
CENT. PROVS.
HAIDARABAD
MAISUR
BOMBAY
MADRAS
BRITISH BURMA
TENASSERIM
FRENCH COCHIN CHINA
CAMBODIA
ANNAM
TONQUIN
PROV. WELLESLEY
MALACCA
SINGAPORE
SUMATRA
ARABIAN SEA
BAY OF BENGAL
INDIAN OCEAN
Gulf of Siam
Gulf of Tonquin
Andaman Islands
Nicobar Is.
Laccadive Archipelago
Maldive Archipelago
Palk Strait
Malacca Straits
Kabul
Peshawar
Lahore
Amritsar
Delhi
Bombay
Calcutta
Dhaka
Rangun
Mandalay
Bangkok
Saigon
Singapore
Penang
Acheen
Lhassa
Tali
Yunnan
Kwei-ling
Hong Kong
Hainan
Longitude East 90 from Greenwich
J. Bartholomew Edin.

EXERCISES ON THE LESSON.

What is the area of India? Population? Size? Capital? How is India bounded? To whom does the greater part of India belong? How is it divided by its physical features? How does the surface slope? Describe the principal rivers. What are the principal features of the coast? Describe the climate of India. The seasons. The winds. What is said of the seasons in Bengal? What do the different winds cause? What happens during the rainy season? Describe the products of India. The vegetation. Animals. Minerals. Manufactures. What is said of the inhabitants? Of the native soldiers? Of the religion and religious rites? What is the size of Ceylon? Where is it situated? How is it separated from the mainland? Describe its surface, climate, &c. Describe the chief towns. Describe the other islands belonging to India. Have they any products. What is the area of the Eastern Peninsula? Population? Size? How is it bounded? What countries does it comprise? Describe the surface. What is said of the interior of the country? Of the climate? Of the soil and products? Of the forests? Of the peculiar productions? Of the animals? Of the minerals? Of the inhabitants? Describe Burmah. How is it situated? Describe its chief towns. Describe Siam. How is it situated? Describe its chief towns. Describe Laos and the Shan States. How are they situated? Describe Annam. How is it situated? Describe its chief towns. Name the British provinces. How are they situated? Describe the chief towns. Describe the Malay Peninsula, its inhabitants, &c.



EXERCISES ON THE MAP.

How is India separated from Tibet? What sea is on the west? What bay is on the east? What large river flows into the Arabian Sea? What two large rivers flow into the Bay of Bengal? Which Presidency is in the north? Which in the south-east? Which in the south-west? What is the southern extremity of India called? What island is off the southern point? How is it separated from the mainland? What is the eastern coast called? What the western coast? What desert is in the north-west? What islands are off the south-west coast? What gulfs are on the north-west coast? How is Calcutta situated? Bombay? Madras? What large cities are on the Ganges? On the Jumna? On the Indus? What large cities are in the Punjab?—(in the north-west.) In what direction from Calcutta is Delhi? Madras? Bombay? Lucknow? In what direction from Bombay is Aden?—(see Asia.) Suez? In what direction from Madras are Pondicherry? Tanjore? Hyderabad? Where is Allahabad? Benares? Describe the position of the following independent states:—Nepaul, the country of the Ghoorkas. Describe from the map the country of the Sikhs. Point out the following dependent states:—Mysore, Gujerat, Katchh, Gwalior, Travancore, Rajputana. Where is Scinde? Where Scindia? Where is Cochin? Where Cochin-China? Where Trichinopoly? Seringapatam? Golconda mines? Kurrachee (port)? Agra? Mooltan? What sea is on the east of the Eastern Indian Peninsula? What bay on the west? What gulf on the south? What country on the north? What peninsula extends to the south? How is it separated from Sumatra? What British possession is on the south of it? What large rivers flow southwards through the Eastern Peninsula? How is Ava situated? Bangkok? Rangoon?

They were formerly very powerful, and had possession of a large part of Western India.

Kabul (60,000), the capital, is situated 6,400 feet above the sea, and is surrounded with gardens. It is the key of Hindostan on the west. *Kandahar* and *Herat* are the other principal towns. Herat carries on extensive manufactures, and is an important station on the caravan route between Persia, Russia, and India. Its occupation by the Persians caused the war of England with Persia in 1856.

BELOOCHISTAN.

Area, 140,000 square miles; rather less than Ontario in size; population, about 2,000,000; persons to a square mile, 14.

Beloochistan lies to the south of Afghanistan, between it and the Arabian Sea.

It is mountainous and desert in the north, and along the coast is a dry arid tract, where nothing but the date-palm will grow. The country is divided between the Beluches in the west, and the Brahuis in the east. Both are pastoral, and profess Mohammedanism. The Hindoos carry on the trade.

Kelat (12,000), in the north-east, is the chief town. It is 7,000 feet above the sea.

KAFIRISTAN.

Area, about 20,000 square miles; about the size of Nova Scotia; population, about 500,000; persons to a square mile, 25.

Kafiristan, which may be called the Switzerland of Asia, is a small mountainous country lying between the Hindoo Koosh Mountains and North-western India. It is chiefly interesting on account of the people (who are called the Siah-Posh Kafirs), who belong to the Caucasian race, having light hair, fair skins, and blue eyes, and who, though repeatedly attacked by their more powerful neighbors, have managed to retain their independence.

Caundaish (2,500) is the principal town.

INDIA, or HINDOSTAN.

Area, 1,695,216 square miles; rather less than half the size of the Dominion of Canada; population, 259,321,000; persons to a square mile, 158.

India, or Hindostan, is bounded on the north by the Himalaya Mountains; on the west by Afghanistan, Beloochistan, and the Arabian Sea; on the south by the Indian Ocean; and on the east by the Bay of Bengal and Burmah.

The greater part of India is now in the possession of the British, or tributary to them. It was formerly under the control of a large trading company called the East India Company, but since 1858 has been under the direct control of the British Government. The first factory of the East India Company was established in 1612.

The country is naturally divided into three parts: the basin of the Indus in the north-west; the basin of the Ganges in the north-east; and the southern peninsula between the Arabian Sea and the Bay of Bengal, including the Dakhan, an elevated table-land enclosed by the Eastern and Western Ghauts and the Vindhya Mountains.

The enormous mass of the *Himalayas* extends along the north, rising to their greatest height in the eastern part of the range, where Mount Everest reaches 29,002 feet in height, being the highest known mountain in the world. The *Western Ghauts* extend along the western coast, and the *Eastern Ghauts* along the eastern coast at a distance of about forty miles from the sea. The western are the highest, rising about 4,000 feet, and their southern continuation, the Neilgherries, rise to about 7,000 feet. The *Vindhya Mountains* and *Araculli Hills* are in the west.

The general **slope** of the country is towards the east, as shown by the course of the rivers. India is well watered, but owing to the height of the sources of the principal rivers, they are not generally well adapted for navigation. The *Ganges* rises in the Himalayas at a height of about 14,000 feet, receiving the *Gogra*, *Jumna*, and other tributaries, and flows into the Bay of Bengal by a number of mouths, after a course of 1,500 miles. It is navigable for steamers as far as Cawnpur, and so is the Jumna as far as Delhi. The *Brahmaputra* and the *Indus* rise on the north side of the Himalayas in Tibet, and flow east and west respectively, turning the ends of the Himalaya chain. The Brahmaputra joins the eastern mouth of the Ganges, and is a very rapid river. The Indus receives the *Sutlaj* with its three main tributaries—which give the name of the Panjab, or "Five Rivers," to the country through which they flow—and after a course of 1,800 miles, falls into the Arabian Sea. The lower part of its course is through a desert composed of sandy plains and jungles. The other rivers are the *Nerbudda*, flowing west, and the *Mahanuddy*, *Godavery*, *Krishna*, and *Kaveri* flowing east.

The western coast is called the *Malabar Coast*, and the eastern the *Coromandel Coast*. *Cape Comorin* is the southern extremity of the continent.

The **climate** of India varies according to latitude and elevation above the sea. The great height of the Himalayas, and the highlands sloping from them towards the south, give every variety of climate, from that of perpetual snow to that of the torrid zone. Like other tropical countries, the seasons are divided into the wet and the dry, and their changes coincide with the periodical monsoons or season winds. The monsoons blow from the south-west in summer, and from the north-east in winter; and the changes produce violent storms. In Bengal the hot season is from March to the end of May, and the wet season from June to October.

During the heavy rains, the rivers, especially the Ganges and Brahmaputra, overflow their banks to a great distance, rendering the soil very fertile. Rice is the great staple and general food of all classes. Opium, indigo, sugar, tea, and cotton are largely cultivated and exported. The teak, banyan, bamboo, mangrove, and a variety of palms, are the principal trees. The teak is as valuable for ship-building as the oak. A single banyan tree covers a large space of ground, as each branch extends downwards to the ground, takes root, and produces other branches. Of late years the cinchona tree, from which Peruvian bark and quinine are obtained, has been largely planted. The soil in many parts is not cultivated, and is covered with jungles, affording a refuge for tigers, elephants, and other wild animals. India is rich in minerals, and especially in precious stones. The Hindus excel in manufactures of ivory, silks, fine muslins, and cottons. The shawls of Kashmir, made from the hair of the Kashmir goat, are unrivalled.

Hindus form the greater part of the population; and although the country belongs to Britain, it contains very few Europeans, and these are chiefly military. The native soldiers in the pay of the British are called Sepoys. The natives are mostly pagans, worshipping Brahma, Vishnu, the Ganges, and many animals. Widows were formerly burnt on the funeral piles of their dead husbands, and children thrown into the Ganges, but the Government has now prohibited these and other customs. In the north-west there are great numbers of Mohammedans. The most remarkable feature in Hindu society is the division of the people into four castes—Brahmins or priests, soldiers, merchants, and laborers. None of these can intermarry, or even eat and drink together. Those who have been degraded from their caste are called pariahs, and are outcasts from society.

BRITISH INDIA.

British India, with its dependencies, was formerly divided into three parts—the Bengal, Madras, and Bombay Presidencies, but now forms nine provinces, the whole being under the control of the Governor-General and Supreme Council of India.

These are: *Bengal*, comprising the country watered by the lower courses of the Ganges and Brahmaputra, and extending from Patna on the west to Chittagong on the east and Chilka Lake on the south; the *North-West Provinces* (including *Oudh*), along the courses of the Ganges and Jumna, from Delhi to Patna; the *Panjab*, or "Five Rivers," situated on the tributaries of the Indus in the north-west (these three provinces are under Lieutenant-Governors); the *Central Provinces*, situated south-west of Bengal Proper (governed by a Chief Commissioner); *Assam*, on the Brahmaputra, to the north-east; *British Burmah* in Farther India; *Madras* and *Bombay*, comprising the east and west coasts respectively; and the *Detached Provinces* under the direct control of the Governor-General.

1. **Bengal.**—This province lies along the lower courses of the Ganges and Brahmaputra. At the mouth of the Ganges and extending about 200 miles up, is a swampy district, called the Sunderbunds. It includes Orissa, a district lying to the south-west, which, being ill-watered, is liable to drought. The chief products are rice, opium, indigo, and jute. *Calcutta* (683,458), the largest city and the capital of British India, is situated on the left bank of the Hugli branch of the Ganges, about 100 miles from its mouth. The river here is about a mile wide, and is generally full of shipping. The citadel, spires, minarets, temples, and villas, extending along the river for a distance of five miles, give the city an aspect of great magnificence; but the native portion is low, dirty, and ill-built. The European population is only about 10,000. Higher up on the Ganges are *Moorshedabad*, the former Mohammedan capital of Bengal; and *Patna* (160,000), with large exports of rice and indigo.

2. **North-West Provinces.**—This province extends north-westerly from Bengal, along the Ganges and Jumna Rivers, as far as Delhi. On the Ganges are *Benares* (207,570), the most holy city of the Hindus; *Allahabad* (150,378), at the confluence with the Jumna, another holy city; and *Cawnpur* (119,603), where the Europeans were massacred in 1857. On the Jumna are *Agra* (137,908), the ancient capital of the Mogul Empire, containing the magnificent mausoleum, the Taj Mehal; *Lucknow* (261,500), celebrated for its defence against the Sepoys during the Indian Mutiny; and *Bareilly* (101,688) is an important place of trade.

3. **Panjab.**—This province lies still further to the north-west, between the river Jumna and Afghanistan. Its name, which means "five rivers," was given to it in consequence of its being traversed by five main streams, the Indus, Jhelum, Chenab, Ravi, and Sutlaj. It includes the former State of Delhi. The principal cities are *Delhi* (161,000), the "Rome of India" in respect of historic associations and splendor; *Lahore* (130,000), the capital; *Amritsar* (145,000), the holy city of the Sikhs, and the chief seat of trade; *Peshawur*, an important fortified town, on the Afghan frontier; and *Multan*, with manufactures of silk.

4. **Central Provinces.**—These lie to the south-west of Bengal. The great railway between Bombay and Calcutta passes through the northerly portion. *Nagpur* (85,000) is the largest city; but Jubbulpur, on the railway, does the greatest trade. Cotton is the chief product.

5. **Assam** lies along the Brahmaputra, to the north-east of Bengal. It is the tea-producing district of India. The principal town is *Gowhati*.

6. **British Burmah** is a strip of country lying along the east side of the Bay of Bengal in Farther India. It is subdivided into Arakan, Pegu, and Tenasserim. The great river Irawady runs through Pegu. The largest town and trading port is *Rangun* (132,004).

7. **Madras.**—This province extends along the Bay of Bengal from the Province of Bengal to Cape Comorin, and along the Arabian Sea from the native State, Travancore, to the Portuguese settlement of Goa or Panjim, at the southerly limit of the Province of Bombay. It has a coast-line of about 1,600 miles, but not one good natural harbor. *Madras* (406,000), the capital, is situated on the Coromandel coast. The other principal towns are *Trichinopoli* and *Tanjore*, on the Kaveri, the latter with manufactures of cottons and silks, and celebrated for its temple or pagoda, the finest example of Hindu architecture extant; and *Calicut* (whence the word "calico"), on the Malabar coast, the first port visited by Vasco de Gama.

8. **Bombay** extends north of Goa, along the Arabian Sea, as far as Beloochistan. It includes Sind, but not Katchh or Gujrat. The capital, *Bombay* (753,000), on an island of the same name, is the most important outlet of trade in India, and the second largest city in the British Empire. The other chief towns are *Puna* (120,000), south-east of Bombay; *Surat* (110,000), north of Bombay, where the first British factory was established in 1611; and *Ahmadabad* (120,000), still further north, an ancient walled city.

9. The **Detached Provinces** under the direct control of the Governor-General are *Ajmir*, in the north-west of India, enclosed within the native State of Rajputana; *Berar*, between Bombay and the Central Provinces; and *Kurg*, a small State to the south-west of Maisur in the Dakhan.

NATIVE STATES.

The total number of Native States, large and small, is about 800, and they cover an area of about 700,000 square miles, and contain a population of about 60,000,000. Two of them are quite independent; the others are tributary to the British Government, and to some extent under its control.

The Independent States are:

Nepal and **Bhotan**, both occupying the southern slope of the Himalayas.

Nepal extends along the slope of the Himalayas at the part where they reach their highest elevation. The lower part is densely covered with forests. *Katmandu*, situated in a valley, is the capital.

Bhotan lies east of Nepal, and north of the valley of the Brahmaputra. It is separated from Nepal by the small tributary State *Sikim*. The Ghoorkas are the ruling race, and are excellent soldiers. The capital is *Punaka*.

The Principal Dependent States are:

Kashmir lies north of the Panjab, and contains many fertile valleys. The famous shawls are manufactured there. *Kashmir* (or *Serinagur*), the capital, is situated on the Jhelum, 5,000 feet above the sea.

The **Rajpoot States**, or *Rajputana*, a number of small States occupying both sides of the Aravulli Hills in the west, with the British territory of Ajmir in the centre.

Scindia's Dominions, or *Gwalior*, are situated along the Chambul. *Gwalior*, with a famous hill-fort, is the capital.

Indore, or the *Holkar States*, are along the Vindhya Mountains.

Haidarabad, or the Nizam's Dominions, lies south of Berar, between the Province of Bombay and the river Godavery. *Haidarabad* is the capital. Near it is *Golconda*, famous for its diamonds. *Aurungabad* is the chief town in the north. Near it are the cave-temples of Elora.

Gujrat and **Katchh** are small territories on the west coast. *Baroda* is the capital of Gujrat.

Maisur, the territory of the celebrated Hyder Ali, occupies the south of the Dakhan. The Christians form one-eighth of the population, a larger proportion than in any other part. *Maisur* is the capital. *Seringapatam*, on the Kaveri, is strongly fortified. *Bangalore* (143,000) is the largest town.

Cochin and **Travancore** are small States on the south west coast. *Cochin* is the capital of the first, and *Trivandrum* of Travancore.

The foreign possessions in India, besides the British, are:

Belonging to the **Portuguese**, *Panjim* or *Goa*, on the Malabar coast, with a capital of the same name; *Diu* and *Damao* in Gujrat.

The **French** possess: *Chandernagore*, above Calcutta; *Yanaon*, at the mouth of the Godavery; *Pondicherry*, the capital, on the Coromandel coast; and *Mahé*, on the Malabar coast, near Calicut.

ISLANDS.

Ceylon is rather less than New Brunswick in size, and is situated at the south-eastern extremity of India, with which it is almost connected by a chain of shoals called Adam's Bridge. The *Gulf of Manaar* and *Palk Strait* are between it and the mainland. Area, 24,702 square miles; population, 2,758,166.

It is mountainous in surface, and possesses a much more healthy climate than the mainland. It abounds with precious stones. In the Gulf of Manaar are valuable pearl fisheries.

Colombo (112,000) is the capital and chief seaport, ex-

porting large quantities of coffee. *Trincomalee* possesses a magnificent harbor. *Candy* is the ancient capital.

The **Laccadive** and **Maldive Islands**, on the west, are coral islands. They are low, and of little importance. The *Andaman* and *Nicobar Islands*, in the Bay of Bengal, are mountainous, and yield valuable timber.

FARTHER INDIA.

Area, about 715,400 square miles; one-fourth the size of British North America; population, 33,600,000; persons to a square mile, 47.

Farther India includes the countries south-west of China and south-east of British India. It comprises Burmah, Siam, the Laos or Shan States, Annam, Kambodia, French Cochin China, and the Malay Peninsula.

Mountain ranges extend north and south through the peninsula, and between them flow large and important rivers; the *Irawadi* and *Saluen* into the Gulf of Martaban, the *Menam* into the Gulf of Siam, and the *Mekong* into the China Sea. From the south-west the narrow *Malay Peninsula* stretches southwards, and is separated from the Island of Sumatra by the *Strait of Malacca*. Very little is known of the interior. The soil is fertile, producing rice, cotton, sugar, and indigo. The forests are very extensive, and the trees, growing to an enormous size, include teak, sandalwood, rosewood, cinnamon, and sago and other palms. Laos produces benzoin and gumlac; gamboge is peculiar to Kambodia. The forests are the haunts of vast numbers of monkeys; tigers and elephants also abound. Gold, silver, copper, and tin are found, especially in the eastern parts.

The inhabitants are chiefly Buddhists, except the Malays, who are Mohammedans. In Annam they assimilate more to the Chinese. All the native governments are despotic.

Burmah lies to the north-east of the British Provinces. The hills are low, but they are densely covered with forests of teak and other valuable timber. Rice is the staple production and chief article of food. Burmah contains about 4,000,000 inhabitants.

Ava (50,000), the former capital, is situated on the Irrawady, about 400 miles from its mouth. Near it are large wells of petroleum. *Mandalay* (90,000), a little north-west of Ava, is the capital. *Bhamo*, in the north, carries on the principal trade with China.

Siam lies to the north-east of Burmah, and is watered by the Menam River. It includes also the northern part of the peninsula of Malacca. The country is very fertile, producing rice, sugar, cocoa, besides palms and fruits in great abundance. It exports gamboge and gumlac. It is inhabited by a mixed population of about 5,700,000, consisting of Siamese, Chinese, and Malays. They are mostly Buddhists.

Bangkok (255,000), the capital, is situated on the Menam, about 20 miles from its mouth. A great part of the city is on the river, and is built upon bamboo rafts, each supporting several houses, and arranged into streets. *Ayuthia*, the former capital, is situated on an island formed by the Menam.

The **Laos**, or *Shan States*, occupy the country watered by the upper part of the Menam, north of Siam, and that watered by the Mekong, east of Siam. They consist of a number of semi-independent States tributary to Siam. The country is fertile but little known. Most of the trade is with Siam.

Annam comprises two provinces: *Tonquin* on the north and *Cochin China* on the east coast. It is watered by the Mekong. In the north and west are vast alluvial plains, very fertile and well cultivated. Cochin China is more mountainous. It produces rice, sugar, cinnamon, and gamboge. Annam is nominally subject to China, but is practically independent. The population is about 21,000,000.

Hué (100,000), the capital, is situated about ten miles from the east coast, on a navigable river, and is strongly fortified. *Hanoi* or *Kesho* (150,000), in the north, has a considerable trade.

Kambodia, to the south of Siam, is a separate State under the protection of France.

The present State is only the feeble remnant of a once powerful and flourishing kingdom, the civilization of which is attested by numerous magnificent architectural remains. *Pemmpeuh* (20,000) is the capital.

French Cochin China lies to the south-west of Kambodia, at the mouth of the Mekong. Its climate is fatal to Europeans. *Saigon* (180,000) is the capital.

The **British Straits Settlement** in the Malay Peninsula include *Penang*, or Prince of Wales Island, *Wellesley*, *Malacca*, and the *Island of Singapore*. Their total area is about 14,450 square miles, and their population about 390,000. *Singapore* (139,000), on the island of the same name, and the seat of a large commerce, is the capital.

The **Malay Peninsula** is traversed by mountains from north to south. It is divided amongst a number of petty States. The inhabitants are Mohammedans, and belong to the Malay family. They formerly lived by piracy, but the influence of Britain has in a great measure put an end to it. The forests supply timber and gutta-percha, but trade and industry are altogether neglected.

CHINESE EMPIRE.

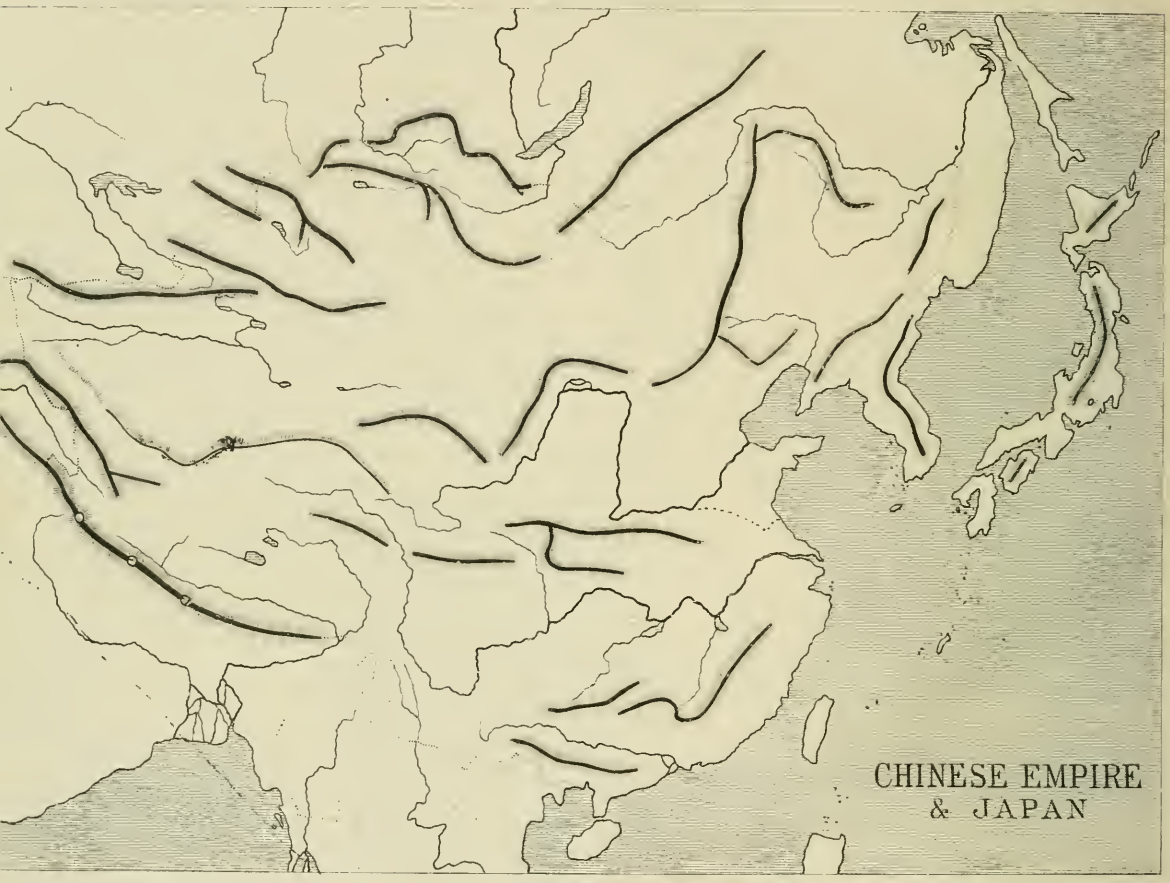
Area, 4,460,000 square miles; one and a half times the size of the Dominion of Canada; population, about 370,000,000.

The **Chinese Empire** consists of *China Proper* in the south-east; *Tibet* in the south-west; *Mongolia* in the north; *Manchooria* in the north-east; *Dzungaria* in the north-west; and *Eastern Turkestan* or *Kashgaria* in the west.

CHINESE EMPIRE
& JAPAN.
MONGOLIA
MANCHURIA
EASTERN TURKESTAN
TIBET
CHINA
INDIA
BURMA
SIAM
JAPAN
COREA
SIBERIA
Yellow Sea
Eastern Sea
South China Sea
BAY OF BENGAL
PACIFIC OCEAN
SEA OF JAPAN
Longitude East of Greenwich
English Miles
J. Bartholomew. Edin.r

EXERCISES ON THE LESSON.

What is the area of China? Population? Size? Where is it situated? How is it bounded? Describe its surface. Name its principal rivers. Describe the great canal. Describe the chief features of the coast. Describe the climate. The soil. The chief products. What is brought from India? What is said of the minerals of China? Of the manufactures? For what are the Chinese remarkable? What is said of trade with foreigners? Of the population? Of the political state of the country? Of the Great Wall? Of learning, &c.? Of the language? Of the government? Of the religion? Describe the chief cities. Point them out on the map. Where are they situated? What ports are open to foreigners? Point them out on the map. Where are they situated? Describe the islands belonging to China. Point them out on the map, and describe where they are situated. Where is Tibet situated? Point it out on the map. How is it bounded? Describe its surface. Name the rivers rising in Tibet. Trace their courses on the map. Describe Lake Palte. What is said of the climate? Of the soil and animals? For what is Tibet famous? What is said of the government, &c. What is the area of Japan? Population? Size? Of what is the Empire of Japan composed? Describe their position and their surface. The climate. The soil and products. What is said of the people? For what are the Japanese famous? What minerals are found? What is said of civilization in Japan? Of the exclusiveness of the people? Of the government? Of the emperors and nobles? Describe the chief towns



EXERCISES ON THE MAP.

What countries adjoin China Proper on the south? On the west? What two seas are on the east? What gulf is on the south-east? In the north-east? What large rivers flow through China? What large island is to the east? How is it separated from China? What mountains are in the south of China Proper? In the west? Where is Hong-Kong? Canton? Pekin? Nankin? Foochow? In what direction from Hong-Kong is Pekin? Nankin? Calcutta? What ocean is between America and China? How is Tibet separated from Hindostan? From Eastern Turkestan? How is Mongolia separated from Eastern Turkestan? From Russia in Asia? How is Manchooria separated from Russia in Asia?—(see Asia.) How is Turkestan separated from Eastern Turkestan? What sea is on the west of it? What peninsula is on the east of the Chinese Empire? What large islands are near the eastern coast? How are they separated from the mainland? Where is Yarkand situated? Where Urga? Where Bokhara? Gobi desert?

It occupies the great central and eastern slope of Asia, is enclosed on three sides by the highest mountains, and watered by three of the greatest rivers of Asia. On the north are the *Altai Mountains*, on the south the *Himalayas*, and on the west the *Pamir*. From the west the *Kuen-Luen* and *Thian Shan Mountains* extend eastwards in two parallel chains through the centre of the country, and in China Proper the *Peling* and *Nanling Mountains* extend also in the same direction. Between these mountain chains flow the *Amur* in the north, the *Hoangho* in the middle, and the *Yang-tse-kiang* and *Chukiang* or *Takiang* in the south.

In the west are high table-lands, from 4,000 to 10,000 feet above the sea. The centre is an extensive elevated sandy plain, called the desert of *Shamo* or *Gobi*. Towards the sea-coast the land is lower and more level.

CHINA PROPER.

Area, including the islands Hainan and Formosa, 1,553,997 square miles; nearly half the size of the Dominion of Canada; population, estimated at about 350,000,000; persons to a square mile, 225.

China Proper is the most important part of the country, and lies north-east of Burmah and Annam. In the west it is mountainous, but more level towards the coast. Between Pekin and Nankin is a vast level plain, which is the most densely populated part of the empire. The country is watered by the *Peiho*, *Hoangho*, *Yang-tse-kiang*, *Chukiang*, and other rivers; and the cultivation of the ground is much assisted by numerous large canals. The great canal extends from Hangchow to a branch of the Peiho, and is over 700 miles long. It is 200 feet wide at the top, with varying depth, and is carried over all obstructions, making the deepest and largest canal in the world. The coast is washed on the south by the *China Sea*, and on the east by the *Yellow Sea* and *Gulf of Pechili*. In the south the climate is hot, and is subject in summer to typhoons, or terrific hurricanes; but in the north it is milder, although the extremes of heat and cold are great. The soil is fertile, and is most carefully cultivated, no part being allowed to lie idle, in order to be able to support the vast number of inhabitants. China supplies the world with tea, exporting 154,000,000 pounds to Britain alone in 1878. Rice forms the principal food of the inhabitants; but wheat and other grains are also cultivated. The mulberry, tallow, and camphor trees—the two latter peculiar to China—are cultivated. Opium is extensively used, and is imported chiefly from India. Gold, copper, coal, and other minerals are found in various parts. The Chinese are celebrated for their manufactures of silks, porcelain, cotton, ivory, and paper. The manufacture of paper and gunpowder, the art of printing, and the mariner's compass, were known in China long before they were discovered in Europe, and great advancement had been made in astronomy; but for centuries the Chinese have been at a stand-still, and are making little further progress.

Trade with foreigners was formerly confined to the port of Canton; in 1842 several additional ports were opened to foreign commerce, but it was not till 1860, when Pekin was taken and occupied for a time by the British, that the country began to be opened up. At the present time twenty-four ports (called Treaty ports) are open to foreign trade. Iron, steel, woollens, and other goods are imported from Europe, and cotton and opium from India.

China is the most densely-peopled country of its size in the world, although England, Belgium, and other small countries contain a greater number of persons to the square mile. According to the most trustworthy estimates, it contains nearly one-fourth of the whole population on the globe, although less than one-half the size of the United States.

For two centuries China has been governed by a Tatar dynasty. The Great Wall on the northern frontier, 1,400 miles long, is supposed to have been built 200 years before the Christian era, and is carried over hills and valleys. It was intended to protect the country from the inroads of the Tatars.

Learning and parental authority are held in high esteem by the Chinese; and the chief men, or mandarins, are selected for their proficiency in learning. The language is monosyllabic, and requires a distinct written character for every word, rendering it one of the most remarkable and difficult in the world. The government is a despotism; the religion is a mixture of Buddhism with the systems of Laoutze and Confucius, two philosophers who flourished respectively about 550 and 500 years before Christ. The religious system of Laoutze is called Taouism.

Pekin (1,000,000), the capital, on the Peiho, is about 50 miles south of the Great Wall. It is divided into two separate towns, the Tatar and Chinese—the former containing the imperial palace and gardens. In 1860 it was captured by an allied English and French force; and the British ambassador now resides there. *Nankin* (500,000), the former capital, is on the Yang-tse-kiang, about 100 miles from its mouth. Nankin contained a famous porcelain tower, which was destroyed by the rebels a few years ago. It is the chief seat of learning, and is noted for its manufactures.

Canton (1,500,000) until lately was the only port with which Europeans could trade. It is situated on the Chukiang River, about 70 miles from its mouth. A large part of the population lives in boats on the river. Among the other ports now open to foreigners are: *Amoy*, situated on the coast opposite the Island of Formosa, with a magnificent harbor; *Foochow* (600,000), farther north;

Ningpo (120,000), with silk manufactures; *Shanghae* (280,000), near the mouth of the Yang-tse-kiang, with the principal foreign trade; *Tien-tsin* (950,000), where the treaty of 1858 was signed; and *Han-kow* (700,000), situated several hundred miles up the Yang-tse-kiang.

Islands.—*Hainan* (2,500,000), to the south, is a large island at the eastern extremity of the Gulf of Tonquin. It is mountainous, and exports timber, rice, sugar, pearls, and coral.

Formosa (3,000,000), separated from China by the strait of the same name, is a large and fertile island, with numerous volcanic mountains. It exports rice, salt, etc.

Hong-Kong, a small island at the mouth of the Canton River, 37 miles from Macao, and 100 from Canton, became a British settlement in 1842. The chief town is *Victoria* (100,000). *Macao* is a Portuguese settlement, at the mouth of the Canton River.

Tibet lies between the Kuen-Luen and Himalaya Mountains. It consists of high table-lands, having an average altitude of 15,000 feet.

Many large **rivers** take their rise in Tibet, as the *Indus*, *Sutlaj*, *Brahmaputra* or *Sanpu*, and *Yang-tse-kiang*. *Lake Palte* is a remarkable ring of water round an island 100 miles in circumference. *Lake Namcho* or *Tengri Nor* is remarkable for its great elevation, being 15,200 feet above the level of the sea.

The **climate**, owing to the great elevation, is in winter cold and dry, but it is hot in summer; and owing to the refraction of the heat from the plains, the snow-line on the Tibet side of the Himalayas is nearly 3,000 feet higher than on the south side. The country is well adapted for pasturage, and large flocks of the yak, sheep, deer, and Kashmir goat are reared. Part of the west is subject to Kashmir.

Tibet is the chief seat of Buddhism, and the Grand Lama, or Dalai Lama, supposed to be an incarnation of Buddha, lives at *Lassa* in great splendor. The Government is in the hands of the Chinese, and the Viceroy also lives at Lassa, which is the capital.

Mongolia extends from the Khingan Mountains, which separate it from Manchuria, to Dzungaria; and from the Altai Mountains to Tibet. The country is an elevated table-land, bordered by mountains, and a great part of it is covered by the desert of Gobi. The people are pastoral, possessing numerous herds of horses, oxen, and camels. They are chiefly Mongols, descendants of the fierce warriors who, under Zenghis Khan, overran and conquered a great part of Asia. The trade is principally with China.

Urga (50,000), south of Lake Baikal, is the capital, and the residence of the Lama of the Mongols. South-west of Urga are the ruins of Karakorum, the former capital of Zenghis Khan.

Manchuria lies between the Khingan Mountains and the Corea. The surface is mountainous, and covered with forests. The *Amoor* flows through it. The climate is cold, and wheat will scarcely grow. Oats and millet are the chief produce. The Manchus conquered China in 1616–44, and still hold the imperial crown.

Moukden is the chief town, and the former capital of the Manchu dynasty. The present capital is *Kirin-Oula* or *Girin*, on the Sungari.

Chinese Turkistan, or KASHGARIA, lies between the Kuen-Luen and Thian Shan Mountains. The whole of the country forms part of the elevated table-lands of Asia, and in the east is the vast desert of Gobi or Shamo, extending into Mongolia. The country is cold, owing to its elevation, and is only adapted for pasturage. The inhabitants are Tatars. They were formerly subject to China, but became independent in 1864. In 1877–8 they were reconquered by China, and nearly exterminated.

Yarkand (150,000), the commercial centre, is situated in a fertile plain, and is the chief emporium of the caravan trade between China and Western Asia. *Kashgar*, in the north-west, is the capital.

Dzungaria lies to the north of the Thian Shan Mountains. It is mountainous in surface, and is peopled by the Mongol Tatars. *Ili*, or *Kuldja*, does a considerable trade with Russia.

COREA.

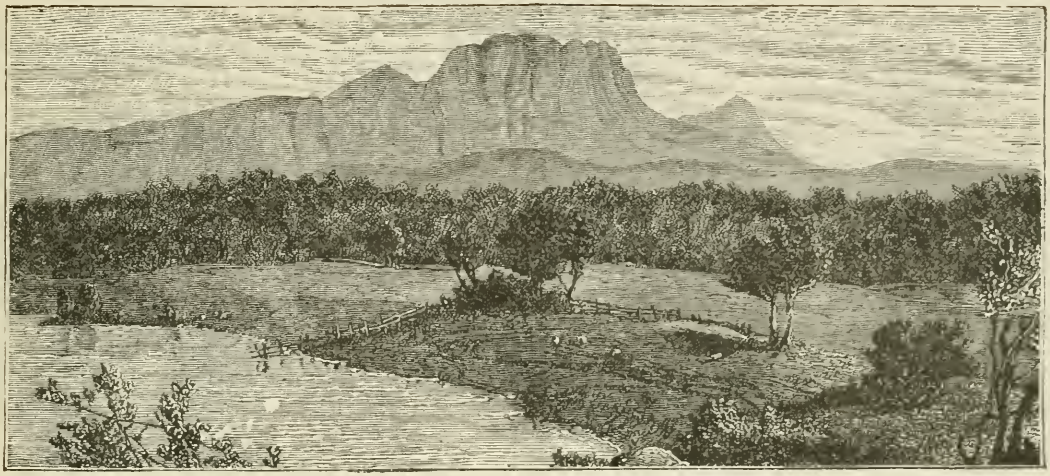
Area, 91,400 square miles; about half the size of Ontario; population, 8,500,000; persons to a square mile, 93.

Corea is a peninsula lying to the south-east of Manchuria. It was formerly tributary to China, but is now an independent kingdom. The country is mountainous and the climate extreme, being hot in summer and cold in winter. The people are Mongols, and resemble the Chinese both in appearance and in language. Buddhism is the principal religion. The king is absolute, both in politics and in religion. The chief products are rice and other grains, hemp, cotton, tobacco, and the medicinal plant, ginseng. Gold is abundant. *King-ki-tao* is the capital. Foreigners are jealously excluded from the country.

INDEPENDENT TURKISTAN.

Area, 194,300 square miles; about the size of Quebec; population, about 3,280,000; persons to a square mile, 17.

Independent Turkistan is situated between Russia and Eastern Turkistan, from which it is separated by the Pamir. The Oxus, as far west as longitude 66°, and thence a line running to Persia near the 37th parallel of north latitude, about forty miles south of Merv, form the southern boundary, separating it from Afghanistan. The greater part of the country consists of sandy steppes



BEN LOMOND, TASMANIA.

TASMANIA.

Tasmania, or **Van Diemen's Land** (115,700), is an island lying to the south-east of Australia, from which it is separated by Bass's Strait. It is nearly as large as New Brunswick. The surface is hilly, and the coast indented with fine bays and harbors. The climate is mild and healthy, and the soil fruitful. Area, 26,215 square miles.

Hobart Town (21,000), the capital, is on the River Derwent, which flows into Storm Bay, on the south-east of the island. It is beautifully situated, being surrounded by hills.

Launceston is on the north side of the island, on the River Tamar, which flows into Bass's Strait.

NEW ZEALAND.

New Zealand consists of two large islands and several smaller ones, lying about 1,100 miles south-east of Australia. The larger islands are called *North Island* and *South Island*, and are separated by Cook's Strait. *Stewart Island* is small, and is separated from South Island by Foveaux Strait. The **area**, 106,260 square miles, is about the same as that of Great Britain and Ireland. Along the west coast of both of the large islands extends an elevated chain of mountains, many of their peaks being covered with perpetual snow. *Mount Egmont*, in North Island, is over 8,000 feet high; other peaks rise to a higher elevation, culminating in *Mount Cook* (13,200), in the South Island. There are a number of small rivers, some of them navigable. The **climate** is mild and healthy, and the soil fertile, producing most of the grains and fruits of Southern Europe. The taro, sweet potato, and flax are cultivated, and sheep are extensively raised for their wool.

The **population** is about 490,000, of which 55,000 are natives. These are called Maories, and are of the Malay race—a tall, well-formed, intelligent race, brave and determined in war, in which they have been often engaged with the British colonists.

New Zealand is divided into nine provinces. In North Island are *Auckland*, with a capital of the same name; *Taranaki*, with *New Plymouth*, the chief city; *Hawke's Bay*, capital, *Napier*; and *Wellington* (about 22,000), with *Wellington* for its capital. In South Island are *Marlborough*, with *Blenheim* and *Picton*; *Nelson*, with *Nelson*, the chief place; *Canterbury*, with *Christchurch*; *Otago*, with *Dunedin*, near which are valuable gold fields, *Riverton*, *Invercargill*, and *Westland*.

Norfolk Island, to the north of New Zealand, was formerly a penal settlement, but it now belongs to the Pitcairn Islanders.

Chatham, *Antipodes* (so called from being the land most nearly opposite to Great Britain in the southern hemisphere), *Auckland*, and other islands to the south-east of New Zealand, are stations for the South Sea whale and seal fishery.

PAPUA, or NEW GUINEA.

Papua, or **New Guinea**, next to Australia and Greenland the largest island on the globe, is situated to the north of Australia, from which it is separated by Torres Strait. It lies directly under the equator

On some parts of the coast it is mountainous, but the interior is still unexplored. It is not peopled by any civilized nation, and is visited only by the Chinese and Malays for trepang and edible birds' nests. The beautiful bird of paradise is a native of the island.

The numerous groups of islands lying to the east of New Guinea and Australia are but little known. The principal are: *Admiralty Islands*, *New Ireland*, *New Britain*, *Louisiade Archipelago*, *Solomon Islands*, *Queen Charlotte Islands*, *New Hebrides*, and *New Caledonia*.

The French have possessed New Caledonia since 1854.

POLYNESIA.

Polynesia is the name given to the vast number of islands scattered over the Pacific Ocean, chiefly within 30° north and south of the equator. The larger islands are volcanic, but most of the smaller ones have been produced by the labors of coral insects.

The principal groups north of the equator are: the *Ladrone*, or Marianne, *Pelew*, *Caroline*, *Marshall*, *Gilbert*, and *Sandwich Islands*. South of the equator are: the *Fiji*, *Friendly*, or Tonga, *Navigator's*, or Samoa, *Cook's*, or Hervey, and *Society Islands*, the *Low Archipelago*, and *Marquesas Islands*.

The coral islands are generally very small, and are raised but a few feet above the level of the ocean. They are often semicircular in shape, with a lagoon of still water between the land and the reefs. Those of volcanic formation are mountainous, with rich and fertile valleys, as the Marquesas, Society, and Sandwich Islands. In *Hawaii*, one of the latter group, there are two volcanic mountains, rising upwards of 13,000 feet in height. Although these islands are nearly all within the torrid zone, the climate is delightful and healthy, being tempered by the sea breezes. The soil is remarkable for its fertility, producing the cocoa-palm, bread-fruit, plantains, bananas, yams, and other tropical trees and fruits.

The natives are chiefly of the Malay race, and are well-built, and active; differing greatly, however, in disposition, being mild and hospitable in some islands, and in others savage and treacherous. The Fiji Islands, as well as the Papuan Archipelago, are inhabited by the Australnegro race, who are among the lowest and most degraded inhabitants of the world. The Fiji Islands are fertile, and form convenient stopping-places on the voyage between San Francisco and Australia. They were annexed to Britain in 1875.

The **Sandwich** and Society Islands are the most important groups in Polynesia, and their inhabitants have made the greatest advances in civilization. The Sandwich Islands have a population of about 57,000. They are regularly visited by whaling and other vessels, and trade in their own ships with America and with China. *Hawaii* is the largest island, and it was there that Captain Cook, the discoverer, was killed. *Honolulu* (14,852), on one of the smaller islands, is the capital.

The largest of the Society Islands is *Tahiti*, or Otaheite. It contains a population of 10,000, and is memorable as the scene of the mutiny of the *Bounty*. *Pitcairn Island*, where the mutineers settled, is south-east of the Low Archipelago. The Society Islands are now under the control of France. Christian missions have been very successful in Polynesia, many of the islands being completely Christianized.

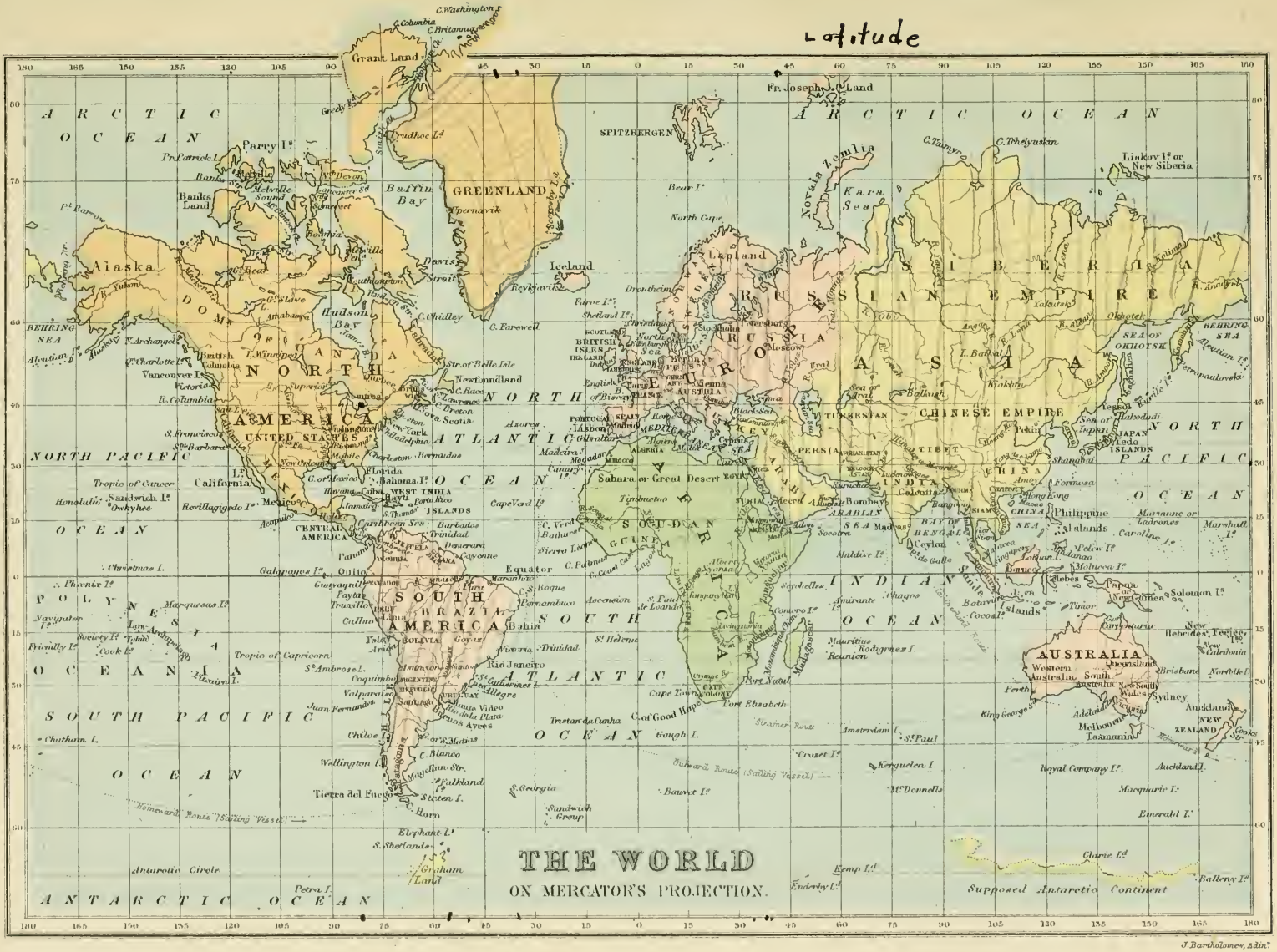
ANTARCTICA.

This name is given to several extensive tracts of land supposed to form part of a Southern Continent, and a number of islands which have been discovered in the Antarctic Ocean.

The principal tract of land is *South Victoria*, lying to the south of New Zealand, discovered in 1840 by Sir James Ross. It is covered with glaciers and perpetual snow, and has lofty mountains along the coast. Its most notable feature is the great volcano of *Mount Erebus*, 12,400 feet high, the flames of which rise to a considerable height above its crater, and throw a weird light over these desolate regions. Farther east is *Mount Terror*, another volcano, nearly 11,000 feet high. Both are named from the exploring ships, *Erebus* and *Terror*. West of these is the south magnetic pole.

The other principal tracts are: *Adelia* and *Sabrina Lands*, south of Australia; farther west, *Enderby* and *Kemp Lands*, south of Madagascar; and *Graham Land*, 600 miles south of Cape Horn. Round the coast of Graham Land are numerous islands—the *South Shetland*, *South Orkney*, *South Georgian Islands*, and others. Besides these, are a number of small islands, lying much farther north, of the same cold, barren, and desolate character. They are chiefly volcanic in formation. Their shores are frequented by the albatross and vast numbers of penguins; seals and whales abound in the neighboring seas. The more notable of these smaller islands are: *Tristan d'Acunha*, *Prince Edward*, *Marion*, *Crozet's*, *Kerguelen*, *Amsterdam*, *St. Paul's*, and *Macquarie*.

THE END.


Latitude
Longitude
THE WORLD
ON MERCATOR'S PROJECTION.
Supposed Antarctic Continent
ARCTIC OCEAN
ANTARCTIC OCEAN
NORTH PACIFIC OCEAN
SOUTH PACIFIC OCEAN
ATLANTIC OCEAN
INDIAN OCEAN
NORTH AMERICA
SOUTH AMERICA
EUROPE
ASIA
AFRICA
AUSTRALIA
GREENLAND
RUSSIAN EMPIRE
SIBERIA
CHINESE EMPIRE
Grant Land
Fr. Joseph's Land
Parry Is
Banks Land
Baffin Bay
Iceland
Lapland
Alaska
Hudson Bay
Sahara or Great Desert
Equator
Tropic of Cancer
Tropic of Capricorn
Arctic Circle
Antarctic Circle
Behring Sea
Sea of Okhotsk
North Sea
Baltic Sea
Mediterranean Sea
Red Sea
Persian Gulf
Arabian Sea
Bay of Bengal
China Sea
Japan Sea
Caribbean Sea
Gulf of Mexico
Hudson's Bay
Davis Strait
Behring Strait
Magellan Str.
Cape Horn
Cape of Good Hope
Cape Verd
Cape Guardafui
Cape Comorin
Cape Horn
Cape Town
Port Elisabeth
Tierra del Fuego
Falkland Is.
Greenland
Iceland
Spitzbergen
Nova Zembla
Kara Sea
Lake Baikal
Lake Superior
Lake Michigan
Lake Huron
Lake Erie
Lake Ontario
Lake Winnipeg
Great Bear L.
Great Slave L.
Great Salt L.
Aral Sea
Caspian Sea
Dead Sea
Black Sea
Sea of Azof
Sea of Marmora
Sea of Japan
Yellow Sea
Gulf of Guinea
Gulf of Aden
Gulf of Siam
Gulf of Bengal
Gulf of Mexico
Gulf of St. Lawrence
Gulf of Carpentaria
Gulf of Penas
Gulf of Alaska
Gulf of Finland
Gulf of Bothnia
Gulf of Lyons
Gulf of Venice
Gulf of Genoa
Gulf of Taranto
Gulf of Corinth
Gulf of Patras
Gulf of Smyrna
Gulf of Suez
Gulf of Akaba
Gulf of Oman
Gulf of Cambay
Gulf of Manaar
Gulf of Martaban
Gulf of Tonquin
Gulf of Siam

or plains, except in the east, which is very elevated. The rivers *Sir* and *Amu* or *Oxus* flow westward into the Sea of Aral, an inland salt lake about the size of Lake Superior, but very shallow, and decreasing in area.

The extremes of heat and cold are great, and the only fertile parts of the country are those along the courses of the rivers. The most fertile districts are Bokhara and Khiva on the Amu, where rice, silk, and cotton are produced; and Merv in the Turkoman country.

Turkistan forms part of ancient Scythia. In the north, round Lake Aral, the inhabitants are of the Kirghis tribe, and are wandering and nomadic. The country is divided into a number of petty independent States, the principal of which are the Khanates of Khiva and Bokhara. The dominant people in these two khanates are the Usbegs, an active and intelligent race; the governments are despotic, and the religion is Mohammedan. The trade is chiefly carried on by caravans with Russia, China, and Persia.

Bokhara (100,000) is the centre of the caravan trade, and manufactures cottons and silks. *Khiva*, a place of three or four thousand mud-built houses, is the great slave market of Turkistan. *Merv* is an ancient town in an oasis formed by the Murghab.

RUSSIA IN ASIA.

Area, 6,210,000 square miles: nearly twice the size of the Dominion of Canada; population, 12,860,000; rather more than two persons to the square mile.

Russia in Asia is bounded on the north by the Arctic Ocean; on the west by the Ural Mountains and Ural River; on the south by Turkey, Persia, Independent Turkistan, and the Chinese Empire; and on the east by the Pacific Ocean.

It is divided into Siberia, Trans-Caucasia south of the Caucasus Mountains, the Trans-Caspian district, lying on the east of the Caspian Sea, and Central Asia or Russian Turkistan, lying east of the Sea of Aral, between Siberia and Independent Turkistan. Owing to the severity of the climate, by far the larger portion is but thinly peopled.

The north of Siberia consists of vast, frozen, treeless steppes, or tundras, but in the south it is mountainous, and covered with forests. The slope of the country is northwards. In the south are the *Caucasus Mountains*, between the Black and Caspian Seas; and the *Altai Mountains*, extending from Turkistan in a north-easterly direction, and continued to the Pacific under the names of the *Yablonoi* and *Stanovoi Mountains*. The rivers are large, but slow, owing to the level nature of the country, and all flow north into the Arctic Ocean. They are unfit for navigation, as in the lower part of their courses they are continually covered with ice. The principal are the *Obi*, *Yenisei*, and *Lena*. The principal lakes are: *Aral*, *Balkash*, and *Baikal*, all in the south. The peninsula of *Kamschatka* extends from the north-east into the Pacific, and encloses the *Sea of Okhotsk*. In the Arctic Ocean are the *Liakhov Islands*, which are uninhabited, but contain remarkable fossil remains of elephants. The island of *Saghalien* belongs also to Russia.

The climate is intensely cold, becoming more so towards the east. East of the Lena is the coldest inhabited region in the world, being more so than any part of the American continent.

The country derives its importance from its valuable mines of gold, silver, platinum, copper, and iron, which are found in the Ural and Altai Mountains, and from its trade in furs. The mines are under Government control, and are worked by political exiles and criminals. Fur-bearing animals abound—such as the ermine, sable, beaver, marten, and others. Bears, wolves, wild boars, and the argali, or wild sheep, are numerous. The inhabitants are chiefly of Tatar origin in the south, and Samoieds, resembling the Eskimos, in the north; the Kirghis tribes roam over the country north of the Sea of Aral; the people of Kamschatka are of short stature, and use the dog for drawing their sledges. The towns are principally inhabited by European Russians, who carry on the trade of the country. Political and other criminals are banished from Russia in Europe to Siberia. Siberia is divided into Western and Eastern.

In Western Siberia, *Tobolsk* (20,000) is the chief town and centre of commerce. It is situated at the junction of the Tobol and Irtish, tributaries of the Obi. *Omsk* (26,000) and *Tomsk* (23,000) are capitals of provinces of the same names, and considerable towns. *Ekaterinburg* has valuable mines.

In Eastern Siberia, *Irkutsk* (27,000), on Lake Baikal, is the capital, and *Kiakta* the chief station on the route between Russia and China. *Nertchinsk*, on the Amoor, has valuable mines. *Yakutsk*, on the Lena, and *Okotsk*, on the river of the same name, are considerable towns. *Petropaulovski* is a port in Kamschatka, and *Vladivostock* is an important fortified naval station on the Sea of Japan.

The Trans-Caucasian provinces consist of the districts lying to the south of the Caucasus Mountains, between the Black and Caspian Seas. The Circassians inhabit the Caucasus Mountains, and were continually at war with Russia for their liberty, until they were finally conquered in 1864. They are generally Mohammedans, while the Georgians belong to the Greek Church.

South of the Caucasus are *Tiflis* (10,400), on the Kur, the capital; *Erican*, on a branch of the Aras; *Baku*, on the Caspian Sea; *Batoum*, an important fortified port on the Black Sea; and *Kars*, a famous stronghold taken from the Turks in the war of 1877-8.

FUSI YAMA, THE SACRED MOUNTAIN OF JAPAN.

JAPAN.

Area. 147,670 square miles; one-fifth less than Ontario in size; population, 36,357,000; persons to a square mile, 246.

The **Empire of Japan** consists of the *Islands of Yezo* (or Jesso), *Hondo* or *Niphon*, *Shikoku* (also written Sikok and Sikopf), and *Kiusiu*, with numerous small islands, dependencies of the larger ones. The *Kurile*, *Loo-choo*, and *Bonin* Islands belong also to Japan.

The Japan Islands are separated from Corea and Manchuria by *Corea Strait* and the *Sea of Japan*. The main islands are traversed by lofty mountains, rising to the height of 12,000 feet, and covered with perpetual snow. Some of them are volcanoes.

Yesso and the northern islands are cold, and not very productive; but in the southern islands the land is very carefully cultivated, and produces rice, tea, cotton, and silk. As in China, the country is densely peopled; and even every mountain is cultivated as far as possible, in order to supply the wants of the large population. The Japanese are famous for their japanned and lacquered wares; porcelain and silk are also extensively manufactured. Gold, silver, copper, and tin are found in considerable quantities.

Like the Chinese, the Japanese are highly civilized, and have made great progress in manufactures and sciences. They were very exclusive, and up to 1854 only a few Chinese and two Dutch vessels were allowed annually to trade at Nagasaki. Since then, the Americans in 1854, and the British in 1858, concluded treaties with them, by which several other ports were opened for foreign trade. Within the last few years, no country in the world has made such rapid progress as Japan. Railways and steamships have been built, education has been greatly encouraged, and European institutions generally adopted.

The **government** is a despotism, and consisted formerly of two sovereigns—a spiritual emperor, called the Dairi, or Mikado, who was looked upon as semi-divine, was invisible to the people, and who resided at Miako; and the executive chief, or Sho-goon, called by the Chinese the Tycoon, who resided at Yedo, both in the island of Niphon. The nobles, or Daimios, were very powerful, and almost independent princes. In 1868, after six months' war, this divided sovereignty was terminated, and the Mikado now reigns supreme.

Tokio, formerly called *Yedo* (900,000), is the largest town and capital. *Kioto* or *Miako* (225,000), the sacred capital, where dwells the Mikado, is the principal manufacturing and commercial town in Hondo. *Matsmai* is the chief town of Yezo. *Yokohama*, *Simoda*, and *Kanagawa*, in Hondo, *Nagasaki* in Kiusiu, and *Hakodadi* in Yezo, are the principal ports now open to foreigners. *Komamotou* (300,000) is the second city in population; and *Osaka* (270,000), *Kagosima* (200,000), and *Magoya* (125,000) are important cities.

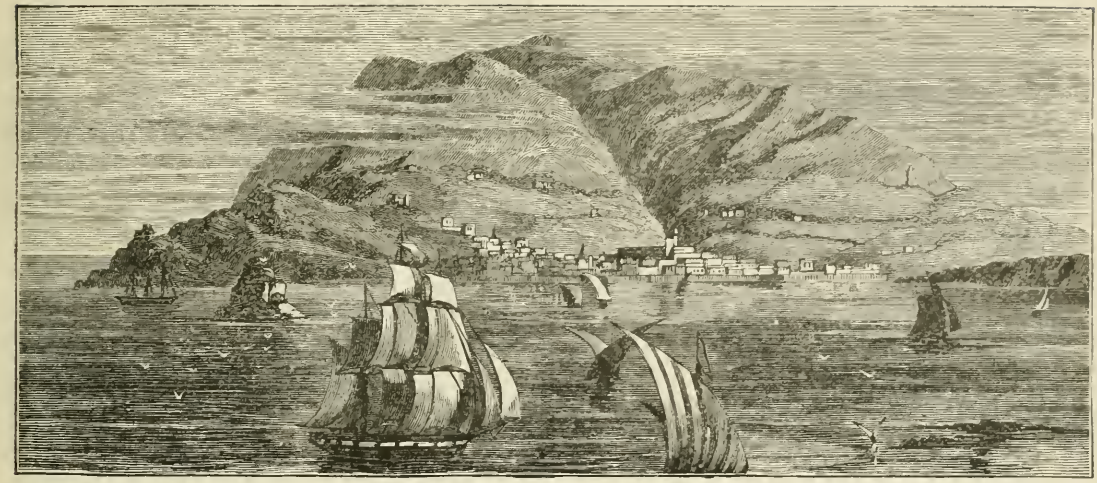
AFRICA
EUROPE
ASIA
FRANCE
SPAIN
PORTUGAL
TURKEY
Bay of Biscay
Black Sea
Caspian Sea
Aral Sea
Mediterranean Sea
Madrid
Lisbon
Constantinople
Smyrna
Athens
Sicily
Corsica
Sardinia
Malta
Cyprus
Crete
Azores (to Portugal)
S. Miguel
Madeira I. (to Portugal)
Canary Is. (to Spain)
Ferro I.
Tenerife
C. Bojador
Str. of Gibraltar
Gibraltar
Ceuta
Tangier
Salee
Rabat
Mogador
Algiers
Oran
Bona
Tunis
Tripoli
Benghazi
Derna
Barca
Alexandria
Rosetta
Damietta
Port Said
Suez
Cairo
Jerusalem
Ghadames
Ghat
Wargla
Insalah
Agadez
Fezzan
Mourzouk
Ghirza
Siwah
Ghizeh
Fayoum
Beni Suef
Thebes
Assouan
Medina
Mecca
Arabia
Persian Gulf
Red Sea
Nile
Libyan Desert
Egypt
Nubia
Sudan
Abyssinia
Gulf of Aden
Socotra
C. Guardafui
Somali
Galla
Ajan
Berbera
Zeila
Harar
Shoa
Ankober
Magdala
Gondokoro
Ismailia
Fatiko
Musa
Albert Nyanza
L. Samburu
Magadoxo
Juba
Victoria Nyanza
Mt. Kenia
Mt. Kilimanjaro
Mombas
Pemba I.
Zanzibar
Monfia I.
Quiloa
Aldabra I.
Farquhar Is.
Amber
Port Luke
Comoro Is.
Mayotta I.
Mozambique
St. Marie I.
Tamatave
Tamatarivo
Madagascar
C. St. Mary
Delagoa B.
Inhambane
C. Corrientes
Sofala
Quilimane
Mozambique Channel
Indian Ocean
Atlantic Ocean
Ascension I. (British)
St. Helena I. (British)
St. Paul de Loanda
Benguela
Mossamedes
C. Negro
C. Frio
Walfish B.
Damara Land
Great Namaqua Land
Ichaboe I.
Hottentots
Kalahari Desert
South African Republic (Transvaal)
Protectorate
Pretoria
Lydenburg
Zulu Land
Natal
D'Urban & Port Natal
Orange R.
Orange Free State
Bloemfontein
Cape Colony
Clanwilliam
Cape Town
Cape of Good Hope
C. Agulhas
Algoa b.
Port Elizabeth
Great Fish R.
Kei R.
Natalmaritzburg
Basuto
Transvaal
Limpopo R.
Zambesi R.
Shire R.
Nyassa
Lake Nyassa
Tete
Sena
Shirwa
Meto
Mozambique
Loanda
Angola
Benguela
Congo
Congo Free State
Congo R.
Loango
Gaboon R.
Gaboon
Cameroon Mt.
Cameroons
Biafra
Bight of Biafra
Bight of Benin
Gulf of Guinea
Equator
Fernando Po
St. Thomas I.
Princes I.
Annobon I.
Upper Guinea
Lower Guinea
Liberia
Sierra Leone
Freetown
Sherboro
Monrovia
Cape Palmas
Cape Three Points
Cape Coast Castle
Accra
Ashanti
Dahomey
Coomassie
Gold Coast
Slave Coast
Lagos
Popo
Benin
Eyeo
Rabba
Boussa
Yoruba
Houssa States
Sokoto
Gando
Kano
Bornu
Kouka
Lake Tchad
Lake Chad
Kanem
Wara
Waday
Darfur
Kobbe
Kordofan
Obeid
Sennar
Fazogl
Gallabat
Massowah
Khartoum
Shendy
Suakin
Berber
Dongola
New Dongola
Ibreem
Wady Halfa
Cataract
Assouan
Ipsambool
Derr
Tao
Yen
Bilma
Agades
Gao
Timbuctoo
Tintellust
Arawan
Wadan
Arguin
C. Blanco
Cape Verd
Bissagos
Bissao
Gambia R.
Senegal R.
Ladmanar
Senegambia
Timbuctoo
Niger R.
Benue R.
Chadda R.
Shary R.
Logone R.
Lake Leopold II
Lake Mantumbe
Lake Albert Edward
Lake Victoria
Lake Tanganyika
Lake Bangweolo
Lake Dilolo
Lake Ngami
Lake Shinte
Lake Liambye
Lake Aquidaban
Lake Dilolo
Lake Mweru
Lake Bemba
Lake Moero
Lake Kamalondo
Lake Kisale
Lake Kassali
Lake Lincoln

EXERCISES ON THE LESSON.

What is the area of Africa? Extent? Population? What is the form of Africa? How is it bounded? How may it be divided? What is said of Africa? Of the mountains? Describe the principal mountains. Where are they situated? Name the principal rivers of Africa. Describe the course of the Nile and recent discoveries connected with it. Name the principal lakes of Africa. Name the principal bays, gulfs, &c. Name the principal straits. Name the principal capes. Describe the climate of Africa. The Desert of Sahara. What is said of the winds from the desert? Of the climate in the north? In the south? In Cape Colony? Describe the soil and vegetation. The animals, &c. The inhabitants. The trade and exports of the country. What is the area of Egypt? Population? Size? Capital? How is Egypt bounded? What is said of the Nile? Describe the climate. Soil and products. What has been done by the Pacha? What is said of the government? Of the people? Of the religion? Describe the Isthmus of Suez. How is it traversed? For what is Egypt interesting? Describe the chief cities and places. What is the area of the British possessions? Population? Size? How are they situated? What is said of the country? Of the people? Of the climate and productions? Describe Cape Colony. How is it bounded? Describe its chief towns. Describe Natal and its chief towns. How is it bounded? Describe British Caffraria. Describe the Dutch republics. What countries are to the west of them? What is the size of Madagascar? Population? How is it situated? Describe it. Describe the climate. Soil and products. Minerals. Government. What is said of converts to Christianity? Describe the chief towns. Point them out on the map. Describe Ascension. St Helena. Mauritius. Where are they situated? What other islands belong to Britain? Describe their position. Describe the islands belonging to France. Where are they situated? Describe the Portuguese islands. Where are they situated? Describe the Spanish islands. Where are they situated? Describe Socotra. How is it situated?

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.

What ocean is on the west of Africa? What ocean on the east? How is Africa separated from Europe? From Asia? What is the southern point of Africa called? What is the most westerly point called? What is the most easterly point called? What large island is off the east coast? How is it separated from Africa? In what zone is the greater part of Africa? What countries or states are on the Mediterranean? On the Atlantic? On the Indian Ocean? On the Red Sea? Around Lake Chad? Which is the principal river of Africa? Where does it flow? What rivers flow into the Atlantic? What river into the Indian Ocean? What lakes are in the interior? How is Morocco separated from the Great Desert? How from Spain? What point is opposite Gibraltar? What country adjoins Morocco on the east? What islands are to the east of Morocco? Where is Morocco situated? Where Fez? Where Tangier? In what zone are the French possessions on the north coast of Africa? Cape Colony? What sea is on the north of Egypt? What on the east of Egypt, Nubia, and Abyssinia? How is this sea connected with the Indian Ocean? How is Egypt joined to Asia? What countries of Asia does it adjoin? Name the principal cities on the Nile in Egypt. In Nubia. What seaport is in Nubia? What city of Arabia is opposite to it? What seaport is in Abyssinia? What lake is in the centre of Africa? What rivers are in the west of Africa? Into what ocean do they flow? What mountains are in the west? What ocean washes the eastern shores of Africa? What large river flows into it? What large lakes are in the interior? What great river flows from them? What is the most easterly point of Africa called? What large island is to the east of Africa? How is it separated from Africa? What islands lie to the east of it? What islands lie to the north-east of it? What islands are to the north-west of Africa? How is Socotra situated? Ascension? Cape Verde Islands? What celebrated gulfs north of Tripoli?



FUNCHAL, ISLAND OF MADEIRA.

AFRICA.

Area, 11,515,000 square miles, comprising about one-fifth part of the land surface of the globe; greatest length from north to south, 5,000 miles, and from east to west, 4,600 miles; population, estimated at about 205,000,000.

Africa is a vast compact peninsula of a triangular form, almost entirely surrounded by water, and connected only with Asia by the Isthmus of Suez.

It is bounded on the north by the Mediterranean Sea; on the west by the Atlantic Ocean; on the south by the Southern Ocean; and on the east by the Indian Ocean and the Red Sea.

It may be divided into:

Northern Africa, or the Barbary States, comprising Marocco, Algeria, Tunis, Tripoli, and Barca.

The *Nile Region*, comprising Egypt, Nubia, and Abyssinia.

The *Sahara*.

Central Africa, or Soudan.

Equatorial Africa, or the Great Central Lake region.

Western Africa.

Southern Africa, including Cape Colony, Natal, etc.

Eastern Africa.

Less is known of Africa than of any other of the great divisions of the earth; but as many enterprising travellers, such as Livingstone, Barth, Burton, Grant, Speke, Baker, Stanley, Cameron, and others, have lately made it the subject of their explorations, our knowledge of the country is rapidly extending.

The **mountains** of Africa generally occur, as far as is known, in detached ranges but a short distance from the sea-coast, which also extend inland, and partially enclose a vast elevated plain in the interior, much of which, especially in the northern parts, is desert, and unfit for cultivation or habitation, while the equatorial region is well watered and fertile.

The *Atlas Mountains*, in the Barbary States, extend eastward from the Atlantic parallel to the Mediterranean Sea, rising to their greatest height in Marocco, over 11,000 feet; and smaller ranges extend from them nearly to the borders of Egypt, but do not rise higher than 3,000 feet. The mountains of *Abyssinia*, in the east, rise in irregular groups from a high table-land, some of them reaching nearly 16,000 feet in height. They are more abrupt to the south than to the north. Parallel to the Gulf of Guinea, and about 150 miles inland, rise the *Kong Mountains*, and farther south, on the shores of the Bight of Biafra, are the *Cameroons*, reaching 13,760 feet. The *Nieuweld Mountains* and some other smaller chains extend from east to west across the central part of Cape Colony, rising in Compass Berg 10,000 feet high. On the east coast of Africa are several chains of mountains, some of which rise to a great height, but are yet little known. *Mounts Kilmandjaro* 20,065 feet) and *Kenia* (18,000 feet) are a little south of the equator. Owing to the general proximity of the mountains to the coast, the rivers are not as numerous, nor, with few exceptions, as important as in the other great continents. The principal is the *Nile*, which has two sources—the Blue Nile, rising in Abyssinia, and the White Nile, the sources of

which are not yet absolutely ascertained, but the river is at least 4,000 miles long, and receives several tributaries, but none lower than 1,200 miles from its mouth. Next in importance is the *Congo* (an immense river, 3,500 miles long, rising in the lake region south of the equator, and flowing, after a very circuitous course, into the South Atlantic, and second only to the Amazon in the volume of its waters). The *Niger*, or Quorra, rises on the north side of the Kong Mountains, receives a large tributary, the *Benue*, and flows round the eastern end of that range into the Gulf of Guinea. The *Senegal* flows into the North Atlantic Ocean; and the *Orange*, or *Gariep*, into the South Atlantic; and the *Zambesi* into the Mozambique Channel.

The principal lakes of Africa, as far as are yet known, are: *Dembea*, in Abyssinia; *Tchad*, in the interior; *Albert* and *Victoria Nyanzas*, under the equator; and *Tanganyika*, *Leopold*, east of Tanganyika, *Bangweolo*, on the shore of which Livingstone died, *Nyassa*, and *Shirwa*, with *Ngami*, farther south. Most of these have been recently discovered, and are but imperfectly known.

The coast-line of Africa is very even and unbroken, with but few indentations.

The Principal Bays, Gulfs, etc., are:

On the north, the *Gulfs of Sidra* and *Cabes*.
On the west, the *Gulf of Guinea*, including the *Bights of Benin* and *Biafra*.
On the south, *Table Bay* and *Algoa Bay*.
On the east, *Sofala Bay*, *Gulf of Aden*, and the *Red Sea*.

The Principal Straits are:

Gibraltar, between Marocco and Spain: *Mozambique Channel*, between Madagascar and the mainland: *Strait of Babelmandeb*, between Abyssinia and Arabia.

The Principal Capes are:

On the north, *Bon*, *Blanco*, *Ceuta*.
On the west, *Blanco*, *Verde*, *Palmas*, *Lopez*, and *Frio*.
On the south, *Good Hope* and *Agulhas*.
On the east, *Corrientes*, *Delgado*, and *Guardafui*; and *Capes Amber* and *St. Mary*, the north and south points of Madagascar.

The climate of Africa is in general hot and dry, more than three-fourths of the continent being within the tropics. Towards the middle and south the seasons are alternately dry and wet, as in other tropical countries; but in the vast sandy deserts no rain ever falls. The Sahara extends from the Atlantic Ocean to Egypt, and occupies an area greater than that of the Dominion of Canada. It is not, as commonly supposed, a sandy desert, but a vast plain, having a mean elevation of about 1,500 feet, and diversified with mountain chains as high as from 6,500 to 8,200 feet, whose tops are covered with snow and ice for several months in the year. The sandy desert portions do not occupy more than one-fifth of its entire area of 3,700,000 square miles. Its total population is estimated at 3,000,000: and there are many towns of from 5,000 to 10,000 people. Along the shore of the Mediterranean the climate and productions resemble those of Southern Europe; but in the interior it becomes hotter, and the products vary. South of the Sahara, both on the coast and the great central lake region, vegetation is rank, and the climate in general most unhealthy for Europeans. Cape Colony, being within the southern temperate zone, is cooler and more healthy. The soil of Africa along the courses of the rivers is fertile, producing trees of great size, many of them indigenous to the country, and many valuable plants. There are the shea, or butter-tree, baobab, or monkey-bread tree (a gigantic tree sometimes thirty feet in diameter), oil-palm, and other trees. Cotton, indigo, maize, rice, and yams grow in abundance; south of Abyssinia is the native country of the coffee plant.

Africa possesses a large number and variety of wild animals, such as the lion, leopard, hyena, giraffe, elephant, hippopotamus, rhinoceros, crocodile, monkey, etc., besides a great variety of antelopes.

The **inhabitants** of Africa consist of different races, varying in complexion from the tawny Moor to the blackest negro. The negroes are the most numerous, constituting almost the entire population south of the Sahara. In the Barbary States the Moors belong to the Caucasian race, while the Egyptians in the Nile region are, by some ethnologists, thought to be akin to the natives of Australia, and the Dravidian races of Southern India. In the south are also the Hottentots, a stunted, degraded race. The inhabitants in the north, and as far south as 5° north latitude, are chiefly Mohammedans; and, except where settlements of Europeans have been made, the rest are chiefly pagans or heathens.

The **trade and products** of the country are trifling, owing to the ignorance and generally degraded state of the inhabitants. The Barbary States export grain and leather; Egypt exports cotton and grain; and the west and south yield palm oil, ivory, and a little gold dust. On the south-west and east coasts the inhuman trade in slaves is still carried on to some extent, notwithstanding the vigilant efforts of the British to put it down.

NORTHERN, or BARBARY STATES.

MAROCCO.

Area, 313,650 square miles; one-half larger than Quebec; population, about 6,140,000.

The **Empire of Marocco** occupies the north-western corner of Africa, between the Sahara, the Atlantic Ocean, Mediterranean Sea, and Algeria. It is the most important of the Barbary States in power and population. These States were celebrated in ancient history under the name of Mauritania, but have now been long sunk under tyranny and oppression. Their power has declined, and their naval force, long used for piratical purposes, has been destroyed by the British and other European Powers since the beginning of the present century.

The **Atlas Mountains** traverse the country in a direction nearly parallel to the coast. They attain their greatest height in Marocco, and several of their peaks are covered with snow. *Mount Miltsin*, near the city of Marocco, is 11,400 feet high. In the mountains are many beautiful and fertile valleys, and between them and the coast grain grows abundantly, as well as olives, grapes, dates, cotton, and tobacco. Beyond the mountains all the country is barren and desolate, covered for some distance with coarse grass, which gradually disappears in the sand. The ridges of the Atlas Mountains yield silver, copper, iron, and antimony. The **climate** is in general warm, but healthy, resembling the south of Europe.

The **people** are chiefly Moors and Berbers, professing Mohammedanism. Jews are numerous in the seaports.

The **government** is an absolute monarchy, the Sultan having unlimited power over his subjects so far as it extends, but the larger part of the country is virtually ruled by independent Berber mountain chiefs.

Spain possesses four ports on the north coast, the principal of which is *Ceuta*, opposite Gibraltar.

Marocco (60,000), situated in a fertile plain, was formerly the capital; *Mequinez* (50,000) is an imperial residence; *Fez* (80,000), the present capital, celebrated under the ancient Saracen monarchy, is a holy city, and contains 100 mosques. *Mogador* and *Tangier* are small seaports; *Tafilet* is situated in a fertile district in the interior.

ALGERIA.

Area, 258,000 square miles; one-fourth more than Ontario in size; population, about 3,400,000.

Algeria lies to the east of Marocco, along the shore of the Mediterranean Sea. It has been in the possession of the French since 1830, but requires a large army to keep it in subjection. The total European population is about 350,000, nearly one-half being French; but great efforts have been made within the last few years to colonize it more extensively.

It is divided by the French into three provinces: *Algiers*, *Constantine*, and *Oran*.

It is traversed by the continuation of the Atlas Mountains, the northern slope of which is very fertile. Between them and the coast is a narrow strip of rich land, called the "Tell," or grain country, where large quantities of wheat are grown for export. In the south, in soil and climate, it resembles Marocco, and the chief occupation of the inhabitants is pasturage. Esparto grass is largely exported for paper-making.

Algiers (60,000), on the Mediterranean, the capital, is strongly fortified, and was long a formidable nest of pirates. It was bombarded and taken by the British under Lord Exmouth in 1816. *Constantine*, *Oran*, and *Bona* are also considerable towns.

TUNIS.

Area, 44,920 square miles; a little larger than Newfoundland; population, about 2,100,000.

Tunis is situated to the east of Algeria. It was formerly governed by an hereditary Bey, and tributary to Turkey; but in 1881–2 it was annexed to France. It is the most important of the Barbary States, and in ancient times was one of the granaries of the Roman Empire. In climate, soil, and productions it resembles Algeria. Caravans from the interior visit it regularly with ivory, gold dust, etc.

Tunis (125,000) is an important commercial city on the Lake of Tunis, which is connected with the Mediterranean. Thirty thousand of the inhabitants are Jews. About ten miles to the north-east are the ruins of ancient *Carthage*, the once formidable rival of Rome. *Kairwan*, about seventy miles south of Tunis, the centre of the inland trade, is the holy city of Tunis.

TRIPOLI, BARCA, and FEZZAN.

Area, 400,000 square miles; about twice the size of Quebec; population, about 1,010,000.

Tripoli lies to the south-east of Tunis, along the shore of the Mediterranean, between the Gulfs of Sidra and Cabes. BARCA lies between it and Egypt, and FEZZAN between it and the Sahara. The three together constitute the vilayet of Tripoli, a province of the Ottoman Empire.

Tripoli (about 25,000), the capital, is regularly visited by the caravans from the interior. There are two great routes—one by *Ghadamis*, 200 miles to the south-west; and the other by *Mourzook*, 500 miles to the south. *Bengazi* (22,000) is the second town in importance.

NILE REGION.

The **Nile Region** comprises Egypt, Nubia, Kordofan, Darfur, Abyssinia, and a number of petty States round the sources and along the upper part of the White Nile.

It is over 2,000 miles in length, with a varying breadth of from 150 to 600 miles. The *Nile Proper* is formed in Nubia, by the junction of the *White* and *Blue Niles*. It is of the greatest importance to the country, as its annual inundations, caused by the tropical rains at its sources, render the surrounding land luxuriantly fertile. On account of the great drought in Lower Egypt, these inundations are looked forward to by the inhabitants with great anxiety; and defect or excess are alike disastrous. Above the southern frontier of Egypt, the high banks of the river prevent its overflowing. As it does not receive a single affluent in the last 1,200 miles of its course its volume gradually decreases, from evaporation and the quantity of water drawn off for irrigation.

THE SPHINX.

EGYPT.

Area, 361,125 square miles; nearly twice the size of Quebec; population, 5,584,000; or, including Nubia, Kordofan, Darfur, and the countries on the Red Sea and the White Nile, nominally subject to the Khedive, an area of 1,153,300 square miles, and a population of about 16,400,000.

Egypt Proper is bounded on the north by the Mediterranean Sea; on the west by Barca and the Sahara; on the south by Nubia; on the east by the Red Sea and Isthmus of Suez.

The great feature of Egypt is the Nile. Its course is through a long narrow valley enclosed by hills on each side, beyond which are sandy deserts. About 100 miles from the Mediterranean, it divides into two branches, forming a delta or triangle, each side of which is from 100 to 150 miles in length.

The climate is the driest in the world, rain seldom falling, and in summer the heat is excessive. The soil is very fertile where it is overflowed by the Nile, producing wheat, rice, cotton, barley, and sugar-cane in great abundance. Great efforts have lately been made by the Khedive to improve agriculture and manufactures, but hitherto without much success.

The country is governed by an hereditary Pacha or Khedive, nominally tributary to Turkey. The inhabitants are composed of native Egyptians (called Copts), Turks, Arabs, and a few Europeans, and were formerly much oppressed by their rulers. The prevailing religion is the Mohammedan.

The Isthmus of Suez, connecting Egypt with Asia, is on the great overland route between Britain and India. It is a sandy tract about 100 miles wide, with several depressions, forming shallow lakes of brackish water. French engineers have succeeded in constructing a canal to connect the two seas. A railway extends from Alexandria to Cairo, 131 miles, and from Cairo to Ismailia, on the Suez Canal, 91 miles.

Egypt is one of the most interesting countries in the world, from its connection with sacred history, and from its early civilization. Its pyramids, temples, and obelisks, with their hieroglyphics, which, owing to the extreme dryness of the climate, are admirably preserved, render it a favorite resort of travellers from all parts of the world.

Cairo (327,000), the capital, situated on the Nile, about five miles above the head of the Delta, is the largest city in Africa. It is poorly built, but its numerous and elegant mosques give it a fine appearance. Close to the city are the celebrated pyramids. *Alexandria* (166,000), on the coast, is an ancient city, originally founded by Alexander the Great, through which all the trade with Europe passes. Near it are Pompey's Pillar and Cleopatra's Needle. Here Euclid taught, 320 years before the birth of Christ. Here, also, Abercromby fell in 1801; and at Aboukir, 15 miles to the east, Nelson gained the famous battle of the Nile, in 1798. Alexandria was bombarded by the British fleet in 1882 and its forts almost completely destroyed. *Rosetta* and *Damietta* are considerable towns to the east of Alexandria. *Siout*, *Kenneh*, *Esneh*, and *Assouan*, in Upper Egypt, are principally trading-stations for the caravans. South of Kenneh are the ruins of *Thebes*, the ancient capital of Egypt, and the temples of Karnac, Luxor, and Dendereh. In the oasis of *Siwah*, 320 miles west of Cairo, are the ruins of the temple of Jupiter Ammon.

NUBIA.

Area, 335,000 square miles; nearly twice the size of Quebec; population, about 1,000,000.

Nubia lies to the south of Egypt, between it and Abyssinia, and extends from the Sahara to the Red Sea.

The northern part resembles Egypt, being very dry, with only a narrow strip on each side of the Nile fit for cultivation. In the south, where the tropical rains fall, it is more fertile, and wild animals abound. It was conquered by Egypt in 1821–22.

Khartoum (40,000), at the confluence of the two branches of the Nile, is the capital. *Sennaar*, the former capital, from which the caravan route lies westward through the Desert to Darfour and the east of Lake Tchad, was destroyed by the Egyptians. *Ipsambul* is noted for its temples, which are cut out of the solid rock. *El Ordeh*, or *New Dongola*, is a considerable town on the Nile, and *Massowah* is the principal port on the Red Sea. At *Souakin* Mohammedan pilgrims usually embark for Mecca.

EGYPTIAN SOUDAN AND THE RED SEA DISTRICT.

Egyptian Soudan includes KORDOFAN, DARFOUR, and the country along the Nile as far south as lake *Victoria Nyanza*. Kordofan was conquered by Egypt in 1821–22, the Nile countries in 1869–72, and Darfour in 1875. The principal towns are *El Obeid*, the capital of Kordofan; *Fasher*, the capital of Darfour; and *Lado*, the chief seat of the Egyptian government of the Upper Nile region.

The **Red Sea District** lies between Abyssinia and the Red Sea and Gulf of Aden, and includes the districts of Danakil, or Afar, Adal, and Harar, with part of the Somali country. This region was occupied by the Egyptians in 1872–75. The principal towns are *Zeila* and *Berberah*, ports on the Gulf of Aden; and *Harar*, an important trade-centre about 200 miles south-west of Berberah.

The population of Egyptian Soudan, the Upper Nile region, and the Red Sea Districts, is about 10,000,000.

ABYSSINIA.

Area, about 130,000 square miles; about two-thirds the size of the province of Quebec; population, 3,000,000.

Abyssinia lies between Egyptian Soudan and the Egyptian Red Sea Districts of Afar, Adal, and Harar. It is a mountainous country, sloping towards the north. Like Nubia, it is subject to the tropical rains, but from its great elevation it possesses almost every variety of climate and productions.

The *Blue Nile* rises in the mountains, and takes its name from the color of its mud. The most fertile part of the country is on the shores of *Lake Dembea*, a large inland lake.

The country is divided into a number of petty independent States, the principal of which are: *Tigre* in the north, *Amhara* in the centre, and *Shoa* in the south. The people are an ignorant and savage race, professing a form of Christianity analogous to the Greek, but intermingled with many Jewish rites and pagan superstitions.

Abyssinia was brought into notice by the British expedition of 1867–68 for the release of a few British subjects imprisoned by King Theodore, at which time *Magdala*, Theodore's capital, was destroyed, the king himself slain, and the kingdom broken up. *Antalo*, the old capital, is half-way between Magdala and the coast.

None of the towns contain 10,000 inhabitants. *Gondar* is the capital of Amhara, *Adoua* of Tigre, and *Ankobar* (situated 8,000 feet above the sea) of Shoa.

CENTRAL AFRICA.

SOUDAN, or NIGRITIA.

Area, excluding Darfour and Kordofan, about 680,000 square miles; population, about 32,000,000.

That part of the continent of Africa lying to the south of the Sahara, and north of the Gulf of Guinea, and extending eastward to the White Nile, is called Soudan, or Nigritia, the country of the blacks. It is composed of a number of independent States, but little is yet known of their extent or population.

The principal States known are: *Kaarta*, on the Upper Senegal; *Bergou* and *Gando*, on the Lower Niger; *Bambarra*, *Musina*, and *Soughay*, on the Upper Niger; *Hausa*, *Bornu*, and *Fumbina*, or *Adamawa*, between the Niger and Lake Tchad; and *Kanem*, *Baghirmi*, *Waday*, *Darfour*, and *Kordofan*, between Lake Tchad and Abyssinia. The last two named States belong to Egypt, to which *Waday* is also tributary.

The **Niger** is the principal river of the country. It rises to the north of the Kong Mountains, and, after a circuitous course, falls into the Gulf of Guinea. It receives, on the east bank, the *Chadda*, a large river rising south of Lake Tchad. *Lake Tchad* is nearly twice the size of Lake Erie. It is shallow, studded with islands, and receives several rivers. A number of towns of considerable size are situated on its shores.

The countries on the upper part of the *Niger* and on the *Senegal* (a river flowing into the Atlantic, and forming the northern boundary of Senegambia) have a luxuriant vegetation and are densely peopled: wherever there is water the soil is fertile, and the people numerous.

The inhabitants are chiefly negroes. Trade with the Barbary States and countries of the Nile is carried on by caravans of camels, which are conducted across the Sahara by Arabs. The trade is chiefly in slaves, cotton,

grain, indigo, ivory, and gold dust. *Timbuctoo* (20,000) is the most important town on the caravan route between Guinea, Senegambia, and Barbary. *Sokoto* (85,000), in Hausa, *Bida* (85,000), on the Niger, and *Sego*, in Bambarra, are great trading-places.

South of Egyptian Soudan and Abyssinia, under the equator, are high table-lands, or mountain ranges, containing a lake about as large as Lake Michigan, which has been called *Victoria Nyanza*, and another, the *Albert Nyanza*, in which lakes the White Nile takes its rise. South of this is another lake, *Tanganyika*, 420 miles long, and from 15 to 60 miles broad. Still farther south are *Lakes Bangweolo*, *Nyassa*, *Moero*, and *Shirwa*.

WESTERN AFRICA.

SENEGAMBIA.

Senegambia comprises the country watered by the *Senegal*, *Gambia*, and *Rio Grande*, which flow westward from the Kong Mountains.

The climate is hot, and very unhealthy for Europeans. The Harmattan, a scorching sandy wind, blows at intervals from the Desert. The soil is fertile, and on the banks of the rivers vegetation is rank and luxuriant. Palms, baobab, or monkey, bread-fruit, caoutchouc, and other tropical trees and plants, abound. The *Senegal* and *Gambia* are navigable into the interior.

The British possess *Bathurst*, and other forts on the Gambia; the French, *Goree*, with *St. Louis* and other forts on the Senegal; and the Portuguese, *Bissagos*, and other forts near the mouth of the Rio Grande.

UPPER GUINEA.

Upper Guinea lies to the south-east of Senegambia, between the Kong Mountains and the northern shore of the Gulf of Guinea.

In climate, soil, and productions it resembles Senegambia. It comprises *Sierra Leone*, *Liberia*, *Ashantee*, *Grain Coast*, *Ivory Coast*, *Gold Coast*, *Slave Coast*, *Dahomey*, *Benin*, and *Calabar*. The exports are indigo, ivory, palm oil, and pepper.

Sierra Leone is a British settlement, founded in 1786 as a station for the suppression of the slave trade, which was largely carried on between the native chiefs of Guinea and the Portuguese and others. This trade is now much reduced, owing to the vigilance of the British war vessels. *Freetown* is the capital.

Liberia was originally founded by the United States for emancipated slaves. It was formed into an independent republic in 1847. *Monrovia* is the capital.

The British possess most of the Gold Coast, and have five settlements, of which *Cape Coast Castle* is the chief.

Ashantee is an important native State, of which the capital is *Coomassie*.

LOWER GUINEA.

Lower Guinea extends from the Bight of Biafra to more than 1,000 miles south of the equator.

It comprises *Biafra*, *Loango*, *Congo*, *Angola*, and *Benguela*. The last two countries belong to Portugal. The country is well watered, and resembles Upper Guinea in its climate and productions. The *Cameroon Mountains* are immediately north of the equator, on the shores of the Bight of Biafra, and rise to the height of 13,760 feet above the sea. Here the lion, leopard, elephant, and hippopotamus abound. This region is also the home of the gorilla, the monkey, and of numerous birds of brilliant plumage.

SOUTHERN AFRICA.

Southern Africa comprises the British possessions of *Cape Colony* (including *Cape Colony Proper*, *British Kaffraria*, *Basuto Land*, *Transkei Territory*, and *Griqualand West*) and the colony of *Natal*; the *Transvaal* and *Orange Republics*; *Zululand* and the countries of the *Hottentots*, *Bechuanas*, *Namaquas*, and *Damaras*.

In the south and east it is mountainous; in the north and west are vast level plateaus, almost destitute of water. Three parallel ranges of mountains extend in a north-easterly direction, rising one above the other from the south upwards; the first being from 20 to 60 miles from the coast. The most northerly is that of the *Nieuveld Mountains*, whose summits are generally covered with snow. Mount Compass rises to the height of over 10,250 feet. The *Orange*, or *Gariep*, is the principal river, rising in the *Drakenberg Mountains* west of Natal, and flowing through level plains into the Atlantic 450 miles from the Cape of Good Hope. It receives a number of small tributary streams.

BRITISH POSSESSIONS.

Area, 261,484 square miles; larger than Quebec; population, 1,728,000.

The **British Possessions** form the southern extremity of the African continent, and extend about 900 miles from east to west, and from 100 to 400 miles in breadth.

The country was originally colonized by the Dutch, but since 1806 has been in the possession of the British. About one-half of the population are Europeans, or their descendants; consisting of British settlers and Dutch boers, or farmers. The remainder are Hottentots, a most degraded race; and in the east, Kaffirs.

The climate is dry, and not unhealthy. European grains and fruits have been successfully introduced. Wine, wool, and hides are exported.

Cape Colony Proper comprises an area of 199,950 square miles, or nearly as large as Quebec, and has a population of about 811,000.

Cape Town (45,000), on the south-west shore of Table Bay, is the chief city and seat of the colonial Parliament. Table Mountain, 3,580 feet high, rises south of the town, and is so called from its flat summit. Vines are extensively cultivated on its slopes. The other towns of importance are *Graham's Town*, 500 miles to the east of Cape Town, *Port Elizabeth* (13,049), and *Kimberly* (13,590).

British Kaffraria, formerly a separate colony, was in 1865 formed into a district of Cape Colony. It is separated by the Great Kei River from native Kaffraria. The Kaffirs are a fierce people, often at war with the British.

Natal was formed into a colony in 1845. It lies to the north of British Kaffraria. Coal and iron are abundant, and cotton, indigo, and sugar are easily cultivated. The population is about 365,000. *Port Natal* is the seaport, and *Pietermaritzburg*, 50 miles inland, the capital.

To the north of Cape Colony are the Dutch republics, *Transvaal* and *Orange Free State*. These are peopled chiefly by natives and by Dutch boers, or farmers, who have formed them into independent republics.

Between the Dutch republics and the Atlantic is the country of the Bechuanas, Namaquas, and Damaras, an inoffensive, pastoral people. The Zulus are a warlike tribe of Kaffirs whose territory lies north of Natal.

EASTERN AFRICA.

The countries on the eastern coast of Africa are still little known, although opened up by recent enterprise.

SOMALI, between the Strait of Babelmandeb and Cape Guardafui, is celebrated for its myrrh and spices, which are exported through Arabia. *Ajan* is barren along the coast, but fertile in the interior. ZANGUEBAR is low and marshy, and unhealthy towards the sea. To the west are the ranges of mountains which enclose the table-lands of Central Africa, with the peaks of *Kilmandjaro* (20,065 feet) and *Kenia* (18,000 feet). The Sultan of Zanzibar claims sovereignty over the countries as far south as Cape Delgado. From there to Cape Delagoa, including MOZAMBIQUE and SOFALA, the Portuguese hold authority. They formerly possessed the whole eastern coast, but have been gradually driven away. Their principal posts are *Sena* and *Tete*, on the Zambesi River.

ISLANDS OF AFRICA.

MADAGASCAR.

Area, 228,570 square miles; rather larger than the province of Quebec; population, 3,000,000.

Madagascar is the largest of the African Islands, and is separated from the east coast of Africa by the Mozambique Channel.

Lofty mountains traverse it from north to south, approaching nearest to the eastern shore. The climate is hot, and the soil fertile, producing rice and sugar abundantly. Iron is found in the mountains. The government is despotic. Christianity, to which the natives were formerly hostile, has now become the established religion. *Tananariro* (80,000), the capital, is situated on a lofty table-land, near the centre of the island. *Tamatave*, on the east coast, is the principal seaport.

Socotra, in the Indian Ocean, about 120 miles east of Cape Guardafui, is a large island belonging to the Sultan of Keshin in Arabia, producing the finest aloes.

BRITISH ISLANDS.

Ascension, a small island in the Atlantic, is frequented by ships as a place of call on the voyage to the Cape. *St. Helena*, 850 miles south-east of Ascension, is famous as the place of exile of Napoleon Bonaparte, where he died in 1821. *Mauritius* (360,000), a considerable island, formerly called the Isle of France, is 480 miles to the east of Madagascar. Port Louis (66,000) is the capital and seaport *Rodriguez*, east of Mauritius, the *Seychelles* and *Amirante Islands*, north-east of Madagascar, and the *Chagres* group, farther east, are dependencies of Mauritius, and are of little importance.

FRENCH ISLANDS.

Réunion, or **Bourbon** (184,000), rather larger than Mauritius, lies 90 miles south-west of it. It is of volcanic formation, and contains one active volcano in the south. It produces coffee and sugar largely. *Mount Piton des Neiges* is 10,000 feet high. France also possesses some small islands in the *Comoro* group, in the north of the Mozambique Channel, and some on the coast of Madagascar, which are dependencies of Réunion

PORTUGUESE ISLANDS.

Madeira (132,000), a beautiful island, rising abruptly from the Atlantic, 360 miles west of Marocco. It consists of a mass of volcanic rock, the highest summit being about 6,000 feet. It is celebrated for its wines and for its salubrious climate. *Funchal* is the chief town. The *Cape Verde Islands* (90,000), about 320 miles west of Cape Verde, are also of volcanic formation. A volcano in Fogo, one of the islands, is about 9,200 feet high. *St. Iago* is the principal island. *St. Thomas* and *Prince's Islands*, in the Gulf of Guinea, also belong to Portugal.

SPANISH ISLANDS.

The **Canaries** (280,000), off the north-west coast of Africa, seven in number, contain lofty volcanic mountains. Their chief product is wine. The Peak of Teneriffe rises about 12,200 feet in height. *Santa Cruz*, in Teneriffe, is the capital, but *Palma* is the largest town. *Fernando Po* and *Annabon* are small islands in the Gulf of Guinea.

ERUPTION, MANNA LOA, HAWAII.

OCEANIA.

Area, 4,200,000 square miles, or one-twelfth part of the land surface of the globe; population, about 38,000,000.

Oceania is the name usually given to a fifth great division of the globe. It includes the vast number of islands lying to the south-east of Asia, and those in the Pacific Ocean. They are generally small, though collectively they comprise an area somewhat larger than the whole of Europe. These islands are divided into *Malaysia*, or the East Indian Archipelago, *Australasia*, and *Polynesia*.

MALAYSIA.

Malaysia, or the East Indian Archipelago, comprises the numerous islands lying to the south-east of Asia. The principal are: *Sumatra*, *Java*, *Borneo*, *Celebes*, the *Philippine Islands*, the *Moluccas*, or Spice Islands, *Flores*, *Timor*, etc.

These islands are volcanic in their formation, and are all within the torrid zone. They are within the range of the monsoons; and, owing to the sea breezes, the climate is not so hot as on the adjacent continent. The soil is rich and fertile, and large quantities of spices, sugar, coffee, and other tropical productions are exported.

They are peopled chiefly by Malays—an active, but fierce and treacherous race, much addicted to piracy. The natives of some of the islands are negritos, a savage and very degraded race. The whole population is estimated at 33,000,000. Most of the islands belong to European nations. The Dutch possess Java, with portions of Sumatra, Borneo, and Celebes, besides a number of the smaller islands. The Spaniards possess the greater part of the Philippines. The British have possessed the small island of Labuan, off the coast of Borneo, since 1846. The Dutch possessions were captured by the British in the beginning of this century, but were restored at the peace of 1814.

Sumatra is a long narrow island, upwards of 1,000 miles in length, lying to the south-west and south of the Malay Peninsula, from which it is separated by the Strait of Malacca. The island is about the size of Quebec, and is directly under the equator. It is traversed by chains of lofty mountains, one of their summits rising over 12,000 feet in height. Most of the surface is covered with dense forests, affording a retreat to numerous wild animals. Between the mountain ranges are large and fertile plains, producing coffee, pepper, rice, and camphor, which are largely exported. The Dutch possess all that part of the island lying south of the equator; the remainder is occupied by native States. The principal Dutch towns are *Palembang*, *Padang*, and the seaport of *Bencoolen*. The islands of *Banca* and *Billiton*, off the east coast, belong to the Dutch, and contain valuable tin mines.

Java lies to the south-east of Sumatra, from which it is separated by the Strait of Sunda. It is about one and one-fourth times the size of Newfoundland, and is the most populous and fertile of the Malaysian Islands. It is traversed by a lofty chain of volcanic mountains, and has numerous fine harbors and bays. Large quantities of coffee, rice, sugar, and cinnamon are exported; and in the interior are extensive forests of teak. The popu-

OCEANIA
AND THE
PACIFIC OCEAN
ON MERCATORS PROJECTION.
Longitude 140 W. of Greenwich
J. Bartholomew, Edin.
ASIA
AUSTRALIA
NORTH AMERICA
SOUTH AMERICA
Behring Sea
Sea of Okhotsk
Japan Sea
Yellow Sea
China Sea
Eastern Archipelago
Coral Sea
Tasman Sea
PACIFIC OCEAN
INDIAN OCEAN
SOUTHERN OCEAN
Micronesia
Polynesia
Melanesia
Hudson Bay
Gulf of Mexico
British DOMINION OF CANADA
UNITED STATES
CENTRAL AMERICA
Alaska
Aleutian Is
Kamchatka
Kurile Is
Sakhalien
Yesso
Hakodate
Pekin
Tokio (Yeddo)
Yokohama
Nagasaki
Shanghai
Formosa
Loo Choo Is
Bonin Is
Canton
Hong Kong
Philippine Islands
Manilla
Bangkok
Saigon
Borneo
Celebes
Java
Sumatra
Singapore
Mindanao
Marianne or Ladrone Is
Carolines Is
Marshall Archo
Gilbert Is
Bismarck Archo
Papua or New Guinea
Salomon Islands
Ellice Is
Fiji Is
New Hebrides
New Caledonia
Samoa Is
Tonga Is
Tokelau Is
Phœnix Is
Palmyra I
Fanning I
Christmas I.
Hawaii or Sandwich Islands
Honolulu
Hawaii
Tropic of Cancer
Tropic of Capricorn
Equator
Marquesas Is
Society Is
Low Archipelago
Cook Is
Austral Is
Pitcairn I.
Norfolk I.
Lord Howe I.
Kermedec Is
Auckland
North Isd
Wellington
Christ Church
South Isd
Dunedin
Chatham Is
Antipodes I.
Auckland Is
Campbell I.
Macquarie I.
Stewart I.
Foveaux Str.
Cook Strait
Tasmania
Hobart
Launceston
Melbourne
Sydney
Brisbane
Adelaide
Perth
Port Darwin
Port Denison
Rockhampton
Cooktown
Torres Str.
Gulf of Carpentaria
Arnhem Land
Great Australian Bight
Spencer Gulf
King Georges Sound
C. Leeuwin
C. Howe
Basso Strait
Yokohama to S. Francisco 4750 miles
Nounivak I.
Kamandorski Is
Tropolowski
Sitka
Vancouver I.
Victoria
Columbia
Canadian Pacific RR
Central Pacific RR
L. Superior
L. Huron
L. Michigan
Montreal
New York
Chicago
San Francisco
S. Diego
Lower California
New Orleans
Florida
Mississippi
Acapulco
Revilla Gigedo Is
Mazatlan
Galapagos
Guayaquil
Callao
Lima
Iquique
Antofagasta
Valparaiso
Juan Fernandez
Valdivia
Pitcairn
Ohiti
Tahiti
Nanhau
Rotumah
Ysabel
Malaita
Guadalcanar
Timor
Java Sea
Banda Sea
Celebes Sea
Sulu Sea
Sunda Strait
Batavia
Bencoolen
Malacca Strait
Singapore
Labuan
Palawan
Tonquin
Hainan
C. Engano
Pedro Bk
Formosa Str.
Yang tse Kiang
Yellow Sea
Eastern Sea
Loo Choo
Bonin
Kurile
Behring Sea
Nounivak
Kamandorski
Tropolowski
Aleutian Is
Sitka
Vancouver
Victoria
Columbia
Canadian Pacific RR
Central Pacific RR
Superior
Huron
Michigan
Montreal
New York
Chicago
San Francisco
S. Diego
Lower California
New Orleans
Florida
Mississippi
Acapulco
Revilla Gigedo
Mazatlan
Galapagos
Guayaquil
Callao
Lima
Iquique
Antofagasta
Valparaiso
Juan Fernandez
Valdivia
Pitcairn
Ohiti
Tahiti
Nanhau
Rotumah
Ysabel
Malaita
Guadalcanar
Timor
Java Sea
Banda Sea
Celebes Sea
Sulu Sea
Sunda Strait
Batavia
Bencoolen
Malacca Strait
Singapore
Labuan
Palawan
Tonquin
Hainan
C. Engano
Pedro Bk
Formosa Str.
Yang tse Kiang
Yellow Sea
Eastern Sea
Loo Choo
Bonin
Kurile
Yokohama to S. Francisco 4750 miles
2080 m.
2260 m.
1200 m.
Tropic of Cancer
Tropic of Capricorn
Equator
Longitude 140 W. of Greenwich
J. Bartholomew, Edin.

lation is about 19,000,000, consisting chiefly of Malays. It belongs to the Dutch, whose settlements are mostly on the north coast. The chief town is *Batavia* (500,000), the capital of the Dutch East India Possessions.

The smaller islands lying to the east of Java, as *Bali*, *Lombok*, *Sumbawa* (with an active volcano), *Sandalwood*, *Flores*, *Timor*, etc., belong to the Dutch, with the exception of a small settlement in Timor belonging to the Portuguese.

Borneo is about one and one-half times as large as Quebec. It is separated from Java by the *Java Sea*, from Celebes by the *Strait of Macassar*, and lies directly under the equator. The heat on the coast is moderated by the sea breezes, and the soil is fertile; but a great part of the island is covered with dense forests. The interior, which is mountainous, is but little known. The highest elevation is *Kini Balu* (13,670 feet). Borneo has several large navigable rivers. The western and southern, with part of the eastern coast, belongs to the Dutch. The district of *Sarawak*, in the north-west, was ruled from 1841 to 1858 by Sir James Brooke, a British subject, as rajah, appointed by the Sultan of Borneo. There are valuable mines of diamonds, gold, tin, iron, copper, lead, and coal in the island. The population is estimated at about 1,750,000, consisting of Malays, Chinese, and Europeans on the coast, and Dyaks, the native race, in the interior. *Borneo* (40,000), on the north-west coast, is the capital of the native State of Bruni, or Borneo, and carries on considerable trade with Singapore, China, and the Philippine Islands.

Labuan Island, belonging to Britain, is at the mouth of the river on which the town of Borneo is situated.

Celebes lies to the east of Borneo, from which it is separated by the Strait of Macassar, and between it and the Philippine Islands is the Sea of Celebes. It is so deeply indented by bays as to form four long peninsulas. It is nearly twice as large as Newfoundland. The surface is hilly, and the soil fertile, yielding rice, sugar, and sago. It also supplies trepang, or sea-slugs, and edible birds' nests, considered great delicacies by the Chinese. The south-western part of the island is held by the Dutch, including the settlement of Macassar, with a town of the same name.

The **Philippine Islands** lie to the north-east of Borneo. They are estimated at about 1,200 in number, and are traversed by a chain of mountains. The climate is hot, but moist, and the soil fertile. Violent hurricanes and earthquakes often devastate them. The chief exports are rice, sugar, tobacco, and Manilla hemp. The islands were taken possession of by the Spaniards in 1565, and still form one of the most important of the Spanish colonies. The largest island is *Luzon*, with *Manilla* (160,000), the capital. The other islands of importance are: *Mindoro*, *Palawan*, *Mindanao*, and *Samar*.

The **Moluccas**, or Spice Islands, lie to the north-east of Celebes, and are famous for their spices, nutmegs, cloves, etc. The principal are: *Gilolo*, *Amboyna*, *Ceram*, *Booroo*, and the *Banda Islands*. They belong chiefly to the Dutch. Still farther south are some smaller islands of little importance.

AUSTRALASIA.

Australasia comprises the large islands of *Australia*, *Tasmania*, or Van Diemen's Land, *New Zealand*, and *New Guinea*, with a large number of smaller islands lying to the east of New Guinea and Australia.

AUSTRALIA.

Area, 3,000,000 square miles; about the same size as the Dominion of Canada; population, 2,200,000.

Australia is the largest island in the world, being about four-fifths the size of Europe. It belongs to Britain, and is divided into five colonies: *Victoria*, *New South Wales*, *Queensland*, *South Australia*, and *Western Australia*, besides North Australia, which is not yet settled.

The **surface** consists chiefly of vast level plains, covered with grass or thickly wooded, and arid, sandy deserts; the latter, however, have been found, by the dear-bought discoveries in 1860 of Burke and Wills, to be less inhospitable and extensive than was formerly supposed. There are several detached chains of mountains near the coast. The principal chain is in the south-east, where the *Australian Alps* extend northwards from Bass's Strait, about 40 miles from the shore. Some of the peaks, as *Mounts Hotham* and *Kosciusko*, rise about 7,200 feet high, and are covered with snow for a great part of the year. Farther north the chain continues, under the name of the *Blue Mountains* and the *Liverpool Range*. In Western Australia, near the coast, are ranges of low mountains, extending inland about 300 miles, and forming an elevated table-land. The highest summit is about 5,000 feet. Other small chains occur in South Australia.

Australia, considering its great extent, possesses fewer navigable **rivers** than any other part of the world. The only river of any size is the *Murray River*, which rises in the Australian Alps, and flows west into Encounter Bay. It is about 2,000 miles long, and is navigable for a considerable distance. It receives, on the north bank, the *Darling*, and the *Murrumbidgee*, with its affluent the *Lachlan*. On the eastern coast are numerous small rivers, rising in the mountains and flowing east; but they are small, and of little service to commerce, owing to the proximity of the mountains to the coast. In South Australia are several large lakes: *Torrens*, *Gairdner*, *Gregory*, *Eyre*, and *Amadeus*.

Australia is very compact in form, the only great **indentations** being the *Gulf of Carpentaria*, on the north,

and almost opposite, on the south, the *Great Australian Bight*. Besides these are: on the east, *Hervey Bay*, opposite Great Sandy Island, *Moreton Bay*, and *Port Jackson*; on the south, *Port Philip*, *Encounter Bay*, and *St. Vincent* and *Spencer Gulfs*; on the west, *Geographe* and *Shark Bays*, and *Cambridge Gulf*; and on the north, *Gulf of Van Diemen*, opposite Melville Island, and *Melville* and *Castlereagh Bays*.

Along the north-eastern coast, at a distance from 20 to 150 miles from the shore, the *Great Barrier Reef*, a submarine wall of coral, extends for a distance of 1,200 miles. Australia is separated from New Guinea by *Torres Strait*, and from Tasmania by *Bass's Strait*.

The principal capes are: *York*, *Howe*, *Wilson*, *Leeuwin*, and *Steep Point*. *Cape York Peninsula* forms the eastern side of the Gulf of Carpentaria.

The principal islands are: *Melville* and *Bathurst*, in the north-west; *Groote Eiland*, in the Gulf of Carpentaria; *Great Sandy Island*, in the west; *King Island*, in Bass's Strait; and *Kangaroo Island*, near St. Vincent Gulf.

The climate of Australia varies with the latitude. The northern part of the island is within the tropics, and is subject to the tropical rains; while the southern part, in the temperate zone, is very dry and warm, but healthy. The seasons are exactly the reverse of those in North America—midsummer being in December and midwinter in June. Almost all the European fruits and grains grow in abundance; but the greater part of the country is more adapted for pasturage. Vast herds of sheep are reared, and wool forms one of the great staple exports of the country. Australia is rich in minerals, such as iron, coal, copper, lead, and tin; but the most important of all are the valuable gold mines or diggings, in Victoria and New South Wales. They were discovered in 1851.

The native animals and vegetation are altogether different from those in any other part of the world. Gum trees and acacias are the principal trees, and yield valuable timber; among the plants there is scarcely one useful for food. The animals are nearly all marsupial, or provided with pouches, in which to carry their young. The kangaroo and the opossum are of the number. The emu, or moa, a large bird like an ostrich, and other remarkable birds peculiar to Australia, are now rapidly becoming extinct.

The native population belong to the Papuan or Australnegro race. They are very degraded, are nearly black, short in stature, and are repulsive in appearance. They live on roots, shell-fish, and other kindred substances, but are now rapidly disappearing.

Australia, formerly called New Holland, was discovered by the Spaniards and Dutch in 1606. The first British settlement was made at Sydney in 1788, and was originally a penal colony. Since the discovery of the gold fields Australia has advanced very rapidly in population, wealth, and commerce. The annual imports now amount to about 230,000,000 dollars, and the exports to 200,000,000.

The government of each of the colonies is the same as in the provinces of the Dominion of Canada, and consists of a governor and executive council, with a legislative council and assembly elected by the people.

New South Wales (751,000) is the oldest colony, having been founded in 1788. It is traversed on the east by the Blue Mountains and Liverpool Range. Most of the large rivers rise in these mountains; and around their sources, on the west side, are valuable gold fields.

Sydney (224,000), on Port Jackson, is the capital. It exports large quantities of gold and wool, and was the first British settlement in Australia. Five miles to the south is *Botany Bay*, formerly a penal colony. *Bathurst* and *Goulburn* are centres of the mining districts. *Newcastle*, on the Hunter River, is a seaport.

Victoria (862,000), founded in 1836, occupies the south-eastern part of the island, and is traversed on the east by the Australian Alps, and some small ranges of hills on the west. The rest of the country is level, and well adapted for pasturage. It possesses rich gold fields.

Melbourne (283,000), on the Bay of Port Philip, at the mouth of the Yarra River, is the capital. It was founded in 1837, but has risen rapidly, and has now an extensive commerce. *Geelong* (17,000) is also on Port Philip, 45 miles from Melbourne. *Ballarat* (35,000), *Sandhurst* (35,000), and *Castlemaine* are considerable towns in the mining districts.

Queensland (226,000) is a large colony to the north of New South Wales, but as yet is thinly peopled. It was formerly known as the Moreton Bay district of New South Wales, but in 1859 was made a separate colony.

Brisbane (33,000), the capital, is at the mouth of the Brisbane River, which flows into Moreton Bay.

South Australia (280,000) is an important agricultural country, and possesses very valuable copper mines. A range of hills extends northwards along the eastern shore of St. Vincent Gulf, and some smaller detached ranges occur in the south. It contains also several large lakes, such as Torrens, Gairdner, Gregory, and Amadeus. Grain is exported to the neighboring colonies, and large quantities of copper and wool go to Europe.

Adelaide (85,000), the capital, is near the eastern shore of St. Vincent Gulf. The chief copper mines are the *Burra Burra*, 35 miles north-east of the Gulf of St. Vincent, the *Moonta*, and the *Wallaroo*.

Western Australia is the largest colony in the island, but as yet is unexplored, except along the coast. It contains only about 30,000 inhabitants. *Perth*, the capital, is on the Swan River, on the west coast.

AUSTRALIA &
NEW ZEALAND
English Miles
0 100 200 300 400 500 600
PAPUA OR NEW GUINEA
Banda Sea
Flores Sea
Arafura Sea
Timor Sea
Coral Sea
Torres Strait
Bass Strait
Great Australian Bight
Gulf of Carpentaria
North Australia
Northern Territory
QUEENSLAND
NEW SOUTH WALES
VICTORIA
SOUTH AUSTRALIA
WESTERN AUSTRALIA
TASMANIA
Tropic of Capricorn
Great Dividing Range
Sandalwood or Sumba I.
Timor
Flores
Sumbawa
Lombok
Celebes
Ceram
Amboyna
Booton
Macassar
Banda
Arru Is.
Tenimber or Timor Laut
Serwati Is.
Wetter
Ombay
Solayer
Moena
Bouro
Kei Is.
Steenboom
Dampier I.
Astrolabe B.
French I.
Groene I.
Bulca
Bougainville
Salomon Isles
Choiseul
Isabel I.
New Georgia
Guadalcanar
Malayta
Kennedy
Santa Cruz Is.
Santa Cruz
Bellona
Rennel
New Britain
New Ireland
Woodlark
Normanby I.
Rossel I.
Louisiade Arch.
Solomon Sea
Finisterre Mt.
Huon G.
C. King William
British Terr.
G. of Papua
Mt. Yule
Mt. Owen Stanley
C. Ward Hunt
Hood Pt.
Pr. of Wales I.
C. York
Albany I.
Somerset
Cape York Penin.
C. Grenville
Princess Charlotte B.
C. Melville
C. Flattery
Cooktown
Endeavour R.
Weymouth B.
Rockingham B.
Hinchinbrooke I.
Halifax B.
Townsville
Cape Upstart
Cape Bowling Green
Port Denison
Bowen
Cumberland Is.
Mackay
Northumberland Is.
Broad Sound
Repulse B.
Edgecumbe B.
Whitsunday I.
Port Curtis
Gladstone
Keppel B.
Rockhampton
Capricorn Chan.
Great Sandy I.
Hervey B.
Maryborough
Moreton Bay
Brisbane
Ipswich
Toowoomba
Darling Downs
Logan R.
Leichhardt R.
Lindsay
Clarence
Tenterden
Armidale
Port Macquarie
Lord Howe I.
Norfolk I.
Sugar Loaf Pt.
Newcastle & Port Hunter
Sydney & Port Jackson
Parramatta
Goulburn
Bathurst
Maitland
Lachlan R.
Murrumbidgee R.
Albury
Deniliquin
Echuca
Sandhurst
Melbourne
Ballarat
Geelong
Portland
Kangaroo I.
Encounter B.
Spencer G.
St. Vincent G.
Adelaide
Port Lincoln
Port Augusta
Eyre Pen.
Port Lincoln
Port Eyre
Nth. L. Eyre
Sth. L. Eyre
Lake Gregory
Grey Ra.
Barrier or Flinders Ra.
Stuart Ra.
Musgrave Ra.
Macdonnell Ra.
Central Mt. Stuart
Davenport Ra.
Barkly Tableland
Gulf of Carpentaria
Arnhem L.d
Groote I.
Wessel I.
Melville I.
Melville B.
C. Arnhem
Castlereagh B.
Van Diemen G.
Port Darwin
Palmerston
Bathurst I.
Melville I.
Cobourg Pen.
Queens Chan.
Cambridge G.
Victoria R.
Victoria Settlement
C. Londonderry
Admiralty G.
York Sound
Brunswick B.
Collier B.
King Sound
Kimberley District
C. Leveque
Derby
Broome
Lagrange B.
Dampier
Mt. Philip
Stuart Chan.
Roper R.
Limmen B.
Sir Edward Pelew Is.
Wellesley Is.
Burketown
Normanton
Gilbert R.
Mitchell R.
Albert R.
Leichhardt R.
Flinders R.
Cardwell
Dalrymple
Ashburton Range
Fitzroy R.
Fitzroy Chan.
Dampier Arch.
Condon
De Grey R.
Nickol Bay
Roebourne
Wyndham
Ord R.
Forrest R.
Ashburton R.
Fortescue R.
N. West C.
North Western District
Tropic of Capricorn
Irwin R.
Swan R.
Perth
Freemantle
Geographe B.
C. Naturaliste
Busselton
C. Leeuwin
Augusta
Williamsburg
Murray R.
Warrenup
Albany
Arid
Recherche Arch.
Doubtful Island B.
King George Sound
Eclipse I.
C. Catastrophe
C. Spencer
Investigator Str.
Port Buela
Port Angusta
Island L.
Gairdner L.
Lake Torrens
Flinders Ra.
Frome
Barrier or Flinders Ra.
Lake Eyre
Lake Frome
Lake Blanche
Lake Callabonna
Cooper Creek
Diamantina R.
Thomson R.
Barcoo R.
Nogoa R.
Comet R.
Belyando R.
Suttor R.
Burdekin R.
Flinders R.
Leichhardt R.
Gregory R.
Nicholson R.
Albert R.
Morgan R.
Maranoa R.
Balonne R.
Culgoa R.
Bogan R.
Darling R.
Lachlan R.
Murrumbidgee R.
Murray R.
Edward R.
Wakool R.
Loddon R.
Avoca R.
Wimmera R.
Glenelg R.
Hopkins R.
Mt. Gambier
Mt. Schank
Mt. Gambier
Mt. Napier
Mt. Eckersley
Mt. Arapiles
Mt. Abrupt
Mt. Zero
Mt. Sturt
Mt. Robinson
Mt. Moore
Mt. Barker
Mt. Barrow
Mt. Lofty
Mt. Remarkable
Mt. Brown
Mt. Serle
Mt. Victoria
Mt. Hopeless
Mt. Arden
Mt. Margaret
Mt. Browne
Mt. Wedge
Mt. Dutton
Mt. Hay
Mt. Wood
Mt. Stuart
Mt. Leichhardt
Mt. Elizabeth
Mt. Gilruth
Mt. Bonython
Mt. Hann
Mt. Sturt
Mt. Hamilton
Mt. Hamilton
Mt. Hamilton

EXERCISES ON THE LESSON.

What is the area of Australia? Population? Size? Describe Australia. To whom does it belong? How is it divided? Describe the surface. The principal mountains. What is said of the rivers of Australia? Describe the principal. What lakes are in Australia? Describe the outline of Australia. Name the principal bays, &c. What is on the north-western coast? Name the principal straits. Name the principal capes. Name the principal islands. Describe the climate of Australia. The seasons. The soil and products. The minerals. What is said of the gold mines? Describe the native vegetation. The animals. The people. What historical account of Australia is given? What is said of the progress of the country? Describe the government. Describe New South Wales. How is it situated? Describe the chief towns. Point them out on the map, and describe their positions. Describe Victoria. How is it situated? Describe the chief towns. Point them out on the map, and describe their positions. Describe Queensland. How is it situated? Describe the chief town, and point it out on the map. Describe South Australia. How is it situated? Describe the chief towns. Point them out on the map, and describe their positions. Describe Western Australia. How is it situated? Describe the capital, and point it out on the map. Of what does New Zealand consist? How are the islands named, and how separated? Describe the size. Surface. Mountains. Rivers. Climate. Soil, &c. What is said of vegetation? Of the population? How is New Zealand divided? Name the provinces and their capitals. Describe Norfolk Island. What other islands are mentioned? Where are they situated? For what are they useful? How is Tasmania situated? What is its size? Describe the surface. Climate, &c. Describe the chief towns, and point them out on the map. What is comprised in Polynesia? Describe the islands. Name the principal. Point them out on the map, and state how they are situated. Describe the coral islands. The volcanic islands. What is said of Hawaii? Describe the climate. The soil and products. The natives. What is said of the Feejee Islands and others? Which are the most important groups? Describe the Sandwich Islands. Point them out on the map. Name the principal island and the capital. Describe the latter. Describe the principal of the Society Islands. Describe Pitcairn Island. Point them out on the map.

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.

How is Australia separated from New Guinea? From Tasmania? What sea is on the north-east? What ocean on the east? What ocean on the west? What large gulf is on the north? What large river flows into the ocean on the south? In what zone is the northern part of Australia? In what zone is the southern part? What large islands lie to the south-east? What islands lie to the north-west? What colonies are in the east of Australia? In the south? In the west? Between what colonies is Bass Straits? How many large islands are comprised in New Zealand? How are North and Middle Island separated? How is Auckland situated? In what direction from New Zealand is Norfolk Island? What island is half-way between Norfolk Island and Sydney? Where is Foveaux Strait? Where is Wellington? Dunedin? Bay of Plenty New Plymouth? Three Kings Islands? Mount Egmont? In what direction from New Zealand are the Chatham Islands? New Hebrides?

LT001.912.1MA1883 c.1